

Gold, Sugar, Ships... and People

A Trans-Atlantic Timeline, 1400-1900

Before 1400

1212

Reconquista Turning Point

Castile's Alfonso VIII, supported by forces from Aragon, Navarre and Portugal, surprises a Moorish army encamped in the Sierra Morena, July 16. The Moors lose thousands in hand-to-hand fighting; the Almohad caliph, Muhammad al-Nasir, barely escapes.

This Battle of Las Navas de Tolosa reverses a long string of Moorish successes and leads to the rapid Christian capture of Baeza and Úbeda. Alfonso claims 60,000 Muslims have been killed and many more enslaved.

In 1236, Alfonso's grandson, Fernando III, takes Córdoba, capital of the original Umayyad Caliphate, June 29 (his siege is actually assisted by Muhammed Ibn Yusuf who will become the first emir of Granada). Seville falls in 1248.

Islam's Long Rule: Most of central and southern Iberia (present-day Spain and Portugal) had been under Muslim rule for the previous five centuries, since the invasion of 711-716 and defeat of a Christian Visigoth king by a Berber army sent by the Arab Umayyad Caliphate.

1238

Muslims Surrender Valencia

A Christian army under Jaime I, who has already taken the Balearic Islands, captures Valencia from Moorish rulers, completing the kingdom of Aragon's portion of the Reconquista of Iberia (al-Andalus to the Arabs).

Maure, Berbers and Moors: Peoples who today call themselves the Amazigh still live in western North Africa (largely present-day Morocco and northwest Algeria). One of their ancient tribes were the Maure and "Mauretania" was applied to a kingdom between the Atlas mountains and the Mediterranean, a name Romans kept when making it a province. The Amazigh were overwhelmed by the Umayyad conquest of the late 7th century, converted to Islam and were dubbed "Berbers" by the Arabs. Eventually Amazigh tribes won dominance over the Arabs and ruled Morocco and most of Iberia for centuries. Iberian Christians continued to identify the Amazigh as "Maure," which evolved into "Moors." Christians extended that to Arabs as well and, through centuries of conflict, to other Muslims.

The term "Saracen" was also applied by Christians to Arab Muslims, particularly toward the Holy Land, and less often to Turkish Muslims; the latter were rarely referred to as "Moors."

Present-day Mauritania, mostly Saharan desert south and west of ancient Mauretania, was occupied by the Amazigh in the 3rd century, followed by Umayyad Arabs in the 7th. Amazigh and Arabs clashed and exchanged dominance into the 1500s.

1244

Crusaders Vanquished

Jerusalem, briefly won by the Sixth Crusade (the First Crusade was launched 150 years earlier), falls to mercenary Central Asian horsemen who sack the city and massacre much of the population, August. Crusaders, mainly Franks, lose again at Battle of La Forbie, October, to Egyptian Mamluks, despite having an ally in the Muslim Ayyubid sultan. More than 5,000 Crusaders die, including virtually all of the knightly orders.

Several more Crusades will follow, and Christian-Muslim wars will continue from one end of the Mediterranean to the other for centuries, but Christian power is never restored to the Holy Land.

1249

Portugal Ends Muslim Rule

Portuguese, under King Afonso III, capture Faro, the last Muslim stronghold in the Algarve, completing the Christian reconquest of Portugal.

This leaves only the Emirate of Granada as a Muslim bastion in Iberia. For the next 240 years, that emirate will alternate between waging bloody war with Castile and paying vassal tribute with African gold, while maintaining its Muslim identity and self-rule.

It won't be until 1492, under Isabella and Fernando, that Castile completes the Reconquista of the entire peninsula with the surrender of Granada's last emir.

1260

Mongols Turned Back

An army of Egyptian Mamluks stops Mongol forces in Syria after the latter have conquered Persia, destroyed Baghdad and ended the Abbasid Caliphate in Damascus.

It's the high-water mark of Mongol expansion across Asia that began with Genghis Khan early in the century.

1291

Into the Atlantic

Brothers Ugolino and Vandino Vivaldi set out from Genoa in May with two galleys to attempt a voyage into the Atlantic and around Africa to India. They are believed to have reached Cape Nun (in present-day Morocco), according to an annal of the day. But they and their crews are never heard from again.

It is believed to be the first European attempt since Roman times to explore far beyond the Strait of Gibraltar.

1298**Marco Polo's Asian Adventures**

Livres des Merveilles du Monde, better known as *The Travels of Marco Polo*, appears in Italy describing Polo's Silk Road journey to Cathay (China); long service to Kublai Kahn, the Mongol emperor; and return with his father and uncle by sea around India and across Persia to Venice after 24 years in Asia (1271-1295).

The book introduces an amazed Europe to Asia in detail, and inspires generations to venture to central and eastern Asia, not least Christopher Columbus who filled his copy with handwritten notes.

1312**The Canaries Rediscovered**

Lancelotto Malocello, also a Genoese, ventures into the Atlantic, possibly in search of the Vivaldi brothers. If so, he does not find them, but does encounter the northernmost Canary island, which will be named Lanzarote for him.

This is a rediscovery, for the Canaries were known to the Phoenicians, Carthaginians and Romans (Pliny the Elder wrote that they were named for packs of large dogs on Gran Canaria).

The islands, which begin 62 miles off Cape Juby (well south of Cape Nun), are inhabited by the Guanche people who probably arrived in the first millennium BC. Genetically, they share ancestry with the Berbers of North Africa; they also use a script similar to the Berbers' Numidian script.

Malocello builds a stone fort and lives in relative peace with the Guanche until they expel him around 1332.

1315-1317**Famine in Northern Europe**

Incessant rainy weather in the spring of 1315 leads to crop failures, followed by cattle diseases that kill as much as 80% of cattle and sheep. A severe winter and another cold spring follow. Peasants eat their seed grain, slaughter work animals, even abandon children. Pneumonia and tuberculosis overwhelm the starving. Millions die, more than 10% of the population of northern France, southern England and the Low Countries.

Crime and violence surge, war is waged far more brutally. Confidence in the church and in monarchs plummets. Three centuries of population growth end, with no recovery before 1322. And worse is to come with the Black Death.

1340-1344**Muslims Turned Back**

The last Muslim force to invade Iberia from Morocco is led by the Marinid sultan to support the Emirate of Granada. But it is turned back in bloody fighting at Rio Salado, near Tarifa at Iberia's southern tip, Oct. 30. Castile's Alfonso XI and Portugal's Afonso IV are the united victors.

Fighting drags on. In 1344, Alfonso XI enters the Marinid port of Algeciras after a two-year siege during which the Castilians fire primitive bombards with gunpowder.

But in 1350, plague kills Alfonso and much of his Castilian army, forcing commanders to lift their siege of Gibraltar. This defeat is a key factor in delaying the final Reconquista for more than 140 years.

Gibraltar: Name is derived from *Jabal Ṭāriq* ("Mountain of Ṭāriq"). Ṭāriq ibn Ziyād was the Arab name for the Berber commander who launched the initial Muslim conquest of Iberia when his army landed nearby in 711.

1341

Exploring Gran Canaria

Nicoloso da Recco, yet another Genoese, leads an expedition to Gran Canaria on behalf of Portugal's Afonso IV. Da Recco studies the Guanche and their language and maps more of the island chain.

In 1350, priests from Majorca establish a mission, probably on Gran Canaria, that co-exists with Guanche until 1400 at least.

1347

Plague Sweeps into Europe

Now believed to have originated in present-day Kyrgyzstan in late 1330s, the Black Death sweeps across Asia, north Africa and Europe, killing many millions by 1351. It is history's most deadly pandemic.

First noted in Crimea, it is brought to Messina, Sicily, by Genoese galleys manned by dying sailors in October. In Europe, as many as 20 million people die, perhaps a third of the continent's population, previously reduced by famine. London, Paris, Florence suffer death rates of 50% to 60%, with mass burials.

Jews are frequently, hysterically accused of poisoning wells; thousands are massacred in Strasbourg, Frankfurt, Mainz and Cologne, and many thousands more flee to the welcoming arms of Poland's Casimir III.

Cause: The *Yersinia pestis* bacterium is harbored in rats. Fleas feeding on rats spread the bacterium to humans by their bite. Large, dark "bubos" bulge from the lymph system, followed by fever, vomiting, diarrhea and significant pain. The human immune system is overwhelmed; death comes within hours in the medieval outbreak. People also spread the bacterium by coughing and wheezing (pneumonic plague). None of the science is understood at the time.

Giovanni Boccaccio sets his *Decameron* (finished around 1353) in a villa outside of plague-ravaged Florence, where seven young women and three young men tell 100 stories of love, trickery, virtue and greed; bishops and priests are frequent targets. It is written in the Florentine vernacular.

1385

Portuguese Independence Saved

Juan I of Castile is defeated by João of Avis who claims throne of Portugal, ending a long conflict over succession in both Portugal and Castile that includes the murder of Castile's King Pedro I by his half-brother, Henrique, and draws in both England and France (ongoing opponents in the Hundred Years' War).

João I marries Philippa of Lancaster (daughter of John of Gaunt and

granddaughter of Edward III), 1387, consolidating an Anglo-Portuguese alliance that continues into the present.

1391

Jews Massacred in Castile

Whipped up by years of violent preaching on the part of Archdeacon Ferrand Martinez, mobs attack the Jewish community of Seville, June 6, destroying synagogues and homes, killing hundreds and forcing thousands more to convert.

The 1390 deaths of King Juan I and Archbishop Barroso paved the way. They had been protectors of the Jews who played a large role in economic affairs.

The deadly pogrom sweeps through Córdoba, Toledo, Burgos and many smaller Castilian communities and then into Aragon (including Valencia, July 9) and even to Barcelona, Aug. 5, and Majorca. Unknown thousands die, thousands more flee to Portugal and Morocco, and perhaps 200,000 choose to convert rather than face death.

Descendants of these *conversos* become the main target of the Inquisition 100 years later after the fall of Granada. Also at that time, the surviving, decimated communities retaining their Jewish faith are expelled from Castile and Aragon.

1394

Portugal's 'Navigator'

Prince Henrique is born in Porto, March 4, third son of King João I and Philippa of Lancaster. Henrique, to become known in English as Henry the Navigator, will direct Portugal's Atlantic explorations for decades.

1390s

A Better Sugar Press

Improved sugar press, developed on Sicily (and perhaps powered by water), doubles volume of juice squeezed from cane, bringing down sugar's very high price, previously equal to expensive spices from the East.

Refining of sugar cane into syrup and granules was developed in India 2,000 years ago. Sugar was introduced to the Mediterranean by Arab agriculturists, who also brought lemons, oranges and artichokes, and by Venetian traders and early Crusaders. It was first cultivated by Muslims on Cyprus in the 10th century, and then on Sicily and in Andalusia.

Before sugar, honey was the only sweetener available to most peoples.

1400

1402

Canary Isle Seized

Lanzarote is the first Canary island to be taken and held by a European expedition, in this case led by Jean de Béthencourt and Gadifer de la Salle, Frenchmen, nominally on behalf of Henrique III of Castile. Followed by conquest

of the islands of Fuerteventura and El Hierro, 1405, with a number of Guanche natives sold as slaves.

1415

Ceuta and Gold

Portugal's João I and his young son Henrique lead siege and Aug. 21 seizure of Ceuta (Moroccan coast, opposite Gibraltar) to extend the Reconquista and to stop Muslim raids on Portuguese coast villages; pirates would hold Christian captives for ransom or sell them into slavery.

Henrique's later explorations from his base at Lagos are spurred in part by religious fervor to connect with Christian kingdom led by the mythical Prester John in the East and to ally with him to defeat Muslims.

But equally important is Henrique's curiosity about trans-Saharan camel caravans that bring gold, ivory and black slaves to Morocco. (The most important return commodity is rock salt from Saharan mines, essential for preserving food.)

It is the gold, recovered from the streams and estuaries of what becomes known as the Gold Coast (today's Ghana) at a rate later estimated to be as much as two tons annually, that most excites the Portuguese.

1417

Financing the Navigators

Henrique is named grandmaster of Order of Christ (the Templars before 1312) by pope at request of João I. The Order is then granted sovereign rights and a percent of revenue (including slave revenue) from new discoveries and thus develops into financial engine for Henrique's explorations.

He expands the systematic study and record-keeping of Atlantic winds and currents that will guarantee Portugal's lead in ocean exploration for at least 200 years.

1419

Madeira Discovered

Madeira's smaller, neighbor island of Porto Santo visited by João Gonçalves Zarco and Tristão Vaz Teixeira, two of Henrique's captains, when they are blown off course. Settlement of uninhabited Madeira (660 miles southwest of Lisbon) begins in 1420.

Much of the *laurasilva* (laurel forest) is burned off to make way for agriculture. Later, Henrique experiments with vineyards and sugar cane from Sicily. Early slaves are probably North African Moors (either Berber or Arab) seized by the Portuguese in war.

1430s

Caravels Set Sail

Caravels are developed by Henrique, based on Portuguese fishing *barcas*, which in turn are based on medieval Arab *qarib*. Lateen sails allow ships to sail into the wind. Some also carry square sails for faster travel before the wind. They are light, displacing only 50-160 tons, and of shallow draft with two or three masts.

Carracks (*nauses*), developed soon after, are able to carry much more cargo, and often exceed 1,000 tons, with two square-rigged masts and a lateen mizzenmast.

1432

Portuguese Gain Azores

Led by Gonçalo Velho Cabral, Portuguese land on Santa Maria in the uninhabited, mid-Atlantic Azores, 850 miles west of Lisbon. An earlier "rediscovery" of Azores was reported by Diogo de Silves around 1427. Some 14th-century maps appear to include islands but without explanation of their discovery.

São Miguel, Terceira, Faial and Pico are settled by 1440. Last of the nine main islands (which stretch west more than 370 miles) to be discovered are Corvo and Flores in 1452.

Most Azores settlers are peasants from the Algarve and Alentejo, including a number of Jews. Another contingent comes from Flanders. All work on land granted by Henrique to *donatarios* (usually his captains, Cabral is the first) who have full governor powers. Early use of slaves ends due to settlers' fear of insurrections. A tenant-farming system develops instead.

1433

Last Ming Treasure Voyage

A treasure fleet launched by the Ming emperor departs Hormuz in Persia, March 3, on its return voyage to Nanjing by way of Calicut, Malacca, Surabaya (East Java), Quy Nhon (present-day Vietnam) and Quanzhou among other ports.

This is the last of seven voyages undertaken since 1405, each involving hundreds of ships, and as many as 28,000 men. They are loaded with treasure to impress and trade with all the countries visited. Each voyage is led by Zheng He, most prominent of the emperor's eunuch advisors. (Born to a prominent Muslim family in Yunnan, he was captured by invading Ming forces and castrated as a boy.)

The fleets bring envoys to Nanjing from Mecca, Calicut, Ceylon and many other lands. Voyages end when a new emperor decides they are neither profitable nor in keeping with Confucian values.

Although dwarfing the Portuguese fleets to come, these are not voyages of exploration, as the trade routes they follow have been plied for centuries.

Behemoths: The largest ships displace as much as 3,000 tons by some unconfirmed accounts and run more than 250 feet long with 6 junk-rigged masts. They carry 24 guns and crews of 500-plus. However, when Portuguese and Ming fleets do confront each other in 1517, their ships are more evenly sized.

1434

Canary Enslavement Condemned

Pope Eugene IV orders excommunication of any person who enslaves any Guanche newly converted to Christianity on the Canary Islands, where Portuguese, particularly, conduct slave raids. In 1435, pope orders wrongly enslaved Christians to be freed within 15 days.

But enslavement of non-baptized Guanche is protected under a third bull issued the following year.

1434

Rounding Cape Bojador

Portugal's Gil Eanes is first European to round Africa's Cape Bojador, due south of Canaries' Fuerteventura, after many failures and wrecks. Bojador is long feared for tricky northeast winds, extended reefs and insistent southerly coastal current. Also feared for sea monsters beyond.

Henrique continues to instruct captains to seek information about the legendary Prester John, whose Christian kingdom has long been imagined as a possible ally against Muslims.

Prester John: Legend dates back to at least the mid-12th century of this king of a wealthy Christian nation at first vaguely located in India (where the Apostle Thomas was said to have traveled) and then in central Asia (where the real Nestorian Christian Church was protected by the Mongol empire). By 1250, Europeans began identifying the little-known Christian kingdom of Ethiopia with Prester John.

The legend encouraged more than four centuries of European missionaries, Crusaders, scholars and, even before Henrique, the explorations of Africa, finally receding only as those explorations advanced.

1437

Portugal Stopped at Tangier

Portuguese, led by Henrique, besiege Tangier. But their army is in turn encircled by Moroccans and forced to surrender. Henrique promises to return Ceuta to Moroccans if he can keep his army, minus hostages who include his younger brother Fernão.

When Henrique's offer to take Fernão's place is denied by King Duarte (older brother of Henrique and Fernão), Henrique and ministers renege on return of Ceuta; Duarte dies of plague soon after; Fernão dies in captivity, 1443.

1441

Slave Trade Beginnings

Portuguese captains Antão Gonçalves and Nuno Tristão, sailing in early caravels, capture 12 persons identified as "Moors" at Cape Blanc (present-day Mauritania) and take them to Lagos as slaves. They are Muslims, probably of Berber origin. Cited as the beginning of West Africa-Europe slave trade.

1444

More Slaves to Lagos

First large group of non-Mediterranean African slaves brought to Europe.

Lançarote de Freitas, the Lagos port collector, wins Henrique's permission to follow up on Gonçalves-Tristão expedition. With six ships and relatively few men, he rounds Cape Blanc and raids two islands in Bay of Arguin. Some 235 people

(again, probably Muslim Berbers) are taken as slaves to Lagos; Henrique's share is 46 slaves which he distributes among captains.

1445

Rounding Cape Verde

Dinis Dias is the first Portuguese captain to round Cape Verde (at present-day Dakar), 500 miles south of Cape Blanc. Takes four captives, possibly non-Muslim black people.

It will turn out that Cape Verde is the westernmost point of the entire African continent. Also, Dias is too close to mainland to spot the Cape Verde Islands, another 350 miles to the west.

1445

Early Slave 'Factory'

Lançarote de Freitas, accompanied by Dias, returns to Bay of Arguin with 14 ships, and manages to capture 125 "Moors" and to set up the first permanent European post on Arguin island. Within 10 years, this *feitoria* (factory or, more accurately, trading post) is sending 800 slaves annually to Lagos.

But when De Freitas ventures south to Senegal river, he is rebuffed by fierce black Wolof villagers.

1446

Henrique Suspends Explorations

Nuno Tristão ventures on his fourth voyage, but is ambushed and killed somewhere between Cape Verde and the Gambia river, probably by Mandinka people. When a succeeding expedition led by Álvaro Fernandes provokes more hostilities, Henrique suspends explorations along West African coast for more than eight years.

1447

A Canaries Conquistador

In the Canaries, Hernán Peraza the Elder, a Seville noble, arrives on Fuerteventura (his by marriage) to assert his (and Castilian) control of Lanzarote, El Hierro and La Gomera, and to plan conquest of islands still fiercely defended by Guanche: La Palma, Tenerife and Gran Canaria.

When he dies in 1452, his daughter Inéz declares herself "Queen of the Canary Islands."

1450

1450

First Slave Plantations?

On Madeira, Portuguese develop slave-worked sugar cane plantations. They require construction of miles of irrigation canals, all by African slaves who first arrive in mid-1440s (perhaps Guanche from the Canaries and Moors from Arguin).

First sugar mill opens around 1452. By century's end, Madeira is Europe's leading source of sugar and a model for New World slave plantations to come (although few masters hold more than 5 enslaved persons).

Tenant-farming, undertaken by settlers from Portugal, develops later and eventually becomes, as in the Azores, the dominant system on Madeira's small plantations.

Note: Sugar cane requires warm weather, considerable water and timber to feed boilers. Planting, irrigating, firing the fields and then cutting cane is highly labor intensive with periods of down time. Extracting juice with presses, and boiling and concentration into pulp or granules is also labor intensive and usually done on the plantation. After that, sugar is easily transported over distance for final refining.

1452

Pope Authorizes Enslavement

Pope Nicholas V issues *Dum Diversas* bull authorizing Afonso V of Portugal to conquer and enslave Saracens and pagans (into "perpetual servitude") in a bid to win more Western Europe support for the besieged Byzantine empire. Reaffirmed and expanded by Pope Nicholas in 1455 (adding requirement that all captives be converted to Christianity), and by Calixtus III, 1456; Sixtus IV, 1481; and Leo X, 1514.

Viewed widely in Europe as papal endorsement of slave trade past and future, as long as Christians do not enslave those already Christian.

1453

Constantinople Falls

Sultan Mehmed II leads Ottoman Turks' capture of Constantinople and final defeat of Byzantine empire (the last vestige of the Roman empire), May 29. Thousands of men, women and children sold into slavery. Inaugurates long state of war between Ottomans and Western Europeans.

Further obstructs trade into Mediterranean via already-difficult Red Sea and Silk Road routes; this spurs Portuguese search for route around Africa to India and Far East and, eventually, Columbus's scheme to reach the Far East by sailing west.

Westward migration of Byzantine scholars helps revive Greek and Roman studies which, in turn, nourishes Renaissance science and humanism.

Some historians regard Constantinople's fall as the beginning of "Modern Times."

1453

Hundred Years' War Ends

Hundred Years' War effectively concludes with English defeat at Battle of Castillon, and the final fall of Bordeaux and Aquitaine to France, July 17. National identities are strengthened; feudalism and chivalry decline. The long war also distracted England and France from aiding the Byzantines.

Note: France's kings suffered defeat after defeat until 1429 when teenaged Joan of Arc inspired the French people to unify.

1454**The Printing Revolution**

Johannes Gutenberg prints Bibles with a press, mass-produced moveable type and oil-based ink, revolutionizing publishing and communication. From Mainz, the technology spreads through Germany and to Rome, 1467; Paris, 1470; Segovia in Castile, 1472 and London, 1476. By 1500, the 1,000 printing presses estimated to be operating in western Europe have produced 8 million books.

1455-1465**Gold and Silver 'Famine'**

Europe's gold and silver mines are playing out as Asian demand for European bullion in return for silks and spices soars. The shortage, building since 1400, peaks in this decade, undermines trade within and beyond Europe, even with assignment of other metals and even spices to serve as currency.

Locating new sources of gold and silver becomes a paramount objective of Henrique's Portuguese explorations first, and of other nations soon after.

1455**Henrique Renews Exploration**

In wake of fall of Constantinople, Henrique sends Alvise Ca' da Mosto, a Venetian, to resume exploration of African coast below the Sahara. On the Grande Côte, between the Senegal river and Cape Verde, Ca' da Mosto trades seven horses and woolen goods to Wolof people for 100 black slaves, then sails south to find mouth of Gambia river. Barely fends off a Mandinka attack in massed canoes.

The trade with the Wolof is an early model for what will become the basic means of procuring slaves: Buying them from African coastal kings who gather them in wars and raids on neighboring (usually interior) peoples.

1455**Portuguese Trade with Caravans**

Portuguese build fort on a cliff at Arguin, and expand trade with Moors for gold and black slaves brought north by caravan to the westernmost oases at Ouadane, 270 miles away.

1456**Cape Verde Islands Discovered**

Cape Verde Islands sighted by Ca' da Mosto on his next voyage when he is blown west by a storm. The 10 islands (1,557 square miles) are uninhabited; no evidence of pre-discovery inhabitants is ever found.

Ca' da Mosto sails on to the Gambia river again and, 60 miles upstream, meets with Mandinka kings, who are vassals of Mali empire. Sails further around the great hump of West Africa, discovers estuaries of Casamance and Cacheu rivers (where slave-trade factories will arise in the next century), and goes as far as the Bissagos Islands and Geba river (present-day Guinea-Bissau).

1460**Death of the Navigator**

Prince Henrique dies, age 66, near Sagres, west of Lagos, Nov. 13.

1460**Bornu Empire Develops**

Ali Gazi begins consolidation of Muslim Bornu empire west of Lake Chad (present-day northern Nigeria), building a walled capital at Ngazargamu.

1461**First Sub-Sahara Colony**

Portuguese establish settlement of Ribeira Grande on Cape Verde island of Santiago, the first European colony in sub-Sahara Africa. The new governor, António da Noli, a Genoese, is officially credited with discovery of the islands.

Portuguese soon discover that islands' low rainfall and warm, steady winds somehow reduce threat of disease. They also discover that islands are prone to severe drought.

Ribeira Grande (today's Cidade Velha) develops into a major takeoff port for long-range expeditions (Da Gama and Columbus will both use it) and into an important slave entrepôt by 1500.

1462**Portuguese Name Sierra Leone**

Portugal's Pedro de Sintra reaches (and names) Sierra Leone, investigating the large, natural deep-water harbor where Freetown will arise 3½ centuries later. He possibly goes much further along the now eastward-tending coast. But there are few other surviving details of this voyage.

1468**Songhai Empire Spreads**

Songhai empire, led by Sunni Ali Ber, expands from its capital, Gao, up both sides of the Niger river to capture Timbuktu (previously held by fading Mali empire and then by Tuareg tribes). The two river cities are important departure points for trans-Sahara trade of African gold and slaves to Morocco (Sijilmassa) and even to Tripoli.

The Songhai empire also absorbs the fertile Macina (the Niger's vast inner delta), taking Djenné in 1475.

The Songhai rulers practice Sunni Islam but do not deny traditional beliefs and allow various peoples and local chiefs to maintain them.

1469**Explorers for Hire**

With Henrique gone, Portugal's Afonso V grants Fernão Gomes a monopoly of *melegueta* pepper trade in the Gulf of Guinea if he advances exploration of the West Africa coast over the next five years.

Gomes organizes successful voyages of De Sintra, João de Santarém,

Pedro Escobar, Lopes Gonçalves and Fernão do Pó who follow the curve of the coast eastward.

1469

Isabella Weds Fernando

Isabella of Castile, 18, marries Fernando of Aragon, 17, a week after meeting for the first time, in Valladolid, Oct. 19. Second cousins, they are destined to be the Reyes Católicos, uniting their kingdoms *de facto* into what will be eventually be called "Españe" after they ascend their respective thrones.

1471-1473

Gold Coast, São Tomé and Beyond

Gomes's navigators establish Portugal's first trading *feitoria*, 1471, on the Gold Coast, source of river gold that intrigued Henrique at Ceuta 56 years earlier. They quickly establish an important new gold trade with Fante people and call the post El Mina ("the mine"), rendered later as Elmina.

De Santarém and Escobar encounter 330-square mile and name São Tomé in Gulf of Guinea, Dec. 21, 1471. The following month, they cross the equator (perhaps the first Europeans to do so) to discover tiny Annobón (7 square miles) and then sail north to find Príncipe (53 square miles).

Largest of this line of volcanic islands, Fernando Po (now Bioko), is named for its 1472 discoverer. It lies just 20 miles off coast, and is the only island on which inhabitants are found.

Gonçalves charts coast from Wouri river (called Rio dos Camarões by Portuguese for its teeming shrimp, which leads to name of present-day Cameroon) to Cabo Santa Catarina (now Cape Lopez, Gabon), 1473.

1471

Tangier Falls to Afonso

Afonso V finally conquers Tangier for Portugal, Aug. 28, after taking Arzila to the south with a huge fleet (400 ships) and army (30,000 strong), supported in part by first gold from El Mina. They build new fortifications, improve the port and hold the city against Muslim opponents for 190 turbulent years. Afonso is dubbed "El Africano."

The victory at Arzila is commemorated in the four large Pastrana Tapestries, woven in Tournai and displayed at the Colegiada de Pastrana in Spain since 1664.

1474

Stronger Decks, Bigger Guns

Prince João of Portugal (the future João II) is credited with reinforcing decks on carracks to support heavier guns capable of sinking enemy ships. Portugal will lead Europe in developing naval gunnery into the next century.

1475

Isabella Fights for Crown

Death of Enrique IV of Castile leads to rival claims to throne from Isabella,

Enrique's half-sister, and from Juana, Enrique's underage daughter, who marries the widowed Afonso V of Portugal. Four years of war follow between Portugal and Castile, the latter supported by Aragon.

1475

Arquebus to Revolutionize Warfare

The matchlock arquebus (the matchlock is the first trigger) is developed by this year. It is considered the first portable shoulder firearm, and gradually supplants the crossbow in European warfare. The term "musket" is first applied to versions of the matchlock, capable of piercing armor, which appear around 1500.

Volley fire by alternating ranks of musketeers, developed in the following decades, greatly increases rate of fire and effectiveness.

1478

Portuguese Victorious at Elmina

Castilian fleet of 35 ships descends on Gold Coast to usurp Portugal's Elmina monopoly of gold trade. Eleven Portuguese warships, sent by Prince João and led by Jorge Correia, arrive two months later, surprising the Castilians anchored in the Benya lagoon.

Portuguese capture the entire Castilian fleet, including thousands of sailors and soldiers, commanders Pedro de Covides and Joanot Boscà, and a treasure of gold. This huge victory leads to Portuguese domination of Africa's west coast for 150 years with Elmina as their central base.

1478

Inquisition Established

Although Fernando and Isabella are not yet monarchs, Fernando prevails upon Pope Sixtus IV to extend Aragon's church inquisition to Castile, and to give them full control, Nov. 1. The Spanish Inquisition focuses on the large number of Jewish (*converso* or *marrano*) and Moorish (*morisco*) families who have converted under pressure to Catholicism since the pogroms of the late 14th century.

Fernando and his grand inquisitor, Tomás de Torquemada, fear the growing economic power of both groups and question their dedication to the church. They suspect—they fear—that many Jews and Moors remain secretly loyal to their old faiths.

An estimated 2,000 people, most of them Jewish *conversos*, are executed over the next 50 years, many burned at the stake. **Note:** The Inquisition has no authority over Jews and Moors who continue to affirm their old religions. Instead, they face deportation or death if they refuse to leave.

1479

Fernando and Isabella Enthroned

Fernando ascends to throne of Aragon, Jan. 20. War of Castilian Succession ends with Isabella's victory over Juana of Portugal (and King Afonso V), Sept. 4. With both Isabella and Fernando unchallenged, unity of Spanish monarchy is well underway. But Treaty of Alcáçovas also guarantees Portugal control of West

African coast and all Atlantic islands that may be discovered south of the Canaries (which are designated for Castile), and all the way west across the uncharted sea to “the Indies.”

Peace is further encouraged by treaty’s arrangement of marriage between João’s son, Afonso, to Isabella, daughter of Isabella and Fernando.

1479

Introducing Christopher Columbus

Christopher Columbus, originally from Genoa, marries Filipa Moniz Perestrello, daughter of Portugal’s first *donatario* of Porto Santo (and son of a Lombard nobleman). The couple moves from Lisbon to Porto Santo where she gives birth to son Diego. Later they move again to Madeira, where Columbus encounters the first slave-worked sugar plantations.

Another Madeira-Genoa connection: Genoese merchants are said to provide capital for Madeira sugar mills.

Madeira overtakes Cyprus as the leading producer of sugar by the 1490s, sending 70 shiploads annually to Antwerp alone.

1481

Isabella Targets Canaries

In the Canaries, Isabella and Fernando launch various expeditions to finally overcome native Guanche population on Gran Canaria and to block Portuguese interest in islands. Isabella’s policy is not to enslave, but to subjugate and convert to Christianity; the Guanche continue to resist both.

1482

A Castle at Elmina

To solidify Portugal’s position on Gold Coast against another attack by Isabella and Fernando, new King João II orders formidable stone construction of Castle de São Jorge at Elmina. A fleet of 10 caravels and 2 carracks delivers key materials, Jan. 19. Diogo de Azambuja supervises Portuguese crews in building this first European bastion on Africa’s sub-Sahara mainland.

The outpost supports gold trade with dominant Fante people who have long used captives from northern regions to mine gold from their streams. At first, Portuguese bring slave captives to Elmina from other Africa regions, trading them to Fante for gold.

One source says Columbus took part in the expedition to build this fort, and may have experienced the *volta da Mina*, the clockwise ocean current that carries ships far west from the Gold Coast before turning north toward Europe.

By 1500, more than 56,000 ounces of gold have been shipped from Elmina to Lisbon, estimated to be a tenth of world’s supply for that period.

It is decades later that Elmina evolves into a slave depot for the trans-Atlantic trade. Captives are held for weeks, even months, until ships arrive to transport them across the Atlantic. The Dutch take control of Elmina in 1637.

1482-1484**Mouth of the Congo**

João II sends Diogo Cão in a single ship to probe the African coast further south. After a stop at new Elmina castle, he sails south of equator and discovers the Congo estuary, August 1483. He trades with the welcoming Kongo people who guide four of his men to meet their king; they exchange themselves for four native ambassadors who are baptized upon arrival in Lisbon.

Cão sails further south to present-day Cape St. Mary (Angola) before setting course for home. Stone pillars (or *padrões*, dedicated to Order of Christ) are erected along the way, including at the Congo's mouth (Shark Point). An inscribed remnant is in a nearby museum today.

1483**João Eliminates Conspirators**

João II acts against unruly Portuguese nobles, led by duke of Braganza who has been contemplating assassination of João with Isabella of Castile. João orders death for dukes of Braganza and Viseu (the latter by João's own hand), and confiscates vast properties. Many others are slain, including the bishop of Évora.

1484-1486**Cão Sails Further South**

Shortly after Cão's return, April, João II sends him on a second voyage. This time, Cão ascends the Congo (with hope of finding the world of Prester John). He reaches Matadi, where he returns the Kongo ambassadors for his own men. Further progress upriver is blocked by the Yellala Falls.

Back at sea, he erects more pillars, at Cape Negro in Angola and Cape Cross (present-day Namibia), and reaches Ponta dos Farilhões (near present-day Walvis Bay) where he apparently dies.

His voyages show the way for Dias and Da Gama.

1486**Lisbon's House of Slaves**

Portuguese open Casa dos Escravos (House of Slaves) on Lisbon's Tagus waterfront to process African captives and set prices. By 1512, it is estimated that blacks, both slave and free, make up 10% of Lisbon's 65,000 people, far more than in any other European city.

By 1550, blacks, many assigned to work the ever-busy docks, are established in the waterfront Mocambo district (taking the Kimbundu word for "hideout"). Term is also applied to runaway-slave communities that develop in Brazil.

At some point, slaves in Lisbon are able to buy freedom if masters allow them to keep any earnings. Mixed-race children of black women are often also freed. In the 16th century, Asian slaves are brought to Lisbon from China, India, Java and Japan, although blacks remain the majority by far.

1487-1488

Dias Rounds Africa

Following up Diogo Cão, Bartolomeu Dias sails southward from Lisbon with *São Cristóvão* and *São Pantaleão*, small caravels, and a supply ship, with stops at the Congo estuary and present-day Walvis and Elizabeth bays (Namibia). He finally discovers open water around Africa to the Indian Ocean, February, 1488, the first European to do so. Finds land and erects stone cross at present-day Kwaihoek, South Africa.

While Dias wants to push further north (some accounts say he had orders from João II to link up with Pêro da Covilhã, below) but his crews and captains refuse.

On the return, they discover the Cape of Good Hope, May. Despite his historic accomplishment, Dias's reception in Lisbon, December, is surprisingly muted.

1487

João's Spy in East

Meanwhile, João II sends Arabic-speaking Pêro da Covilhã on a secret mission across the Mediterranean to Rhodes (where he and a partner purchase a cargo of honey and disguise themselves as Arab merchants) and then on to Alexandria, Cairo and Aden, at the south end of Red Sea.

From Aden, Da Covilhã crosses Indian Ocean in a dhow to Calicut (present-day Kozhikode, India), a hub of the Indian spice trade. His mission is to question captains and pilots, scout out winds and currents, map Arab trade routes and report on regional politics. He next visits Goa and reaches Ormuz, another spice-trade hub (at the mouth of the Persian Gulf), late 1488.

Da Covilhã then sails down east coast of Africa to Sofala (near present-day Beria, Mozambique), 1489. He returns to Cairo by 1491, to give his first lengthy report to two Jewish emissaries from João II familiar with Arabia. One of these returns to Portugal via Aleppo and the Mediterranean, after giving Da Covilhã new royal orders to seek the mythical Prester John, now believed to be in Ethiopia.

Da Covilhã traverses Arabia, including Medina and Mecca, before striking inland from Gulf of Aden for Ethiopia. He is welcomed by young Emperor Eskender (an actual "Prester John"), given many honors and permitted to communicate with Lisbon. But he is never permitted to leave and dies in Ethiopia sometime after 1526.

Da Covilhã's reconnaissance and reports will be vital to success of Vasco da Gama's 1499 voyage around Africa and across the Indian Ocean to Calicut.

1488

Guanche Rebel in Canaries

Uprising of native Guanche on La Gomera in the Canaries soon after sugar-cane production begins. Unpopular Hernán Peraza the Younger, lord of the island, is killed by a Guanche leader. More than 200 rebels die in retaliation, with hundreds more, including children, sold into slavery.

Peraza's widow, Beatriz de Bobadilla y Ossorio, becomes the countess of La Gomera and El Hierro, and will assist Columbus four years later.

Note: Beatriz, previously a member of the court of Isabella and Fernando, is said to have engaged in an affair with the king. Isabella arranged her 1482 marriage to Peraza. Beatriz's month-long encounter with Columbus is said to involve romance as well.

1490-1537

Muslim Fulo Rise

Fulo people, who hold Futa Djallon highlands (in present-day Guinea), expand into the Gambia. Their Islamic kingdom is then defeated in its attack on Songhai empire to northeast.

Regrouping under Koli Tenguella, Fulo are more successful in attacking Wolof empire north of the Gambia, and establishing the Futa Toro region on the Senegal river. These conflicts likely generate many captives among the contenders.

1491

Kongo Ruler Baptized

Nzinga-a-Nkuwu, king of Kongo, voluntarily converts to Catholicism and is baptized, May 3, as João I by priests from Portugal. His queen and son are also baptized, as Leonore and Afonso.

This begins a far more engaged relationship with an African kingdom than the Portuguese have previously experienced. King orders crews to build a church, as Portuguese support defense of kingdom with firearms, taking many captives for slaves. Afonso studies with priests for 10 years, learning to speak and write Portuguese.

1492

Granada Falls to Reyes Católico

Granada capitulates, ending last Muslim kingdom in Iberia, Jan. 2. Catholic monarchs promise Muslims they may retain religious rights, but issue Alhambra Decree expelling practicing Jews. More than 200,000 Jews had converted in decades before the decree and tens of thousands more afterward. But between 40,000 and 100,000 depart, first for Portugal (but only for eight months) and then to Mediterranean countries (including Muslim kingdoms) and to the Netherlands. They comprise the Sephardim branch of Judaism.

Isabella and Fernando soon turn on Muslims of Granada. When Islam is outlawed there in 1502, they are required to convert or leave.

1492

Columbus Finds Ocean's Far Side

Columbus's First Voyage, on behalf of Isabella and Fernando, departs Palos, Aug. 3. Stops at La Gomera (where he is aided by the countess, Beatriz), departing Canaries Sept. 6. The *Santa Maria's* pilot is Pedro Alonso Niño (called *El Negro*) born in Moguer, near Palos. His father is said to have been an African sailor captured at Elmina.

First landfall is Oct. 12 at a small Bahamian island, which Columbus names San Salvador. Taíno inhabitants call it Guanahani. Columbus sails on to present-day Cuba (the Taíno name) and then Aytí (to the Taíno), which he names Hispaniola. He encounters natives with gold trinkets at the mouth of what he dubs Río de Oro (present-day Río Yaque del Norte). The *Santa María* founders on the northwest coast where a first settlement, La Navidad, is established with 39 men, mostly *Santa María* crew. They are well received by the local *cacique*, Guacanagarix. Columbus finally sails to nearby Borikén (which the Spanish will eventually call Puerto Rico) with the *Niña* and *Pinta*.

Columbus survives a fierce storm on returning via Azores and Lisbon (where he informs João II of his discoveries). Arrives at Palos, March 15, 1493, with at least 10 Taíno captives.

Columbus's report to the Reyes Católico is widely published in Europe, April, 1493. Because he significantly underestimates earth's circumference, Columbus believes to his dying day that he has found out-islands of Asia (they are called the West Indies to this day). His contract with the Reyes Católico makes clear that gold, gems and spices are their mutual goal, and that he will receive 10%.

1493

Pope Endorses Catholic Monarchs' Acquisitions

Pope Alexander VI (Aragon-born father of Cesare and Lucrezia Borgia) issues *Inter Caetera*, May 4, which says Castile can take possession of and exploit lands it "discovers" if they are not occupied by Christians. Isabel and Fernando are required only to bring the Catholic faith to indigenous peoples it may encounter. This "Doctrine of Discovery" is cited many times in following centuries to justify European claims in the Americas and elsewhere.

1493

Children Banished to São Tomé

Álvaro Caminha establishes first settlement on São Tomé in Gulf of Guinea, 22 years after its discovery.

Portugal's João II deports convicts and many Jews to São Tomé, including 2,000 children 8 years and younger (this is said to assure their conversion to Christianity). Many soon die working on early sugar plantations. Decades later, some descendants of Jewish survivors make their way from São Tomé to Brazil.

João II had permitted 20,000 Jewish families expelled from Castile and Aragon to enter Portugal as refugees. But only the 600 wealthiest are granted permanent residence. The rest are evicted or reduced to years of slavery, including those sent to São Tomé.

1493

Songhai Empire on the Rise

Askia Muhammad ascends the Songhai throne and instills a deeper devotion to Islam. He will make Songhai the grandest empire yet in West Africa, seize salt mines of Taghazza from fading Mali empire, develop trade on Saharan routes,

open schools to introduce Islam to masses, usher in a golden age for the scholars of Timbuktu and conduct a fabulous *hajj* to Mecca, 1497-98.

Many slaves taken during this expansion are incorporated into Askia's army and Niger river fleet. Gao, on the Niger, is the capital.

But empire goes into decline after Askia's overthrow by sons in 1528.

1493

Columbus's Troubled Colony

Columbus's Second Voyage with 17 ships (and more than 1,000 skilled workers and settlers) departs Cádiz, September, with instructions from Isabella to treat Indians humanely (similar to less-than-successful policy on Canary Islands).

Columbus sails via El Hierro (Canaries) and Dominica Passage, to various of the Lesser Antilles (a crewman and several Carib Indians die in a small skirmish on St. Croix) and to Hispaniola, where the Navidad settlement has been wiped out by the Taíno under a neighboring cacique, Caonabo, the first significant confrontation between Europeans and Indians. Columbus makes no immediate attempt to punish Taíno, accepting Guacanagarix's report of Spanish forcing gold-mine work on Taíno men and sex on Taíno women.

A new settlement, La Isabela, is established, also on the north coast, only to be ravaged by the first-known European-introduced epidemic (probably influenza) in what will be called the New World, and then hammered in 1494 and 1495 by huge storms, which the Taíno call "hurricanes."

Columbian Exchange: Columbus brings sugar-cane seedlings, livestock and horses on this voyage, beginning the two-way exchange of Old World plants and animals for those of the new colony (maize, tomato, corn, beans). The Europeans also introduce many diseases deadly to Indians (including smallpox, malaria, measles); Columbus's crewmen are infected with syphilis in return.

1494

Taíno Forced to Mine Gold

Columbus's lieutenants stir up more trouble with Taíno bands who rise up after Alonso de Ojeda captures Caonabo.

Columbus sets up *encomienda* system, with monarchs granting Columbus and "worthy" conquistadors control of Taíno bands for agriculture and, mainly, for gold mining in streams.

Duties of the encomiendero: To provide Indians "protection" and Christian teaching in return for their forced labor. The system, which will be applied widely in Spanish colonies, was first established in Andalusia for *Moriscos* and *Conversos* (converted Moors and Jews).

While Isabella and Fernando are convinced this system is more humane to Indians than chattel slavery—they are not to be bought and sold, and continue to live in their homelands—they are otherwise exploited as slaves with no right to refuse work or to deny authority of, and punishment by, the encomiendero.

1494

Atlantic World Redivided

Treaty of Tordesillas is signed, June 7; Isabella and Fernando pushed for it when João II protested Pope Alexander VI's award of Hispaniola to Castile and threatened to send a Portuguese fleet to seize the new discovery.

Previously, Portugal claims all lands between Canaries and the Indies under the 1479 Treaty of Alcáçovas. But Columbus asserts Hispaniola is itself an Indie, thus beyond that treaty's jurisdiction.

The new treaty assigns a Meridian of Demarcation 370 leagues (1,185 miles) west of Cape Verde Islands and makes clear that Hispaniola and Cuba are in possession of the Reyes Católicos.

Isabella and Fernando don't know it, but Brazil will lie in the eastern, Portuguese, zone when that land is claimed in 1500. The treaty is sanctioned by Pope Julius II.

The Meridian of Demarcation assures that most of the new lands that are to be exploited will be in Spanish hands, while virtually all the Africans that will be enslaved for plantations will be in the Portuguese sphere.

For the first 150 years of the Atlantic slave trade, Brazil is the only newly discovered land for which one nation, Portugal, completely controls both source and assignment of African slaves.

1494

Guanche's Last Stand

Guanche, on their last Canary island of Tenerife, ambush invading Castilian forces under Alonso Fernández de Lugo, who loses 80% of his men, May 31.

But De Lugo returns 19 months later with a larger, better-trained force, defeating the Guanche leaders—Bentor, Bencomo and Tegueste—whose forces may have been weakened by disease.

Guanche finally yield, July 1496, after decades of resistance. Most survivors are enslaved. While very little remains of their culture and language, Guanche DNA continues in today's Canaries population.

Note: The 12,188-foot Tiede volcano dominates Tenerife. The Guanche believe it to be the home of the hell-demon Guayota.

1495

Columbus Battles Taíno

In February, Columbus's Taíno captives on Hispaniola number 1,500; he sends 500 to Cádiz on 12 ships; 200 die at sea, including Canaboa. More die soon after arrival. But survivors are freed and returned to Hispaniola, apparently at Isabella's direction.

Columbus defeats Taíno in first pitched battle between Native Americans and Europeans, and completely subjugates them (under *encomienderos*) to mine gold from streams. By 1508, Taíno population is down to 50,000 from an estimated 400,000 at discovery.

A new settlement is established on south coast by Columbus's brother, Bartholomew, to replace La Isabela. By year's end, two thirds of settlers are dead from disease and famine.

But this will become Santo Domingo, the oldest continuously occupied

European settlement in the Americas, and Spain's Caribbean headquarters for more than 300 years.

1495

Portugal's João II Dies

Portugal's king, João II, dies Oct. 25 at 40 after suppressing nobles, reinvigorating exploration of African coast (and gaining much Ghanaian gold), and directing reconnaissance of Indian Ocean. João's first cousin, Manuel I, succeeds him.

Mystery: Why did not João quickly follow up Bartolomeu Dias's 1488 rounding of Africa with an expedition to India? That would not happen until Da Gama in 1497. João may have been distracted by Columbus's discoveries; explanatory archive may have been lost in Lisbon earthquake of 1755.

1496

Columbus Returns to Cádiz

Columbus returns from Second Voyage, June 11. He brings back 200 unhappy colonists and pleads for more supplies.

1497

Cabot Finds Newfoundland

John Cabot (possibly Genoese), sails from Bristol with letters signed by Henry VII to explore the coast (and to name) Newfoundland, June 24. He encounters no natives and, if he discovered the fishing wealth of the Grand Banks, the record does not survive.

Portuguese explorers follow up as Newfoundland lies on Portuguese side of Meridian of Demarcation. Seasonal Portuguese fishing fleets are the first to exploit Grand Banks, where warm Gulf Stream waters meet cold Labrador Current. Spanish and French fleets follow.

Norse from Greenland were the first Europeans to settle Newfoundland, around 1000, but their stay was brief.

1497-1499

Da Gama's Epic Adventure

Vasco da Gama's famous voyage from Lisbon, which reaches Calicut on May 20, 1498. Sailing via Tenerife, Sierra Leone, the Cape of Good Hope, Mozambique, Mombasa and Malindi—and back—he pioneers the great ocean trade route from Europe to Asia.

Da Gama's four ships and 170 men sail 6,000 miles of open ocean between Sierra Leone and the Cape of Good Hope over more than three months, the longest passage beyond sight of land to that date.

He encounters hostile Muslim sultans and friendly Arab pilots who guide him across the Indian Ocean. **Most difficult part:** The return from India to the African coast in the teeth of monsoon winds, which takes 132 days and the lives of half the crew. Only two ships, the carack *São Gabriel* and the small caravel *Berrio*, and 55 men make it back to Lisbon.

Later years: Da Gama leads a large armada to India in 1502. There is

little success and much fighting; at one point he orders the burning of a ship carrying 400 Mecca-bound pilgrims who die in the flames. On return to Lisbon, he falls from favor with Manuel I.

After 15 years with no assignments, Da Gama threatens to follow Magellan and leave Portugal for Spain. In 1524, João III, Manuel's son, appoints Da Gama viceroy of India and provides a fleet of 14 ships. But Da Gama contracts malaria after arrival in Cochin and dies there on Christmas Eve.

1498-1500

Third Voyage: Columbus Arrested

Columbus's Third Voyage departs Sanlúcar with six ships, May 30. From La Gomera, half the fleet (with new settlers) heads directly for Hispaniola. But Columbus directs remaining ships south to Cape Verde Islands and then west to Trinidad, Margarita and then Santo Domingo. There he is eventually arrested by governor after disputes over settlers and enslavement of Taíno, and is sent back to Cádiz in chains, October 1500. Isabella and Fernando hear Columbus's plea, then free him and his brothers.

1499

Vespucci Encounters Amazon

Amerigo Vespucci, a Florentine based in Seville, is said to be a pilot on a voyage led by Alonso de Ojeda to further explore coast of present-day French Guiana, which discovers the mouth of the Amazon. He claims it for Castile and Aragon. A strong adverse current forces Vespucci to double back toward Hispaniola.

On the return, Vespucci reports capturing 232 native people in present-day Bahamas to be sold as slaves.

1500

1500

Cabral Bumps into New Land

Sailing far to west to pick up best winds to run south on his way to India (his fleet of 13 ships is following up on Da Gama's voyage), Pedro Álvares Cabral makes landfall on a long, unknown coastline, April 22, near present-day Porto Seguro. This is on the eastern side of the 1494 Meridian of Demarcation and Cabral claims it for Portugal.

Cabral names the land Ilha de Vera Cruz. Follow-up expeditions focus on brazilwood trees, which produce a highly valued red dye. The land is soon referred to most familiarly as Terre do Brazil.

The Amazon: Earlier, in March, Vicente Yáñez Pinzón is the first European to explore the mouth of the Amazon. Pinzón, the captain of the *Niña* on Columbus's first voyage, manages to sail 50 miles up a channel of the vast freshwater estuary.

1500**A Dias Lands on Madagascar**

Bartholomeu Dias and brother Diogo command separate ships with Cabral's fleet as it rounds Cape of Good Hope. Bartholomeu's ship goes missing in a storm, while Diogo's is swept east to become the first European ship to land on the island of Madagascar, Aug. 10.

Larger than the British Isles combined, it is only lightly populated by Austronesian people who crossed the Indian Ocean from the Malay archipelago, probably 1,000 years earlier; their language is dominant. Some Bantu people crossed the 250 miles from Africa perhaps 500 years later, adding words and phrases. Small Arab trading villages rose on the eastern coast still later. There is no dominant kingdom.

The island eventually becomes a source of captives for both the Atlantic and Indian ocean slave trades, but no stable European presence is established before the French found Fort-Dauphin on the southeast coast, 1643.

1500**Muslims Revolt in Granada**

Promised religious tolerance when they surrendered Granada in 1492, Muslims come under heavy pressure to convert to Christianity in late 1499. They resist first in the city, but that is defused with little bloodshed.

In February, Muslims in the Alpujarra foothills revolt in greater numbers. Fernando leads an army of 80,000, which suppresses the rebels village by village. Those who resist are treated harshly, with 3,000 prisoners massacred in Laujar de Andarax, including at least 200 women and children blown up in a mosque. At Velefique, all men are killed and women enslaved.

In 1501, after the near annihilation of a Castilian contingent, Fernando offers Muslims choice of baptism, exile or death. Most convert but continue to maintain their language and customs, to the great annoyance of Catholic bishops.

1500-1540s**Mane Wars Generate Captives**

Waves of Mane people push west and south from troubled Songhai empire, battling with many tribes until they are slowed down by Susu people (in Sierra Leone). Migratory wars generate large numbers of captives, many of whom are sold to Portuguese factory at Gorée island (present-day Dakar).

1501**Brazil is Not Asia?**

Vespucci, now sailing for Manuel I of Portugal, is the pilot for three ships led by Gonçalo Coelho to further explore the coast of newly discovered Brazil. They put into Guanabara Bay Jan. 1, which they call Rio de Janeiro, and may have later sailed as far south as Patagonia. Vespucci is convinced this vast land mass is not attached to any known part of Asia.

1501**Isolated Isles**

João da Nova, commanding Portugal's third expedition to India, sights and names lonely Ascension Island in the South Atlantic. A year later, on his return to Lisbon, he discovers, visits and names equally isolated St. Helena, which becomes a stopover for Europe-bound ships on Far East routes.

1502**Columbus's Last Voyage**

Columbus's Fourth Voyage clears Cádiz May 11 with four ships. Arrives Santo Domingo, June 29, amid signs of approaching hurricane. Against Columbus's advice, new Gov. Nicolás Ovando allows his treasure fleet to sail. Twenty-five ships are lost to storm, with only one ship making it to Cádiz. Much of Santo Domingo also destroyed, to be rebuilt on opposite bank of Ozama river.

Columbus's four ships survive in harbor and go on to present-day Panama in search of a strait to Asia. They come within 30 miles of Pacific (which no European suspects exists), then encounter Mayans with copperware and sail on to the Mosquito Coast and Rio Belen. Seeking return to Santo Domingo, Columbus abandons storm-battered, worm-eaten ships at Jamaica (from the Taíno word, although Columbus calls the island "Santiago"). Crews, including Columbus, are marooned for more than a year, and rescued June 29, 1504.

1503**Anacoana and Caciques Killed**

With Columbus still missing, Ovando marches to western side of Hispaniola and traps Taíno caciques in a large hut where they are bound and burned to death. Anacoana, consort of the late Canaboa and herself a cacique, is hanged. Parts of the story are disputed, but she is revered in the Dominican Republic to this day.

1503**Vespucci Proclaims New World**

With his popular pamphlet, *Mundus Novus*, Amerigo Vespucci is the first to proclaim Brazil as part of a previously unknown land mass—a truly New World. But Vespucci does not here specifically deny that it may be part of Asia.

1503**Aragon Wins with Guns**

Aragon force prevails over much larger French army in Battle of Cerignol, Apulia, in which Gonzalo Fernández de Córdoba relies on the arquebus and gunpowder far more than previous commanders, and less on heavy cavalry.

The new arms and formations (later known as *tercios*) introduce a new warfare, with which Spain will dominate in Europe and the New World for the next 140 years. Despite on-and-off Italian wars over the next 60 years, Spain will control Kingdom of Naples into the 18th century.

1503**Zanzibar Bows to Portuguese**

Ruy Lourenço Rovasco Marques demands tribute from Muslim sultan of Zanzibar, a 950-square-mile island 22 miles off the coast (in present-day Tanzania), establishing Portugal's presence on Africa's east coast for the next 200 years.

The island is already a market for sale of captured mainland people to be sold to Arab and Indian traders. The Portuguese will send thousands of these captives to the Americas, and even more to Egypt, Arabia, India and the Far East.

1504**Columbus's Return; Isabella's Death**

Columbus and his son, Diego, return to Sanlúcar, Nov. 7, 1504. Queen Isabella, his main supporter, dies at age 53, Nov. 26, in Medina del Campo.

From Isabella's final will: "Do not give rise to or allow the Indians (such as the Taíno and Carib) to receive any wrong in their persons and property, but rather that they be treated well and fairly, and if they have received any wrong, remedy it."

A period of confusion follows, as Juana, daughter of Isabella and Fernando, becomes queen of Castile with her husband Philip of Austria. But Philip soon dies and Juana is judged to be mentally unstable, thus Fernando regains authority over Castile as Juana's regent, Aug. 17, 1507.

Meanwhile, Columbus dies at age 54 in Valladolid, May 20, 1506.

1506**Work Begins on St. Peter's**

Foundation stone is laid by Pope Julius II for a new St. Peter's Basilica, to be the greatest church in Christendom. Donato Bramante, Rafael and Michelangelo are among the designers and artists engaged over the next 120 years.

But financing early construction through indulgences—payments by the wealthy to the church in exchange for absolution of past sins and quick release from purgatory of those already dead—provokes fierce dissent from Martin Luther (1517) and the Protestant Reformation to follow.

1506**Massacre of Jews in Lisbon**

Crowds packing Church of São Domingos turn on a "New Christian" accused of scoffing during the service. He and other New Christians—Jews converted by decree of King Manuel I—are killed as the mob pours into the Rossio plaza; bodies are burned. Violence continues into the following week; more than 2,000 men, women and children die before the rampage and looting peter out.

New Christians: Manuel, who followed João II in 1495, at first sought to relax restrictions on Jews. But to win the hand of Isabella of Aragon in 1497, he ordered that Jews must convert or leave Portugal, as her parents, Isabella and Fernando had done in Spain. In the end, Manuel simply converted all the Jews—including tens of thousands who had fled to Portugal from Spain—to New Christians by decree. This infuriated many Christians.

As the riot faded, a furious Manuel returned to Lisbon and ordered the execution of 500 rioters, including two Dominican friars.

Note: The Inquisition is not authorized in Portugal for another 30 years.

1507

New World Named 'America'

Influenced by Vespucci, a large new world map published by Martin Waldseemüller and Matthias Ringman in Saint-Dié-des-Vosges is the first to apply the name "America" to the new land mass, still not identified as a continent.

The Western Ocean is how the North Atlantic is identified on the new map (actually, "Oceanus Occidentalis"), reflecting the common usage of centuries. The term "Atlanticvm" is applied only to waters off Strait of Gibraltar and does not come into wide use for the entire ocean before the mid-18th century. What is now called the South Atlantic is frequently referred to then as the Aethiopian Sea.

1508

Settlement of Puerto Rico

Spanish colony established on Puerto Rico (Borikén to the Taíno) by Juan Ponce de León, with San Juan founded a year later. Disease and a failed 1511 revolt drive native population down.

1509

Jamaica's First Europeans

Diego Colón (Columbus's son is the new Indies viceroy) sends Juan de Esquivel and 80 families from Hispaniola to Jamaica. De Esquivel founds Sevilla la Nueva on the north coast. But the island, called Santiago by the Spanish, remains a backwater in the Spanish empire until British seize it in 1655.

1509

Decisive Portuguese Victory in India

Naval force under Francisco de Almeida wipes out a fleet of Muslim allies (with Venice providing the latter with galleys hauled across the Suez isthmus) in the port of Diu (178 miles northwest of Mumbai), Feb. 3.

Superior Portuguese ships, soldiers and armament sink or capture all of the Egyptian Mamluk, Ottoman and Gujarati ships. More than 1,700 Muslims die compared to 32 Portuguese (plus 300 wounded).

Victory establishes Portuguese control of the western Indian Ocean and domination of rich trade with the East for more than a century before they are challenged by Dutch.

1509

Kongo's New Christian King

Death of father leads to ascension of Afonso I, priest-educated ally of the Portuguese, as king of Kongo. Kingdom adopts more Portuguese names and fashions, and sends elite boys to Europe for study. Afonso's son, Henrique, is

made a bishop in 1518 and three years later returns to Kongo as Africa's first black prelate, to spread Catholicism.

But Portuguese settlers and slave traders from São Tomé expand activities with little regard for Afonso's concerns. In the 1520s, Afonso complains in frequent letters to João III of high-handed Portuguese ways in slave trade. He worries that Kongo is being depopulated and at one point demands the trade be ended.

But Afonso (who dies in 1542) and his successors continue cooperative relationship with the Portuguese. And they continue to be accepted as independent sovereigns and allies of the Portuguese kings, a relationship unique to the European experience in West Africa before the 19th century.

1509

Muslim Bastions Fall

Castilian-led forces of Fernando take Oran and Algiers and, a year later, Tripoli, in bloody attacks from the sea. Thousands of Muslims transported as slaves to Malta, Sicily and Iberia.

Algiers is lost to Arab corsairs in 1516 (to become center of Barbary piracy and slave raiders). Tripoli taken by Ottoman Turks in 1551. Oran remains Spain's until 1708, then goes back and forth until final departure of Spanish after 1790 earthquake.

1510

Shipwrecked Among the Tupí

Diogo Álvares Correia, a Portuguese sailor, survives a shipwreck off Brazil's Bay of All Saints (named by Vespucci), and is taken into a Tupí tribe. They call him Caramuru ("moray") and he marries Paraguaçu, daughter of the cacique.

This story of a Portuguese man marrying an Indian woman becomes the pattern as Brazil develops, with versions of Tupí dominating the language of the heavily *mestiço* communities that result.

Correia takes Paraguaçu on a French ship to Saint-Malo where she is baptized as Katherine du Brésil by the wife of Jacques Cartier, making them Brazil's first Christian family upon their return.

In 1549, Correia helps Tomé de Sousa found Bahia on the Bay of All Saints, which will become Salvador, Brazil's first capital.

1510

African Captives Cross Atlantic

King Fernando authorizes a shipment of 250 enslaved Africans to be sent from Castile to Hispaniola, the first trans-Atlantic movement of slaves to New World. They may have been black *ladinos* with some history in Castile.

1510

De Almeida Killed at Cape

Khoikhoi people inflict bloody defeat on Portuguese crews who put into Table Bay (Cape of Good Hope) to replenish water. Villagers, provoked by a landing party,

ambush and kill Francisco de Almeida, the commander, 11 captains and 52 others at mouth of Salt river. De Almeida was returning to Lisbon after defeating Mamluk and Ottoman forces at Diu.

The fierce Khoikhoi convince hardnosed Portuguese to avoid the Cape, which will open the way for Dutch to take control of the strategic region 42 years later.

1511

Velázquez Takes Cuba

At the direction of King Fernando, Diego Colón sends Diego Velázquez de Cuéllar and 300 men to conquer Cuba (the Taíno name), January. After bloody defeats of the Taíno over three years (and subjugation of survivors via the *encomienda* system), Velázquez founds Baracoa, Bayamo, Santiago de Cuba and Havana.

Cuéllar's force includes Hernán Cortés, who will subjugate Mexico's Aztec empire.

1511

Friar Condemns Taíno Enslavement

Antonio de Montesinos, a Dominican friar, condemns treatment of Indians under the *encomienda* system in an angry sermon to Hispaniola settlers, Dec. 21. Diego Colón is outraged and insists the Dominicans return home. But the sermon makes a deep impression on Bartolomé de las Casas, an encomendero who witnesses many atrocities in the subjugation of Cuba (he arrives there in 1513), which convince him to give up his Taíno slaves and take up their cause with King Fernando.

Montesinos quote: "(the colonists) are all in mortal sin, and live and die in it, because of the cruelty and tyranny they practice among these innocent peoples."

1513

Balboa Reaches Pacific

Vasco Núñez de Balboa scales a mountain ridge on Tierra Firme (the Panamanian isthmus) to be the first European to set eyes on the Pacific Ocean from the American mainland, Sept. 25. Four days later, he enters the surf (at Gulf of San Miguel), and names and claims the *Mar del Sur* (Southern Sea) for Castile. The expedition began as a search for gold and Indian slaves, which are both found.

In 1510, Balboa (a stowaway on a ship from Santo Domingo) rose to be a leader in establishing Santa María (on the Caribbean-side Gulf of Uraba), the first European settlement on the American mainland.

1513

African Slave Numbers Surge

More African slaves arrive in Santo Domingo to be assigned to gold mining in streams. Their numbers surge to 15,000 by 1555.

1515

The Forros of São Tomé

Portuguese transport African captives to São Tomé and Príncipe from Elmina on Gold Coast, and later from Kongo and Angola. In a departure from usual prohibitions, São Tomé settlers are encouraged to marry slave women to maintain population (tropical diseases kill many). Wives and children are granted manumission by royal decree. Original male slaves win freedom in 1517.

These actions lead to development of *forro* (free people of color) communities. Forros win right to hold public office, 1520, and several go on to establish their own slave-worked plantations.

São Tomé is soon a major producer of sugar with wealthy planters, eclipsing Madeira (which runs out of forest firewood to boil the cane) as Europe's leading source by mid-1500s. At the same time, the island serves as a transfer port for African slaves ultimately bound for Caribbean and Brazilian plantations.

1515

Priest Pleads for Indians

Bartolomé de las Casas, now a priest, travels to Seville to advocate for Indian slaves. Death of King Fernando, Jan. 25, 1516, frustrates hopes of immediate royal intervention. At first, De las Casas advocates replacing Indians with African slaves (as captives of "justified war") and free Spanish peasants. Writes graphically of slaughter of Taíno on Cuba and ultimately opposes all slavery.

Separately, a census of Santo Domingo settlers finds that 40% have taken Taíno women as wives.

1515

New World Sugar Mills

A sugar mill is established in Santo Domingo, first in the New World, to process cane that was introduced by Columbus from the Canary Islands. Within 5 years, more than 20 mills are operating on Hispaniola and the demand for slaves soars.

A mill begins operating in Pernambuco, Brazil, in 1516.

1516

Spain's New Teenage King

With death of King Fernando, Charles, 16, grandson of Isabella and Fernando, becomes king of Aragon (as Charles I) and persuades his mother, Juana, to authorize his rule of Castile as her co-monarch. Juana, judged mentally unstable, continues to be confined to the Royal Palace in Tordesillas.

Charles is the first to designate himself as king of "the Spains and the Indies," as the term "Espagne" is ever-more widely used to cover all the kingdoms, although they continue as separate jurisdictions until 1707.

Incidentally, Charles, raised in Flanders by his aunt, Margaret of Austria, knows no Spanish.

Three years later, Charles inherits the Austrian empire via his paternal grandfather and is also elected Holy Roman Emperor (as Charles V). He is soon recognized as the most powerful man in Europe and will rule for 40 years.

1516**To Rio de la Plata**

Juan Díaz de Solís leads three Spanish ships to the Rio de la Plata, probably the first Europeans to reach that point. De Solís and nine others sail to confluence of Paraná and Uruguay rivers. But Charrúa Indians kill De Solís, and fleet soon withdraws.

Sebastian Cabot, sailing for Spain, explores and names the vast estuary in 1525.

1516**Rise of Barbarossa**

Oruç and Khizr Reis, Muslim corsairs famous for raiding Christian ports throughout the Mediterranean, and for seizing ships and hundreds of Christians for slaves, take Algiers from Spain. When Oruç dies in battle, 1518, Khizr takes his nickname, Barbarossa ("Redbeard") and aligns Algiers with the Ottoman sultan, Selim I.

Barbarossa continues raids on Spanish, French and Italian Mediterranean coasts, and joins in Ottoman conquest of Rhodes, 1523. He transports 70,000 Mudéjars (Muslims now unwelcome in their native Spain) fleeing to Algiers in seven journeys, 1529. Many of them join his crews.

1517**Luther's Explosive Theses**

Martin Luther posts his 95 Theses against sale of church indulgences, Oct. 31. Luther, a 33-year-old Augustinian friar teaching at the University of Wittenberg, initially wants only to stimulate a theology discussion. But he is soon challenging both the Pope and the young Charles I (who, as the Holy Roman Emperor, will be the political leader of the Catholic response).

That, in turn, leads to the most profound division of Christendom since the 1054 Schism between Roman Catholicism and Eastern Orthodoxy, and to bloody warfare that will embroil the history of Europe, the Americas, and the slave trade in the centuries to come.

1517**Cowries to West Africa**

Moneta cowrie shells are introduced to São Tomé and ultimately to Slave Coast factories, particularly in Benin, where they will be widely accepted by Africans as currency including in the slave trade.

The *moneta* sea snails (median shell length, 2 cm) are harvested and dried out almost exclusively in the southern Maldivian Islands, and are in particular demand in Ceylon and Bengal when the Portuguese first sail into the Indian Ocean.

Over the next 300 years, enormous quantities of cowries will move as ballast from the Indian Ocean to Lisbon, and later to Amsterdam and London, in ships carrying spices and silks from the East.

They will then become part of the Triangular Trade to West Africa (notably

Wydah and Accra) where they are exchanged for slaves, along with the guns, fabrics, iron bars and spirits manufactured in Europe.

1517

Portugal Aids Ethiopian Emperor

A Portuguese fleet attacks and burns Zeila on the Gulf Aden, a stronghold of the Muslim Adal Sultanate. This is in support of embattled Ethiopian Emperor Dawit II.

1518

Spain Seeks More Africans

Spain, needing more African slaves in New World (to replace Indians) but lacking direct access to Portugal's slave *feitorias*, contracts (via the *Asiento de Negros*) with foreign merchants and companies to provide them to Spain's colonies, and to pay the crown (Charles I) for the right.

The first *asiento* calls for delivery of 4,000 slaves over eight years. Over the next 60 years, most *asientos* go to Portuguese merchants with *entr e* to the factories. Afterward, the British and Dutch also compete for Spain's business.

1519-1521

Revolt: Ta no Inspire Blacks

A Ta no uprising on Hispaniola is led by cacique Enriquillo, a nephew of Anacoana. He and his followers hide in the Bahoruco mountains, and hold off Spanish pursuit.

Two years later, during the Christmas season, black slaves rise up on Diego Col n's Rio Nigua plantation. Col n's men round up an unknown number who are executed, but most get away to the mountains, including some to Enriquillo's camp. The latter maintains its freedom for 30 years.

This is said to be the first New World insurrection of African slaves (believed to be Muslim Wolof), the first recorded African slave cooperation with Indians, and the creation of the first *cimarron* communities of escaped slaves. The term is shortened to *marron* (in Spanish and French colonies) and to *maroon* in English colonies.

In January 1522, Col n introduces early laws to suppress uprisings.

1519-1521

Cort s, Smallpox Ravage Aztecs

Hern n Cort s, *alcalde* of Santiago de Cuba and ambitious for much more, departs February with expedition of 11 ships, 500 men, 13 horses (the first to reach the North American mainland) and 15 small cannon. He wins Indian allies (including Tlaxcaltecs) and marches on the Aztec capital of Tenochtitlan. They first enter Cholula (famed for its Great Pyramid) and massacre an unarmed crowd before Montezuma welcomes them to Tenochtitlan, Nov. 8. But Aztec population turns on both Montezuma and Spaniards; the former is killed and the Spaniards barely escape from the island city, losing more than 800 men.

Two years of desperate fighting follow, as well as rivalry with the Spanish governor in Cuba. With reinforcements, Cort s captures Tenochtitlan and last

Aztec king, Aug. 13, 1521. Charles I appoints him governor of "New Spain" (further confirming use of "Espagne" to describe Castile, Aragon and their associated kingdoms). Cortés destroys Aztec temples, builds Mexico City into center of Spain's American empire. He imports Franciscan and Dominican brothers to convert Indians and imposes the *encomienda* system in 1524.

He goes on to invade Honduras where his main opponent is a former lieutenant, Cristóbal de Olid, now supported by Cuba's governor. Cortés marries several times, but his favorite consort is Doña Marina, a Nahua Indian who became his interpreter early in the Mexican adventure and mother of his first son in 1522. He retires to manage his silver mines and explores the Baja California peninsula, finally returning to Spain in 1541.

More death: Spanish bring smallpox and other diseases that ravages Indians of valley of Mexico, beginning in 1520. Estimated to total as many as 25 million before the conquest (the greatest concentration of people in the Americas by far), 5-8 million die in just two years. Drought and more epidemics further depress the indigenous population later in the century.

1519

Panama City on Pacific

Panama City is founded by Pedro Arias de Ávila on the Pacific side of the isthmus, Aug. 15. This is only six months after De Ávila arranged the trial and execution of Balboa, his predecessor as governor. He installs Francisco Pizarro as *alcalde*.

Panama City becomes the capital of the colony in 1524, the starting point for Pizarro's expeditions into Peru and then a key transit point for treasure for 200 years.

1519

Magellan: Around the World

Fernando Magellan departs Sanlúcar with five ships and 270 men, Sept. 20, on a voyage that crosses the South Atlantic, discovers present-day Strait of Magellan, then navigates a much, much larger-than-expected Pacific Ocean.

Magellan, a Portuguese navigator with considerable experience in the East, proposed to find a way around South America to fulfill Columbus's dream of sailing west to the Far East. The expedition was rejected by Portugal's Manuel I, but accepted by Charles I of Spain in 1517. The latter was convinced by Magellan that the voyage would prove the Spice Islands lay on Spain's side of the Meridian of Demarcation.

Magellan weathers mutiny by Spanish officers, storms and contrary currents only to die in a fight with island people in present-day Philippines. Single surviving ship *Victoria*, with Juan Sebastián Elcano (a Basque) and crew of 17, find their way across the Indian Ocean (avoiding the Portuguese), then around the Cape of Good Hope, stepping off the ship only at the Cape Verde island of Santiago for food and water. They complete first circumnavigation of world, returning to Sanlúcar, Sept. 6, 1522.

1522**Deadly Azores Earthquake**

An earthquake and mudslides destroy coastal Vila Franca do Campo, capital of the Azores on the island of São Miguel; 3,000 to 5,000 die, Oct. 20-21.

The capital is moved west to Ponta Delgada.

1524**Verrazzano Explores East Coast**

Giovanni da Verrazzano, a Florentine sailing from Dieppe for France's King François I, ranges along the North American East Coast from present-day Cape Fear to Pamlico Sound, New York Bay, and Narragansett and Massachusetts bays (but misses Chesapeake and Delaware bays). Like Magellan, he seeks a passage to the Pacific, but without success.

Verrazzano undertakes a second voyage to touch Brazil and dies on a third voyage, in 1528, possibly at the hands of Carib Indians on Guadeloupe.

1527**Blacks Escape on Puerto Rico**

Slave revolt on Puerto Rico ends with some blacks escaping to mountains to join remaining Taíno in *cimarron* communities.

1527**Mutinous Troops Sack Rome**

More than 20,000 German mercenaries and Spanish troops, angered by lack of pay despite their recent success against the enemies of Holy Roman Emperor (Spain's Charles I), storm Rome, May 6, to begin weeks of destruction, looting and massacre of thousands.

The 500-man Swiss Guard is all but wiped out defending the new St. Peter's Basilica, still under construction, but they give Pope Clement VII time to escape into Castel Sant'Angelo. He receives little help from his allies (Milan, Venice, Florence and France). He pays a large ransom, and concedes considerable territory and basic leadership on church issues to Charles.

The mutinous soldiers don't leave until February when food runs low and plague breaks out. Rome's population drops from 55,000 to 10,000.

1529**Venezuela Redeems Royal Debt**

Capt.-Gen. Ambrosius Ehinger lands at Santa Ana de Coro to establish Klein-Venedig ("Little Venice" or Venezuela) on behalf of Welser banking family of Augsburg. Charles I has granted Welsers colonial rights to repay loans. Ehinger names Lake Maracaibo after defeated Coquivacoa chief. Welser forces spend years in futile search for El Dorado, a city of gold, and its adorned *zipa* (chief).

Raleigh's expedition: Many more expeditions will search for El Dorado over the next 70 years, most of them led by Spanish adventurers. Then, in 1595, during the long Anglo-Spanish war, Walter Raleigh captures Spain's newly settled island of Trinidad and leads an English force up the Orinoco river, 400 miles into the Guiana highlands. Raleigh tries again, 22 years later (well after his Roanoke

Island efforts), and again finds no Dorado. But his men kill a number of Spaniards, violating express orders of King James I who had struggled to reach peace with Spain. James imprisons Raleigh on his return to England; he is executed in 1618.

1532-1535

Pizarro Vanquishes Inca

Francisco Pizarro begins Spanish conquest of Peru (a Quechua word for what turns out to be civilization even greater than the Aztecs') with perhaps 110 foot soldiers, 67 mounted men and three arquebuses. The Inca ("emperor"), Atahualpa, had just defeated and killed his brother and has an army of 50,000. He meets Pizarro at Cajamarca, Nov. 16, with an unarmed escort of 6,000. They are ambushed and overwhelmed by Pizarro's men. Atahualpa, captured, arranges for a ransom of gold to fill a room, which is delivered. But Pizarro convicts the Inca of conspiracy and has him garroted.

After increasingly difficult battles with Inca armies, Pizarro takes the royal Inca city of Cuzco, November 1533. By now, Inca are also reeling from European-introduced disease. But they besiege Cuzco with a force of perhaps 100,000. Inca win battles outside fortifications (captured horses and guns help) but cannot breach walls.

High roads: Spanish are amazed by (and benefit from) north-south Inca highways on both slopes of the Andes. These are connected by more than 20 transverses rising as high as 16,000 feet. The 25,000-mile system includes paved sections, vertiginous stairs, bridges, retaining walls, drainage and messenger-relay stations.

Pizarro founds Lima on the coast as his capital, Jan. 6, 1535, and introduces *encomienda* system to subjugate Inca. He takes Atahualpa's teen consort, Cuxirimay Ocllo, as his own; she bears him two sons. But Pizarro's partners in conquest fall out and he is assassinated by the son of one of these, 1541.

Viceroyalty of Peru is created by King Charles I, 1542, with authority over virtually all of Spanish South America. A breakaway Inca state continues at Vilcabamba on rugged northeast slope of Andes until Spanish seize it in 1572, capturing and executing the last Inca, Túpac Amaru.

Inca population: Estimated at 9 million in 1520s, a census finds only 1.1 million in 1573; smallpox and other European diseases are the main cause.

1532

First Settlement in Brazil

São Vicente, south of present-day Rio de Janeiro, is founded by Martim Afonso de Sousa as the first Portuguese settlement in the Americas (three decades after Cabral claimed Brazil for Portugal).

1533

Cuba's First Slave Revolt

Four blacks mount first recorded uprising on Cuba at new underground Jobabo gold mines, November, 20 years after initial arrival of enslaved Africans on island.

They die fighting but others will escape to join Taíno *cimarron* communities, called *palenques* in Spanish colonies.

As early as 1526, Spanish crown urges planters to permit faithful slaves to buy their liberty. African slaves are also encouraged to take part in Catholic church.

1534-1536

Cartier Ascends St. Lawrence

Jacques Cartier, commissioned by France's François I, discovers and names Gulf of St. Lawrence and mouth of St. Lawrence river. Returns the following year and maneuvers upriver—which is tidal until it narrows at the Iroquois village of Stadacona (present-day Quebec City). Cartier gets the name "Quebec" from the Indian word for "strait."

"Canada" is from the Iroquois word for "village." But Cartier applies it to the entire riverbank and inland as he ascends to the Lachine rapids and the village of Hochelaga, site of present-day Montreal. Severity of the winter comes as a shock to the French and Cartier fails to establish a colony over his three voyages.

Basques: French explorers encounter whalers from the Basque country who team up with Indians to hunt bowhead and right whales. Their first recorded voyage to the gulf and Newfoundland was in 1530.

1534

New Spain: Striking Silver

Hernán Cortés's men open first consequential silver mine at Taxco (in Mexico's present-day Guerrero province). They also find tin and copper.

1535

Portuguese Expand in Brazil

Duarte Coelho granted captaincy of Brazil's Pernambuco where he defeats the Caeté (a Tupi people) and establishes settlement of Igarasso and the church of Dos Santos Cosme e Damião, first in Brazil. He founds Olinda, 10 miles to the south, the following year.

Vast area between Atlantic coast and Line of Demarcation is mapped into 15 captaincies, each assigned by King João III to a noble *donatário* to oversee and profit from settlement, 1534.

First African slaves arrive at Olinda in 1537. Sugar cane plantations initiated with Coelho's erection of sugar mill, 1541, at neighboring Recife, named for its offshore reef.

1535

Fierce War Across Mediterranean

Spain's Charles I and Genoa's Andrea Doria lead an allied fleet of 211 ships and 55 galleys in June to take Tunis, lost the previous year, back from Barbarossa. The latter is now an Ottoman admiral under Suleiman the Magnificent.

Chains protecting the harbor of La Golleta are broken by Portugal's *São João Baptista*, a huge, early galleon with 366 guns.

Many of the Turkish galleys are manned by Jewish slaves, while Spanish galleys are said to be rowed by Protestant prisoners from the Netherlands. More than 30,000 massacred in Tunis, mostly civilians; 9,000 Christian slaves are freed.

Barbarossa is long gone, taking command of another fleet at Boné, sacking Mahón on Menorca, and seizing 6,000 Christians there as slaves.

On galleons: Their design—longer, lower and usually smaller than carracks—allows them to be used as warships as well as for cargo. Galleons are vital for all contending European nations throughout the Age of Exploration.

1535

Oyo Capital Destroyed

Oyo empire, strongest of Yoruba states, is overthrown by Nupe people who sack the interior capital of Ilé-Ifè (in present-day Osun State, Nigeria). Oyo leaders will struggle to rebound over next 80 years.

1536

Portugal's Inquisition Begins

At the request of João III, Pope Paul III authorizes the Portuguese Inquisition, which targets "New Christians" Jewish *conversos*, including many who came to Portugal from Spain.

The first *auto-da-fé* ("act of faith," which can include death by fire) takes place in 1540. Over the next 254 years, 1,175 are burned at the stake, 633 are burned in effigy and nearly 30,000 others are assigned less drastic penance. This does not include those brought before tribunals in Brazil, on the Cape Verde Islands and Azores or in other overseas possessions.

1536

Barbados, Just Visiting

Barbados, easternmost Caribbean island, visited and named by Portugal's Pedro a Campos on his way to Brazil. But the first European settlement happens much later, in 1627.

1537 and on

Africans Brought to Mexico

Spanish *encomenderos* establish sugar plantations, worked by African slaves, around Vera Cruz, main port for Atlantic trade into what is now Mexico. Over next 200 years, perhaps 200,000 Africans are brought to Vera Cruz, mainly from Senegambia and Guinea (according to present-day DNA analysis).

Slaves assigned to fields, and as domestics, artisans and as overseers of Indian workers in mines. Indian population eventually absorbs the African population as intermarriage takes place from nearly the beginning. By mid-1700s, the region is said to have no more than 10,000 slaves, mainly African.

1537

Pope Attempts Defense of Indians

Pope Paul III issues *Sublimis Deus*, a bull declaring that "Indians are human

beings and not to be robbed of freedom or possessions," June 2, and prescribes automatic excommunication for offenders who would enslave them. This even if indigenous peoples are not Christianized.

Strong opposition from Spain leads Paul to annul the censure of excommunication the following year, but the original bull's teaching that all humans are spiritually equal is not struck.

Enslavement of black Africans is not specifically addressed.

1538

Barbarossa Defeats Holy League

Barbarossa's Ottoman fleet of 122 galleys destroys a much larger Holy League fleet led by Andrea Doria off Preveza, on Greece's Ionian coast, Sept. 28.

Combined Spanish, Portuguese, Genoese and Venetian fleets lose 128 ships destroyed or boarded, thousands dead and 3,000 captured.

Barbarossa loses 400 killed and no ships in the greatest Ottoman naval victory over the Europeans. It solidifies Ottoman dominance of Aegean and Ionian seas, in addition to nominal control of the Barbary Coast states.

Equally disastrous is Charles I's attempted siege of Algiers in the fall of 1541. Bad weather and disease hobble the mostly Spanish attackers, who lose 130 ships, 17,000 men killed and thousands more captured and sold into slavery. Among the surviving Spanish officers: Hernán Cortés, 20 years after he conquered Mexico.

1539-1542

De Soto Brings War, Disease

Hernando de Soto leads first European exploration deep into present U.S. South, starting from present-day Tampa Bay, ranging into North Carolina and then west through Alabama and across Mississippi river (1541) to Texas. He encounters populous communities of Mississippi mound-building Indians, kills 2,500 or more (led by chief Tuskaloosa) in a bloody battle, probably near present-day Selma, AL.

This expedition also introduces smallpox and other European diseases, which are now believed to have killed as much as 90% of the Mississippian population. Much smaller groups of Indians are encountered decades later when Spanish return.

De Soto himself dies "of fever" on the west bank of the Mississippi in April 1542. Expedition survivors finally make it back to Mexico City in 1543.

1540

Priest Dies Defending Indians

Antonio de Montesinos (the Dominican friar who defended Taíno on Hispaniola and inspired Las Casas), dies in Venezuela by hand of an officer affronted by his support of indigenous people, June 27.

De Montesinos had arrived in 1529 with the expedition mounted by the Welsers, a German banking family which obtained Venezuela as reward for their loans to Charles I.

A dispute, which breaks out in 1546 between the king's governor and

Welser representatives, ends in the deaths of the latter, the execution of the governor, and the cessation of all Welser rights to Venezuela.

1540-1580

Mexico: Mega Drought and Disease

Prolonged lack of rainfall in northern New Spain results in one of the most severe droughts in all of North America over the past 600 years, as measured by tree-ring data.

Brief wet periods coincide with mysterious, lethal "cocoliztli" epidemics that kill 5 to 15 million weakened indigenous people in 1545-1548 and another 2 million-plus in 1576-1578.

Cause: Descriptions of jaundice, convulsions, and bleeding from ears and nose rule out smallpox. One theory is that cocoliztli (an Aztec word for "pest") was a native viral hemorrhagic fever (such as a hantavirus) borne by explosive expansions of rodents.

Smaller epidemics follow. By 1620, 100 years after the arrival of Cortés, the indigenous population of the valley of Mexico has plummeted from as many as 25 million to only 1.5 million, a demographic disaster far greater, proportionately, than the Black Death.

1540-1542

Coronado Seeks Cibola's Treasure

Francisco Vázquez de Coronado, governor of Nueva Galicia, departs Compostela, on the Pacific coast of New Spain, with a force of 350 Spanish and more than 1,000 Aztec and other Indian allies in search of "Cibola" and its reported treasures, Feb. 23. He marches into present-day New Mexico only to discover that Cibola is merely a Zuni pueblo. He seizes other pueblos for winter quarters and more than 100 Tiwa are killed; surviving women and children are enslaved.

In the spring of 1541, the expedition crosses the Llano Estacado (Texas) and marches deep into Kansas, probably coming within several hundred miles of the DeSoto expedition. Coronado finds much buffalo and many Indians, and lieutenants encounter the Grand Canyon. But there is no treasure and they lose more Spanish horses to the plains.

1540-1542

Vast Uprising in New Spain

Taking advantage of Coronado's absence, the Caxcán and Zacateco rise up in the Mixtón War, named for the Indians' mountain redoubt. They are still angry over brutal Spanish seizure of their land (north of Guadalajara) 10 years previously and are badly oppressed by the *encomenderos*, one of whom they kill, roast and eat.

The Caxcán, led by Tenamaztle, repel one Spanish attack, whose leader dies, but are ultimately defeated by a second army of Spaniards and Indian allies. Thousands are killed, thousands more enslaved for silver mining, and women and children assigned to encomendero haciendas. Tenamaztle flees to mountains to fight on.

This foreshadows larger, longer Chichimeca War to come.

1541**Santiago Founded, Destroyed**

Pedro de Valdivia, a conquistador sent from Cuzco by Pizarro, founds Santiago (present-day Chile), Feb. 12, then manages to ignite war with the Mapuche peoples to the south. The latter destroy the new village, Sept. 11, but 55 soldiers led by Valdivia's mistress, Inés Suárez, hold out in the fort. She personally beheads seven captured caciques, shocking the Mapuche who withdraw.

The Mapuche, who had overthrown Inca rule not long before the Spanish arrived, will rise in bloody opposition many times over the next 350 years. Captured Mapuche are consigned to *encomienda* bondage.

1541-1542**De Orellana Descends Amazon**

Francisco de Orellana, one of Pizarro's conquistadors, leads a party from Quito down the Coca river to its confluence with the Napo. Instead of returning as ordered, De Orellana is persuaded by his 50 men (Dec. 26, 1541) to continue going downriver in two boats.

They are challenged by large communities of indigenous peoples, including the Omagua and the Tapuya as they pass confluences of the Rio Juruá and the Rio Negro (named by De Orellana), June 3, 1542. Describing a skirmish with Tupaya women and men, June 24, near the Rio Madeira, De Orellana dubbed the ever-widening waterway "the river of the Amazons." The two boats emerge into the Atlantic, Aug. 26, and sail north to Nueva Cádiz on Cubagua, off Venezuela, Sept. 11. A Dominican missionary, Gaspar de Carvajal, chronicles the incredible journey.

The expedition may have introduced the smallpox, malaria and yellow fever that kills as many as 2 million Amazon Indians over the following century.

1542**'New Laws' to Protect Indians**

Spain's Charles I issues New Laws, which replace Fernando II's less-than-effective Laws of Burgos, Nov. 20. New Laws prohibit enslavement of Indians in New Spain or forced labor of any kind, and require *encomenderos* to pay them for work they agree to. Also, encomiendas cannot be passed down beyond third generation.

The New Laws echo Pope Paul III's *Sublimis Deus* of 1537, and are largely a result of efforts of Bartolomé de las Casas, now a bishop and author of *A Short Account of the Destruction of the Indies*. The brutal Mixtón War may also be a factor.

Officials in New Spain are slow to enforce New Laws, and many settlers continue slave-like encomiendas.

The first printing press beyond Europe is operating in Mexico City by 1544.

1543**Copernicus's Revolution**

On the Revolutions of the Heavenly Spheres is published in Nuremburg.

Astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus of Frombork, Poland, lays out theories and observations that move the sun to the center of the known universe and identifies the earth as just one of a number of planets orbiting the sun. This upends Ptolemy's geocentric system, accepted since ancient times.

Publication has long been considered the beginning of the Scientific Revolution.

1545

Fabulous Silver Mines Open

In Peru (present-day Bolivia), Spanish begin mining high-altitude (13,420 feet) Cerro Rico de Potosí soon after silver is discovered by Diego Hualpa, an Indian miner (the Inca had long worked mines in region). Over the next 200 years, an estimated 80% of the world's silver is drawn from Potosí's mines, and refined and minted here.

More than 12,000 Indians are conscripted each year under a harsh Spanish version of the Inca *mita* system, in which men work for limited periods on public projects. High mortality rate due to falls while lifting heavy ore bags hundreds of feet via ladders. Black slaves not considered because of altitude requirements.

Transportation: Silver bars, and minted reals and pesos are transported down steep Andes slope by 3-month llama trains to Arica (and later Callao), then by ship to Panama City, then by mule train across the Isthmus to Nombre de Dios, where a treasure fleet gathers annually.

The Potosí mines are still operating in 2021, having generated more than 60,000 tons of silver to date.

1546

More Silver in Mexico

Silver is discovered near what will become the city of Zacatecas on the desert plateau of north central New Spain. Soon a series of rich mines are established here in the Veta Grande (Great Vein). This follows opening of silver mines at Guanajuato in 1530s, and precedes the fabulous silver strikes at San Luis Potosí (named after the rich Bolivian mine) in 1592.

Problem: Smelting of ore to bring out silver requires much fuel and labor, and the high-country mines are strained. **Solution:** Mercury amalgamation separates silver in ore; the process is developed in Mexico, 1554, by Bartolomé de Medina, but requires regular shipments of mercury from Spain's Almaden mines via the treasure fleet.

1547

Hispaniola: Cimarrons Survive

Spanish settlers on Hispaniola dismayed by proliferation of *cimarron* communities, with perhaps 3,000 total people who regularly pillage plantations. Leaders, including Lemba (said to be from the Congo), Diego Guzman and Diego de Ocampo, reject treaty proposed by Spanish Gov. Cerrato. He attacks and destroys Lemba's enclave, but other cimarron groups survive.

Of 30 sugar mills, only 10 continue after fighting. Whites eventually

abandon plantations, especially in north and west, and shift from sugar to cattle ranching. Fewer slaves are required, and they win much more autonomy.

Cimarron communities will endure for generations and forge alliances later in the century with French and English buccaneers in north and west.

1549

Bringing Order to Brazil

King João III sends Tomé de Sousa with six ships, and 1,000 settlers and missionaries to establish Portugal's authority over chaotic Brazil. This first governor-general founds and fortifies Salvador as the capital, works for peace with indigenous people and recommends settlement of Rio de Janeiro, far to the south.

He is later claimed to be a forefather of Francisco Félix de Sousa, who migrates from Brazil to Whydah in the early 19th century to become a leading slave trader bridging European and African cultures.

1549

Rebel Wolof Generates Captives

A Wolof leader, Dece Fu Njogu, founds the coastal kingdom of Cayor, which includes Cape Verde, and declares it independent of the larger Wolof empire. Soon thereafter, the Portuguese (who have also used nearby Gorée Island) set up a new factory at Rufisque (part of Dakar today) to trade for slaves with often-at-war Fu Njogu.

1550

1550-1590

War Wins Indians New Status

In New Spain, Chichimeca confederation rises up against Spaniards and their allies who raid Indian villages for more slaves to work the new silver mines. Caravans taking "silver roads" south from mines to Querétaro and Guadalajara are subject to constant Chichimeca attack. The nomadic Indians avoid mass death by disease, and succeed with thin, armor-piercing arrows, ambush tactics and newly obtained horses. They intercept many silver convoys, kill thousands of troops and Indian allies. They escalate in 1571 with attacks on presidios and towns, block the Camino Real and force closure of many mines.

Dominican priests blame war on unjust enslavement of Chichimeca peoples. A *mestizo* captain on the Spanish side, Miguel Caldera, is critical to negotiations. A new viceroy, Álvaro Manrique de Zúñiga, eventually withdraws soldiers, curbs slave raids, increases food donations, establishes new towns for Indians and emphasizes peaceful conversion. The war is mostly resolved, with silver mines back in operation, by 1590.

This "Purchase for Peace" dictates a less violently aggressive attitude toward indigenous peoples on the part of New Spain's viceroys for the next 300 years.

1551**Universities for Peru, New Spain**

National University of San Marcos chartered for Lima by decree of Charles I, king of Spain, May 12. Royal and Pontifical University of Mexico is also chartered by Charles, Sept. 21. They will be the second and third universities in the New World, after University of St. Thomas Aquinas in Santo Domingo, 1538.

1552**Venezuela: Blacks and Indians Revolt**

Miguel the Black (originally from Puerto Rico) leads insurrection of black slaves and Jirajira Indians working Buría river gold mines (in present-day Venezuela). They establish and defend *cumbes* (cimarron towns), attack mines to free more people and inspire hundreds to risk escape.

Spanish forces counter in 1555, killing now-King Miguel and hunting down most of the cumbe inhabitants. But slaves continue to escape from mines and plantations to create new cumbes, whose population is put at more than 20,000 in 17th century.

1552**Cimarrons Beset Treasure Trains**

Bayano, a Yoruban, leads insurrection shortly after arriving in present-day Panama. Rebel black slaves soon number as many as 1,200 and name their free *palenque* Ronconholon. They fight off colonial governor for five years with guerrilla tactics, and alliances with Indians and pirates.

Spaniards ultimately capture Bayano and send him to Spain where he dies. But other cimarrons continue to harass Spain's cross-Isthmus treasure mule-trains.

1553-1558**Mary is England's Queen**

Mary, Henry VIII's Catholic daughter by Catherine of Aragon, ascends throne, July, and moves to reverse Protestant movement launched by Henry and continued by Edward before latter's death at age 15.

A year later, Mary marries Spain's Felipe (son of Charles I) at Winchester Cathedral. New heresy laws target Protestant nobles and bishops; 283 are ultimately executed, most by burning.

1555**New Dungeons on Gold Coast**

Portuguese establish more slave factories on Gold Coast, including predecessor post to Cape Coast Castle, east of Elmina. Local tribes receive guns, ammunition, clothing, spices, sugar and silk. Later, large underground dungeons are dug at several factories to hold as many as 1,000 captives each for Middle Passage shipment to America.

1555**Charles Hears Indian Case**

Tenamaztle, surviving indigenous leader from Mixtón War in New Spain, pleads the Caxcán case before Charles I and the Council of the Indies in Valladolid; he is assisted by De las Casas. But no record survives of trial's outcome or Tenamaztle's fate.

1555**Religious Wars Abate**

Peace of Augsburg permits rulers (but not citizens) of Holy Roman nations and principalities to choose either Catholicism or Lutheranism for their lands, ending bloody religious warfare for a time.

Charles I (who is also Holy Roman Emperor Charles V) accepts the reality of the Reformation. He abdicates the following year from both Spanish and Holy Roman thrones, retires to a monastery in Extremadura, and dies in 1558 of malaria, age 58.

1558**Long Live the Queen**

Felipe II takes Charles's place as king of Spain. Although married to Mary, queen of England, they rule their nations separately and usually apart.

Mary dies of influenza or tuberculosis, Nov. 17, and Elizabeth I ascends the throne, bound to return England to the Protestant path and soon to become Felipe's bitter enemy.

1562**England Goes A-Slaving**

First English slaving expedition is led by John Hawkins with three ships to Sierra Leone. More than 300 blacks are captured or bought, and transported to Spanish plantations on Hispaniola, where he trades for sugar, pearls and animal hides for return trip to England.

On a second voyage, Hawkins gathers 600 slaves to sell in Spanish Venezuela and New Granada (present-day Columbia), despite Spain's ban on such trade (the English lack the *asiento*); Queen Elizabeth is an investor. Spain and Portugal lodge protests.

1562**Earthquake on Hispaniola**

Inland Santiago de los Caballeros and La Vega are destroyed by a Dec. 2 earthquake that levels much of the fertile Cibao Valley. Plantations are ruined, and more slaves are able to escape to *cimarron* communities.

1564**Convoys Protect Treasure Fleets**

Felipe II institutes convoy system to defend Spain's treasure fleets (the *Armadas de la Carrera*) as they depart Vera Cruz and Portobelo to rendezvous at Havana.

Combined fleet then sails trans-Atlantic to Seville (and later to Cádiz). Fleets expand from 20 ships to 50 large galleons by end of the century, and make the Spanish empire the world's richest and most dominant.

The convoys are devised by Pedro Menéndez de Avilés, the king's favorite admiral and a designer of the definitive version of the treasure galleon. The great majority of treasure ships will deliver their cargo safely.

Santo Domingo's loss: Havana is chosen as rendezvous point because of its location on the Straits of Florida, the main passage north for the Gulf Stream. Santo Domingo (and all of Hispaniola), already deserted by many settlers and bypassed by new colonists who flock to silver-rich New Spain (Mexico) and Peru, are thus no longer on the main trade route to Spain.

1564-1590

Bornu Empire at Peak

Bornu empire reaches its greatest extent under Idris Alooma, gaining control of Hausaland, stretching west toward Niger river, and winning dominance over Ahir and Taureg nomads. Empire deploys mounted musketeers and mailed cavalry. Secures trade routes to the Ottoman empire, and later fights with Moroccans against Ottomans.

In early 17th century, Bornu traders march tens of thousands black captives across Sahara to Tripoli (then the largest slave market on the Mediterranean) in exchange for horses and other goods. Thousands of captives die of thirst and exhaustion between oases.

1565

St. Augustine, Rio de Janeiro Founded

St. Augustine is founded, Sept. 8, in present-day Florida by Menéndez de Avilés who, with the aid of a hurricane, defeats French Huguenots attempting their own settlement at Fort Caroline to the north (present-day Jacksonville). Menéndez orders 350 male "heretics" put to the sword, including their commander, Jean Ribault. The Spanish are determined to eliminate any threat to the treasure-laden *Aramadas de la Carrera* that sail the Straits of Florida on their way to Spain.

St. Augustine will be central to Florida's 300-year history of violence among contending Spanish, British, American, Indian and escaped-slave forces. It is the oldest continuously inhabited city founded by Europeans in the present-day U.S.

In Brazil: São Sebastião do Rio de Janeiro is founded March 1 by Estácio de Sá as a base from which to attack a 10-year-old French colony on Serigipe Island in Guanabara Bay. That colony, which includes Huguenots and is aided by the Tupí, is ousted Jan. 20, 1567.

Inland São Paulo predates Rio. It was founded Jan. 25, 1555, by Jesuit missionaries Manuel da Nóbrega and José de Anchieta.

1565

New Trans-Pacific Route

Spain's Andrés de Urdaneta discovers the North Pacific current that will take Manila galleons down California coast to Acapulco over the next 250 years. Most

of his crew dies on initial 129-day passage aboard *San Pedro*, which reaches Acapulco Oct. 8.

Mexican silver and Spanish goods are shipped to Manila (driven by mid-Pacific westerly currents and easterly winds) to buy Chinese porcelain, silk, jade, silk; Indian cotton and rugs; and Spice Island and Malaysian spices for the return to Acapulco. With this, Spain finally taps into Far East trade.

Overland: Cargo landed at Acapulco is loaded on mule trains that climb the mountains to Mexico City. From there it goes on to Vera Cruz and the treasure fleet bound for Spain. Indians and *mestizos* provide most of the labor. In later years, Manila shipments are combined at Acapulco with silver from Bolivia and Peru, redirected from the Panama City-Portabelo route (vulnerable to pirates, enemy warships and raiding *cimarrons*).

1567-1568

Hawkins & Drake Thwarted

John Hawkins, now with cousin Francis Drake, again seizes slaves ashore in Cacheu and Sierra Leone, and from a Portuguese ship. But he is locked out of trade when they arrive in Spanish America. Ambushed by a new Spanish viceroy at Vera Cruz, he loses four of his six ships and 320 crew. He and Drake get back to England, but barely.

The battle sets off 36 years of on-and-off fighting between Spain and England, much of it in the West Indies through privateers and pirates, but also including the Spanish Armada's famous attack on England itself, 1588.

1568

First Slave Cabildos on Cuba

The first *cabildo* of Cuban slaves forms in Havana, where they work mainly in the port, loading cargo. Slave cabildos are brotherhoods of Yoruba and other African groups. They continue through the centuries, encouraged by Catholic priests who see them as an avenue to teach Christian ways.

But members also share their homeland religious beliefs. Cabildos allow *Santería* to eventually develop, a unique Afro-Cuban combination of Yoruba deities (*oricha*) and Catholic saints, with many Yoruba customs, including animal sacrifice, observed.

1569-1571

Morisco Revolt in Alpujarra

In the Alpujarra hills of Granada, *moriscos* (Muslims forced to convert to Christianity) violently resist Felipe II's requirement that they abandon their distinctive language, clothing and public baths, and submit to religious inspections.

They take over their villages and imprison non-morisco "Old Christians" in churches. Spanish forces counterattack and fighting devolves into bloody village sackings, mass executions and enslavement. As moriscos gain upper hand in 1570, Felipe sends in more soldiers who destroy harvests, kill men or send them to galleys, and enslave thousands of women and children.

In defeat, as many as 80,000 moriscos—half the population—are driven from Granada, their lands given to Christian settlers from other parts of Castile.

1569

Mercator Issues New Map

Gerardus Mercator publishes his *World Map*, with a new projection more useful to navigation, in Duisberg. But land masses in high latitudes are disproportionately large.

1569

Inquisition Established in Americas

Felipe II creates three Inquisition tribunals in Mexico City, Cartagena de Indias and Lima. Together they cover all Spanish possessions in the Americas, except the Caribbean islands.

1570

Yanga's Raids Win Freedom

Gaspar Yanga (born in Guinea) leads a large group of African slaves in escaping Vera Cruz sugar plantations, establishes *cimarron* village of San Lorenzo de los Negros. Viceroy fails in 1606 and 1609 attempts to halt Yanga's raids on Camino Real silver-trade route from Mexico City. In return for permanent freedom, Yanga agrees in 1618 to end raids on Spanish villages, proclaims loyalty to church and king, and agrees to return future runaway slaves.

1570

Puerto Rico Becomes Fortress

Puerto Rico's gold streams are depleted, reducing demand for slaves. Island evolves into military base (building of a new Morro Castle at San Juan begins 1589 with 150 slaves) and stopover for Spain-bound treasure fleets. Slave population slowly declines.

1571

Lepanto: Holy League Victory

Holy League (mainly Habsburg Spain and Austria, plus Venice) defeats Ottoman fleet in Battle of Lepanto (Gulf of Patras). Each side deploys more than 200 galleys in this last large battle of oared vessels. League allies lose more than 7,000; Turks three to four times that number. More than 12,000 Christian galley slaves freed; thousands of Turks taken as slaves.

The victory does not end Ottoman wars, but it does curb their expansion into western Mediterranean, heartening Christians after their long series of defeats.

1572

Drake and Cimarrons Take Treasure

Francis Drake, with two small ships, allies with black *cimarrons* and French privateers to sack, in June, the Spanish treasure port of Nombre de Dios (Panama). The following April, they ambush a long mule train laden with 20 tons

of silver from Peru. They drag what they can to their boats and are back in Plymouth, rich, by August.

Drake becomes the first Englishman to see the Pacific. He also persuades one of the cimarrons, a skilled shipwright named Diego, to join his crew.

1572

Camões Publishes *Lusiads*

The Lusiads is published in Lisbon. Luís Vaz de Camões's epic, 10-canto poem tells the story of the Portuguese people, focusing on battles with Castile and Vasco da Gama's 1498 voyage to India.

Camões is a soldier and seafarer with long experience in Goa and the Far East. A separate, famous lyric poem tells of Camões's love for a dark slave.

1572

St. Bartholomew's Day Massacre

Targeted killings of Huguenot leaders and mob massacres of families follow the Aug. 24 wedding of Catholic Margaret of Valois (King Charles IX's sister) to Henry of Navarre, a Protestant, and the attempted assassination of Adm. Gaspard de Coligny, leader of the Huguenots.

Estimates of the dead range from 5,000 to 30,000. The massacre breaks out in heavily Catholic Paris, but ranges to many other cities. Original plot is blamed on Catherine de' Medici, mother of Charles and Margaret.

Renews France's Wars of Religion with little respite until the Edict of Nantes is signed in 1598.

1575

Angola, First Mainland Colony

Portuguese found small settlement, centered on Luanda at mouth of Angola's Kwanza river, with 100 families and 400 soldiers. More than a factory or trading fort, this is the first European colony on Africa's sub-Saharan mainland.

Strong trade for slaves and silver develops with the kingdom of Kongo, whose king nominally converts to Christianity. To the south is the kingdom of Ndongo, which also deals in slaves, but fights Portuguese for decades to maintain independence.

"Angola" is derived by Portuguese from *N'gola*, which means "ruler" in these Bantu-speaking kingdoms.

1578

Drake Sails 'Round the World

After crossing the Atlantic from Plymouth, Francis Drake enters Pacific via the Strait of Magellan, September, but has lost five of his six ships. He pillages El Callao, Peru's main port, and with the *Golden Hind* catches two Spanish treasure ships in open sea, the second with 26 tons of silver, plus jewels and gold, his greatest prize ever. He reaches the present-day Oregon coast, which he claims for Elizabeth I, June 1579.

The Moluccas are sighted a few months later. He crosses the Indian

Ocean, rounds the Cape of Good Hope, stops at Sierra Leone and, sailing into Plymouth Sept. 26, 1580, completes the second circumnavigation of the globe.

1578

Portuguese Devastated in Morocco

Sebastião I of Portugal (an ally of the deposed sultan of Morocco) is defeated and killed in Battle of Ksar el Kebir by the new sultan. Portuguese nobles and military decimated with many killed and thousands taken captive; Sebastião's body is never found.

In Portugal, aging Henrique, a celibate Catholic cardinal, becomes king. In Morocco, Ahmad al-Mansur becomes sultan, benefiting from massive ransoms extracted from Henrique for captives.

1579

Pardon for Panama Cimarrons

In Panama, Luis de Mozambique and his band of *cimarrons* win Spanish governor's full pardon, freedom and land grant for their community, Santiago de Príncipe. In return, they end attacks, which began with Bayano in 1552, on silver mule trains crossing Isthmus to Nombre de Dios.

1580

Portugal Bows to Spain

Death of Henrique and the following Battle of Alcântara near Lisbon, Aug. 25, lead to Portugal's forced union with Spain under the latter's Felipe (Philip) II. Portugal is dominated by Spain's Habsburg kings for next 60 years.

There are many ramifications. Portugal is now forced to align with Spain against both England and the rebelling Dutch provinces. Felipe bans Dutch access to Portugal's spice trade with Far East; Amsterdam loses middle-merchant role to Catholic Antwerp and is hard pressed to finance continuing revolt against Spain.

This leads to persistent Dutch (and later English) campaigns over the next century to take over large parts of Portugal's overseas empire, with Brazil and the slave trade among their targets, in addition to lucrative Far East spice trade.

One benefit to Portugal: Spain again grants the *asiento* to Portuguese merchants to provide slaves for Spain's American colonies.

The forced union does not end until 1640 when João IV takes back Portuguese crown. And conflict with Spain continues after that to 1665.

Slaves are freed: At least 440 black Lisbon slaves win freedom in return for fighting with Portuguese at Alcântara. One source says 3,000 slaves, many from the Lisbon docks, fought.

1582

Plague Strikes Tenerife

Between 5,000 and 9,000 die from a yearlong outbreak of bubonic plague, mostly in the island capital of San Cristóbal de La Laguna. It's the first significant outbreak in the Atlantic islands, but does not seem to have spread to even neighboring Canaries.

1584**Raleigh's Captains Scout Virginia**

Walter Raleigh sends two ships under Arthur Barlowe and Philip Amadas to reconnoiter the North American coast for colonization. Barlowe returns with an enthusiastic report, especially on the present-day Carolina Outer Banks.

Raleigh is soon applying the name Virginia to the entire coast from Carolina to Acadia, in homage to Queen Elizabeth I. She grants him a charter to launch England's first New World colony, which he does, on Roanoke Island the following year.

1584**Continent Called Africa**

The first map to identify the entire continent as "Africa" is published in Antwerp by cartographer Abraham Ortelius as part of an update to the first modern atlas, *Theatrum Orbis Terrarum*.

Originally Africa was the Roman name for the land of Carthage (present-day Tunisia), applied to only that region as Egypt, Libya, Mauretania, Nubia and Ethiopia were applied to other regions.

1585**Drake Raids Across Atlantic**

Francis Drake leads fleet of 21 ships to raid Vigo (on Spain's Galician coast) and Santiago (in the Cape Verde Islands), then across the Atlantic to sack Santo Domingo, Cartagena (where he releases 100 Turks held as slaves) and St. Augustine (Florida), June 6, 1586.

Drake stops at Roanoke Island, where he boards most of the discouraged original colonists sent by Walter Raleigh, and sails to a hero's welcome in Portsmouth.

1585**Grand Banks Fleets Seized**

Fleet of 10 English ships, led by Bernard Drake (distant cousin of Francis's) arrives at St. John's, Newfoundland, in August, to re-establish England's claim, to seize Spanish and Portuguese vessels fishing the Grand Banks, and to warn English ships of the war. More than 20 ships are taken, along with 600 seamen and 3,000 tons of dried fish. Still more ships, carrying sugar, wine and ivory, are seized off the Azores. It is a hugely profitable expedition.

Black Assize: 38 Portuguese seamen, infected with what is now believed to have been typhus spread by body lice, are imprisoned at Exeter Castle, March 1586. Most of them die, as do 8 judges, 11 of 12 jurors, several constables and unnumbered townspeople. Bernard Drake succumbs April 10.

1587**Roanoke Colony Mystery**

At least 112 men, women and children, led by John White, land in July on Roanoke Island in Walter Raleigh's second attempt to establish an English colony. In

August, White's daughter gives birth to first English child born in North America, Virginia Dare. White is sent back to England to plead for more supplies.

His return voyage to Roanoke is blocked by Elizabeth's order that all ships remain in home waters to defend against the Spanish Armada. White doesn't get back until Aug. 18, 1590, his granddaughter's third birthday.

None of the settlers are ever found, living or dead. The fate of "the Lost Colony" remains unknown.

1588

English, Dutch Defeat Armada

Felipe II, infuriated by Drake's attacks, sends Spanish Armada of 130 ships to overthrow Elizabeth I and restore Catholicism to England. But Armada is defeated in the Channel by English and Dutch fleets, then scattered by contrary winds and battered by storms in attempting to sail around Scotland and Ireland. Thousands die, but 67 of the stronger ships make it back.

Retaliatory attack by 150 English ships under Francis Drake is no more successful the following year with 40 ships lost and many thousands dead. It also fails to ignite an uprising in Lisbon against Spain. Fighting with Spain, spurred by Catholic-Protestant enmity, continues in European waters and in the Caribbean until Treaty of London, 1604.

1588

Mandinka: Slavers and Slaves

Portuguese designate Cacheu, near mouth of the Cacheu river (present-day Guinea-Bissau), as a captaincy. They build a fort and quickly establish a major slave-trading center for the region. Mandinka people of the fading Mali empire are both slave-raiders and enslaved. Neighboring Jola people are said to resist slave-trading.

But to the north, at Cape Verde, the Portuguese lose a base to the Dutch who rename it Gorée Island. A factory for Portuguese traders and slavers for 200 years, the island will be taken by the British in 1664 and finally by the French in 1677. The French will develop the mainland Lebou village into present-day Dakar.

c. 1590

Dutch Rise with New Ship

Dutch shipwrights in Hoorn develop the *fluyt*. This new design is based on the galleon but doubles cargo space with pear-shaped hull and a continuous main deck. New techniques and tools make it much cheaper to build and easy to sail with smaller crews. They are generally three-masted (with a lateen sail on the mizzen) and draw only a few feet of water. All of which sharply reduces the cost of moving cargo.

The new ships are a major factor in the rapid rise of the Netherlands' seaborne empire. Less than 100 years later, Dutch ships total 556,000 tons—about half of the European total—even as England and other nations copy captured fluyts.

1591**Moroccans Sack Songhai Cities**

Ahmad al-Mansur, sultan of Morocco, sends a small army across the Sahara which challenges and defeats massive Songhai force of 40,000 at Tondibi (in present-day Mali), March. Muskets and cannon help. Gao, Timbuktu and Djenné are sacked; large amounts of gold sent to Marrakesh by camel, as well as Muslim scholars in chains.

Moroccans are led by Judar Pasha, Al-Mansur's eunuch general. (Born Christian in Spain, Judar had been captured and castrated as a boy by Muslim slave raiders.)

Moroccans eventually withdraw from Songhai lands, 1599, but retain control of lucrative trans-Saharan trade routes.

1595**São Tomé Rocked**

São Tomé's mountain *marrons* join plantation slaves in a major insurrection. Several Portuguese settlers attending a mass are killed, July 9. Over 20 days of battling, the main town is attacked several times by as many as 5,000 rebels; 60 of 85 sugar mills and many plantations are burned.

But fortified settlers and *forros* hold out with artillery. Rebel unity cracks, with most seeking clemency. Hundreds of slaves die, relatively few whites and *forros*. The slave leader, Amador, is executed with his lieutenants.

1595-1596**Raid Fails; Hawkins, Drake Die**

Elizabeth I sends John Hawkins and Francis Drake to raid Canary Islands, Spanish Main and West Indies, and to intercept Spain's treasure fleet. After unsuccessful attacks on Las Palmas (Gran Canaria) and San Juan, Hawkins (who is also searching for his son, Richard, a Spanish captive since 1593) dies off Puerto Rico.

Drake then seizes Nombre de Dios and sends a force toward Panama City on the Pacific side of the Isthmus (where sizeable treasure has arrived from Peru). That attack fails in the mountains. Disease strikes down many men and Drake himself dies of dysentery on his flagship off Portobelo, Jan. 29. Retreating warships are intercepted by Spanish galleons near Cuba; only eight of the original English fleet of 27 ships make it back to Plymouth.

Meanwhile, treasure fleet safely delivers 20 million silver pesos to Sanlúcar, the largest, richest payload to date.

1595-1599**Dutch Venture into East**

The Netherlands' Cornelis de Houtman leads two voyages into Indian Ocean to challenge Portugal (now dominated by Spain) and its control of the Far East spice trade.

The first voyage departs Texel April 2, 1595 to return in 1597 having lost 162 of 249 men and gaining only a modest cargo in Bali. The second, in 1599, is defeated by Malahayati, the female admiral of Aceh; De Houtman is killed.

But the Dutch are not discouraged, forming the Verenigde Oostindische Compagnie (Dutch East India Company) in 1602 (see below).

Spies: Dutch benefit from De Houtman's earlier researches in Lisbon and from closely held maps and charts copied in Goa by Jan Huygen van Linschoten, a Netherlander who served as a secretary to the Portuguese archbishop of Goa in the 1580s. Van Linschoten revealed all in *Itinerario*, published 1596 in Amsterdam.

1596

English, Dutch Sack Cádiz

English fleet with Dutch allies (150 ships together) seizes Cádiz with surprising ease, June 30, and forces Spanish to sink many (empty) ships assigned to the treasure fleet. The city is sacked and burned two weeks later in a stinging and costly defeat for the Spanish crown, which declares bankruptcy before year's end.

Aging Felipe II orders retaliatory attacks on England, but these are thwarted by bad weather in October and September 1597.

1598

Spanish Overrun Rio Grande

Juan de Oñate leads expedition of soldiers, priests, families and Indian slaves up the Rio Grande valley into New Mexico, home of perhaps 40,000 Pueblo people living in adobe villages.

Fighting breaks out at the Acoma pueblo where 800 Acoma are killed and another 500 held captive, Jan. 24. Spanish amputate right foot (or perhaps just a toe) of men and force all into slavery.

Santa Fé founded in 1607 by Pedro de Peralta which becomes the capital of province of New Mexico, 1610. De Peralta builds a Palace of Governors that still stands. Main stated objective is to convert Pueblo peoples.

1598

Mapuche Stop Spanish

Several hundred Mapuche, led by Pelantaro, surprise 50 Spanish and 300 Indian allies, led by Chile's Gov. Martín García Óñez de Loyola, killing the governor and all but two soldiers, Dec. 23. This battle of Curalaba leads to general uprising that destroys seven cities south of the Bío-Bío river, including Valdivia (center of profitable gold-panning), kills more than 3,000 Spanish, with hundreds of women, children and clergy held captive.

It also establishes a frontier that contains the colony of Chile to the north for decades. More Spaniards will die in Chilean battles than in any of their other Americas adventures.

Spanish authorities decree in 1608 that Mapuche can be directly enslaved as enemy warriors (to be bought and sold beyond *encondemia* bondage), and many are shipped to Santiago and even Lima. This is not reversed until 1683 despite years of pressure from Mariana of Austria, regent mother of King Charles II, to restore ban on slavery for *all* Indians in Spain's colonies.

1599**Dutch Take, Flee São Tomé**

After burning most of Las Palmas de Gran Canaria, July 4, and stopping in Brazil (probably Recife), large Dutch fleet sails east and takes the main town on Portugal's São Tomé, October. But the commander, Pieter van der Does, and 1,200 of his men succumb to disease over following weeks, forcing survivors to depart. They do manage to destroy many sugar mills, further undermining the island's now-struggling industry. Another 600 Dutch die on return voyage to Netherlands.

Many São Tomé planters migrate to Brazil in the following years, bringing their sugar expertise.

1599**Escapee Finds Palenque**

Benkos Biohó, an escaped slave, forms a *cimarron* army in the Montes de Maria of present-day Colombia and founds the free Palenque de San Basilio. The governor of nearby Cartagena de Indias offers peace in return for Biohó's promise to accept no more runaways, 1612. Seven years later, in violation of the peace, Biohó is seized in Cartagena, hanged and quartered. But the palenque remains free.

Roots: Biohó is said to have first been captured in the Bissago Islands (off the Geba estuary in Upper Guinea) where his family held high position.

1600**1601****English Oust Irish Earls**

Irish earls (Hugh O'Neill and Hugh Roe O'Donnell are leaders)—in eighth year of resisting Elizabeth I's conquest—join Spanish forces under siege by English in Kinsale, in south of Ireland. Spanish lose six ships in naval battle off Castlehaven, Dec. 6. Siege ends in withdrawal of Irish and surrender of their Spanish allies, Dec. 24.

English impose control over all Ireland by 1603. O'Neill; O'Donnell's brother, Rory; and their followers flee to Europe, 1607. Their Ulster domains are subsequently seized by English lords.

1602**Dutch Expand in East**

Partly in response to England's new East India Company (1600) and despite the profitless voyages of Cornelis de Houtman (1599), Johan van Oldenbarnevelt and Staats General direct merger of small, feuding trading firms into a Dutch East India Company (Verenigde Oostindische Compagnie).

This first modern corporation (selling stock to raise 6.5 million guilders) becomes an economic powerhouse through war as much as through exploration and monopoly trade practices.

Target one: The Far East empire of Portugal (now dominated by Spain).

Quick payoff: Within a year, a Portuguese galleon is captured off Singapore with high-value cargo of Chinese porcelains and musk that increases company's capital by 50%. Company gathers and supplies ships at busy Texel roadstead (Netherlands) and establishes key East Indies base at Batavia (present-day Jakarta) by 1609.

1603

James Unites British Thrones

Queen Elizabeth I, 69, dies on March 24, ending a 44-year reign. James I, the 36-year-old son of Mary, Queen of Scots, ascends the throne. Because he is already James VI of Scotland, the kingdoms of England and Scotland are united under a single British monarch.

The new king is eager to end 19 years of fighting with exhausted Spain; pre-war status quo agreed to in 1604, which requires English to end support for Dutch revolt.

1605

Disaster on Hispaniola

Spain's Felipe III, furious that settlers in the far north and west of Hispaniola are trading meat and hides with the French, English and, worst of all, the rebellious Dutch, approves eviction of the population to the island's southeast, between Santiago de los Caballeros and Santo Domingo.

In September, Gov. Antonio de Osorio sends soldiers to force settlers to abandon their farms, plantations and ranches, burning and dismantling many structures, especially at Montecristi, Bayajá (today's Fort-Liberté) and Yaguana. Sugar mills are destroyed and 100,000 head of cattle, pigs and horses are abandoned.

Some settlers flee to the jungle or to Dutch ships. Many slaves escape to existing and new *cimarron* communities in the forbidden region. More than half of those removed die of hunger or disease in what are called "Las Devastaciones de Osorio."

Hispaniola will be impoverished and underpopulated for decades. French and English pirates will move into northwest ports in 1629 and to the offshore island of Tortuga; eventually France establishes its Saint-Domingue colony (present-day Haiti).

1605

Port Royal in Acadia

Port Royal, the first permanent European settlement north of Florida, is founded on the present-day Acadian peninsula of Nova Scotia. Taking part is Samuel de Champlain who three years later also accomplishes first settlement of Quebec City.

In 1609, he ascends what is later named the Richelieu river to discover and name Lake Champlain. As lieutenant-governor of New France, Champlain engages peacefully with the Huron and other Indian peoples and supports them in their wars with Iroquois. He becomes first European to describe the Great Lakes,

getting as far as Lake Huron, 1615, and oversees the slow growth of New France until his death in 1635.

1605

***Don Quixote* Published**

Miguel de Cervantes publishes *Don Quixote* in January, long after his soldiering days. Badly wounded at Lepanto, he was captured at sea by Barbary pirates in 1575. He labored as a slave in Algiers for five years before being set free by the Trinitarians, a religious order specializing in ransoming Christian captives.

He alludes to his traumatic captive experience in many of his writings, including the prologue of *Don Quixote*, one of the first novels.

1607-1609

Jamestown Struggles

Christopher Newport leads 105 would-be male settlers aboard *Susan Constant*, *Discovery* and *Godspeed* into Chesapeake Bay where in May they establish Jamestown on a swampy peninsula 35 miles from the mouth of the James River, the first English settlement to take root in the New World. Named for Britain's king of four years, with adventurer John Smith eventually placed in charge.

By August, disease kills many settlers. Newport returns in January 1608 with some supplies and the sponsoring Virginia Company's directive that colony seek gold, which merely diverts settlers from need to produce more food.

1607

Dutch Fleet Forces Truce

Dutch fleet under Jacob van Heemskerck destroys Spanish fleet anchored in Bay of Gibraltar, April 25. Leads to a complex 12-year truce, in which the Dutch Republic wins de facto recognition by the Spanish Crown.

1609

Rescuers Wrecked on Bermuda

Storm disrupts small fleet bound from Plymouth for beleaguered Jamestown, July 24, with the *Sea Venture* managing to drive up on a reef off Bermuda, an uninhabited Atlantic archipelago 650 miles east of Cape Hatteras (first sighted in 1503 by Spain's Juan de Bermúdez). All aboard survive, including John Rolfe and his wife (who later perishes).

Although most wish to stay on Bermuda, commanders force them to build two new ships launched the following spring. They arrive in Jamestown in May 1610 to find desolation. Powhatan has forced settlers into "the Starving Time" and of 500 settlers the previous autumn, fewer than 100 remain alive. They crowd aboard ships, abandoning the colony, only to be met in the bay by a third supply fleet with another 150 settlers led by Thomas West, baron de la Warr, the new governor. He orders everybody back to Jamestown, which struggles on in its war with Indians.

The Tempest: Shakespeare's 1611 play is said to be inspired, in part, by

the Bermuda wreck of the *Sea Venture*. In 1612, 60 settlers found St. George on Bermuda, which is attached to the Virginia colony.

1609

Hudson Ascends River

Henry Hudson sails into Upper New York Bay and up the river to present-day Albany, September. He notes brackish salt water as far up as present-day Newburgh, which encourages him in search for a route to Asia on behalf of the Dutch East India Company. Instead, he finds native Lenape and Mohawk peoples and an abundance of beaver.

1609

Scottish Planters Move into Ulster

Scottish planters take over estates confiscated from Irish nobles under the Plantation of Ulster scheme imposed by James I. They begin moving in thousands of lowland Scottish (mostly Presbyterian) and Northern English (largely Anglican) tenant farmers. Before, Ulster was the province most resistant to the English. Irish Catholics are to be removed or otherwise marginalized.

1609

Spain Expels Moriscos

King Felipe III orders expulsion of Moriscos, descendants of Muslim families who converted to Catholicism. Of 500,000-plus Moriscos (total Spanish population estimated at 8.5 million), perhaps 60%, most of them from Valencia (where they comprise a third of the population) and elsewhere in Aragon, are actually forced to leave. Most go by ship to Morocco or the Barbary states of Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli. And tens of thousands of the deported will eventually find their way back.

1611

King James Bible Appears

A new English translation of the Bible, authorized by the Church of England under James I, is issued in London. Scholars go back to the earliest Greek and Hebrew texts in creating this "King James's Bible," in part to meet problems in earlier texts cited by Puritans.

1612

Angolans Cut Brazilian Cane

Brazil challenges São Tomé as primary sugar producer for Europe. Indians are being replaced by enslaved Africans, most now coming from Angola, which is exporting 10,000 slaves a year. Angola becomes a prime slave source for, first, São Tomé, and then for Brazil and rest of the Americas, including English colonies.

1613

Pocahontas Kidnapped, Married

Pocahontus, a daughter of Chief Powhatan, is kidnapped from a Potomac village

by Virginia Company mariner Samuel Argall and held in Jamestown for the return of 7 English prisoners.

As negotiations drag out, teenaged Pocahontus converts to Christianity and falls in love with John Rolfe, who has successfully introduced a variety of West Indies tobacco that eventually brings prosperity to Virginia.

Their wedding in April 1614 leads to eight years of peace with Powhatan. She bears a son, Thomas, and dies three years later in England, while preparing to return to Jamestown.

1614

Smith Names New England

Meanwhile, John Smith, long unwelcome in Jamestown, leads two whaling ships from London to explore the American coast from present-day Monhegan Island, ME, to Cape Cod. The resulting map, published by Smith two years later, is the first to designate the area as "New England."

In his earlier life as a mercenary fighting in Transylvania, Smith was captured by Tatars and sold as a slave to a Turkish nobleman. He eventually escaped from Crimea into Muscovy and returned to England, 1604.

1615

Portuguese Ally with Imbangala

Bento Benha Cardoso, Portuguese governor of Angola, based in Luanda, begins alliance with Imbangala, a unique clan of marauding warriors who battle the Ndongo kingdom and deliver large numbers of captives to Portuguese slave merchants.

The Imbangala: Of mysterious origin, they are disciplined and ruthless, and build their numbers by capturing young boys from surrounding tribes and indoctrinating them into ways of war. They live to fight and to drink palm wine, sometimes practice cannibalism, and work with Portuguese to dominate central Angola.

The Imbangala later establish the Kasanje kingdom along the upper Kwanza river, 1630, eventually abandon their rapine ways in favor of communal life, and maintain independence from Portuguese governors.

1617-1619

Disease Decimates Indians

Disease sweeps through Indian villages along North America's East Coast, killing as much as two-thirds of the indigenous population. The most likely explanation is that visiting European ships and the settlement at Jamestown have introduced influenza, smallpox and other maladies to which Indians have no resistance.

1617

Benguela, Southernmost Slave Port

Manuel Cerveira Pereira founds Portuguese settlement at Benguela (southern Angola), which develops into the southernmost slave port on Africa's West Coast.

Portuguese steer clear of arid, sparsely populated region further south

(present-day Namibia) and Cape of Good Hope (where Khoikhoi people defeated them in 1510).

1618-1648

Thirty Years' War

Thirty Years' War, fought mostly in Germany and Central Europe, pits France and Sweden against the Habsburgs' Spanish and Austrian empires. Overlaps numerous subordinate conflicts, including Eighty Years' War for Dutch independence and Portugal's long fight for self-rule, both against Spain, the latter beginning in 1640.

1619

First Slaves to Virginia

Two English ships, *White Lion* and *Treasurer*, sailing out of the Netherlands, intercept Portuguese slaver *São João Bautista* (bound from Angola for Vera Cruz) off Campeche in July. After seizing about 60 enslaved Africans (of 150 who survive from original 350-slave contingent), the ships set course for Virginia.

White Lion arrives at Point Comfort, near Jamestown, where Capt. John Jope sells "20 and odd Negroes" for food. They are the first Africans to reach the Virginia colony. Four days later, *Treasurer* sells two or three of the Africans aboard.

These are described as the first slave transactions in what was to become the U.S. As such, they are the starting point for *The New York Times's* **1619 Project** (published 2019) describing slavery as essential to the economic and political origin of the U.S. It is led by Nikole Hannah-Jones.

However, at least one record indicates these first slaves, while sold as chattel, are accepted as "indentured servants," implying they could be freed after several years' work.

Indentured servants make up most of the labor force of the English colonies in their early decades. They typically sign contracts to work for three to seven years in return for trans-Atlantic passage (relatively expensive), room and board and, in many cases, land. Indenture contracts could be sold by holders; runaway servants were pursued and returned for reward.

Stats: Non-slave immigrants from Europe to the 13 colonies are estimated at 500,000 through 1774 (eve of American Revolution). Of that, perhaps 215,000 are indentured servants compared to 235,000 arriving free and clear.

Another estimated 50,000 are "involuntary servants," including Irish and Scottish rebels, political prisoners and enemy soldiers captured in the Wars of the Three Kingdoms (including the English Civil War). But their servitude is generally the same three to seven years of the voluntary indentured.

Total imported slaves are estimated at 325,000 through 1774.

1619

Barbary Pirates Raid Ireland, Iceland

Pirate captains led by Jan Janszoon (a Netherlander captured young by pirates and now Muslim), declare the port of Salé (Morocco) as their republic. 10,000

Moriscos, expelled from Spain by the Inquisition, settle here, 1624. Janszoon later captures island of Lundy in the Bristol Channel, 1627, and from there raids Ireland (Baltimore) and even Iceland, taking hundreds of Christian captives who are sold into slavery in North African ports.

Christian slaves: Between 1530 and 1780 (150 years), an estimated 1.0-1.5 million Christians are seized from ships and villages by Barbary pirates raiding Europe's Mediterranean and Atlantic coasts. Many are ransomed. Enslaved men are often assigned to galleys, still important in Mediterranean warfare, or to construction. Women are sent to households or to be concubines to various sultans, emirs, viziers and other high officials. Relatively few of either gender work in fields or mines. Race and color not defining factors.

Descendants: Two of Janszoon's sons, by a Moorish wife, make their way in the 1630s to New Amsterdam, where they are described as "mulatto" and become merchants. Anthony Janszoon van Salee, a Koran-reading Muslim, is said to be a great-great-great-grandfather of Cornelius Vanderbilt.

1620

Pilgrims Survive First Winter

Pilgrims, adventurers and crew depart Plymouth on *Mayflower*, arriving at Cape Cod 10 stormy weeks later, Nov. 11. Because they missed planned destination (present-day New York harbor, claimed by Virginia colony), they draw up Mayflower Compact to govern themselves. Half of the 102 settlers and many of the 30 crew die over the winter; survivors thank Wampanoag people for their aid.

The Wampanoag and neighboring Indians are just beginning to recover from their own catastrophic encounter with diseases that have taken more than half of their people since 1617.

Stephen Hopkins: A non-Pilgrim signer of the compact, he was among survivors of 1609 *Sea Venture* shipwreck on Bermuda and early desperate days of Jamestown.

1620

Brazil Takes Lead in Sugar

Portuguese continue to develop northeast Brazil into a major producer of sugar cane, produced on slave plantations, eventually taking the lead from little São Tomé.

By 1625, Imbangala warriors, Portuguese slave ships and Brazil sugar plantations account for the great majority of the 11,500 enslaved people shipped from Angola to Brazil, which is 51% of *all* African slaves transported in *all* ships to the Americas that year.

Many are shipped through São Tomé. Most go to northern Brazil, via ports of Recife and Olinda in Pernambuco, and to Salvador in Bahia.

1621

Dutch Target Brazil, Elmina

Dutch East India Company's success against Portugal (dominated by Spain since

1580) in Far East (taking control of Straits of Malacca, 1615) leads to formation of new Dutch West India Company, June 3.

Grand Design: To acquire colonies in the New World (Brazil is their leading target), to seize gold gathered at Portuguese factory at Elmina on the Gold Coast, and to take over Portuguese slave trade in Angola.

1622

War Erupts in Virginia

Powhatan warriors, desperate to stop expansion of Jamestown settlers, massacre nearly 400 in farms beyond the fort, March 22, a third of the colony's population. Twenty women are made captives. This ends period of peace that began with 1614 marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe.

Settlers retaliate by inviting Powhatan leaders to a sitdown the following year, poisoning and killing 250, and then destroying abandoned villages. Hundreds die on both sides in a third, bloody war in 1644, but Powhatan and allies are forced to depart, the first of centuries of forced Indian removals in the present-day U.S.

1623

English and French on St. Kitts

Fifteen Englishmen under Thomas Warner settle on St. Kitts, Feb. 7 and find three Frenchmen who may be Huguenot refugees or castaways. They reach accommodation with the Caribe chief, Tegremante, and survive a September hurricane. Warner has a charter from James I to create the first British colony in the Caribbean (second in New World after Virginia).

Two years later, Pierre Bélain, sieur d'Esnambuc, arrives with a 14-gun brigantine. He and Warner divide the island into quarters, with the English taking the middle and the French the end quarters. Their first 40 slaves arrive in 1626, to work early tobacco plantations.

That same year, Tegremante turns against the Europeans. But Warner and D'Esnambuc, tipped off by a Carib woman, ply Tegremante and Carib leaders with drink and kill them in their sleep. The next day, the English and French massacre 2,000 Carib at Bloody Point.

Spanish raid St. Kitts and nearby Nevis in 1629, abducting hundreds to work mines in New Spain and expelling the rest. But English and French quickly reclaim island when Spanish fleet departs.

Leewards Base: From St. Kitts, English will settle Antigua and Montserrat (1632), Anguilla (1650) and Tortola (1672). French colonize Martinique and Guadeloupe (1635), St. Martin and St. Barts (1648), and St. Croix (1650).

1624

Colonies' First African Baby

A boy, William, is born (and soon baptized) to two of the first captive Africans landing in Virginia, Isabell and Anthoney, who married the previous year with support of their master, William Tucker. Family, which appear to have had

indentured-servant status and is given Tucker's name, is freed in 1635 and establishes a farm nearby (present-day Hampton, VA).

1625

1625

Oyo Cavalry Dominates Nupe

A new Oyo leader regains empire's old homeland from Nupe people and successors build new capital north of the forest belt. Oyo now use cavalry to dominate enemies in drier savannah to the north, but cannot raid into the forest for fear of infection of horses.

1625

Dutch Fail at Elmina

First Dutch attempt to take Elmina on Gold Coast ends disastrously when 56 Portuguese soldiers and 200 black allies ambush and all but wipe out the Dutch landing force of 1,200, October. Dutch fleet bombards fort-factory then slinks away.

The Dutch are also ousted from their brief occupation of Salvador, capital of Brazil by a Portuguese-Spanish force of 52 ships and 12,000 men.

1626

New Amsterdam's First Slaves

First 11 black slaves brought to New Amsterdam by new Dutch West India Company, two years after settlement is founded. They are from Angola, Kongo and São Tomé, and are liberated in 1644 after petitioning local authorities; the reasons are murky. They also receive 300 acres of land, from Bowery Road to present-day 39th Street.

First New Amsterdam slave auction is held in 1655.

1627

Barbados Settled

Henry Powell settles on Barbados, two years after older brother John claims the uninhabited island for England. Henry brings 80 settlers and 10 indentured servants, Feb. 17. This is Britain's second Caribbean colony after St. Kitts. Sugar cane introduced in 1637 by Dutch merchants from Brazil.

By 1650s, Barbados (167 square miles) has more settlers and indentured servants, 44,000 altogether, than Virginia and New England combined. The indentured include Irish prisoners and refugees fleeing Cromwell. Sugar generates profits and planters turn to African slaves, who number 5,600. Life expectation is short for settlers, shorter for slaves.

Rum, first distilled on Barbados from molasses, also dates to 1650s.

By 1700, free whites are down to 18,000, the departees selling land to expanding plantations and moving to Jamaica or the Carolinas. Slaves number 50,000. Slave uprisings in 1675 and 1692 end with execution of leaders.

1628**Beaver Wars Erupt**

Beaver Wars begin between Algonquin, Hurons and French on one side and Iroquois confederation on the other, supported at first by the Dutch. Indians are fighting over lucrative beaver trade as well as defense of homelands (the Iroquois in today's upstate New York; the Algonquin and Huron on the north side of Lakes Ontario and Erie, and in the Ohio valley).

Beaver, in demand for men's hats in Europe, is the great prize in early colonial days for both New France (Montreal and Québec) and New Netherlands (New Amsterdam and Fort Orange, at present-day Albany).

Beaver pelts from colder latitudes produce the most pliable felt for making hats, especially top hats, until hatters turn to silk in mid-19th century.

1628**Dutch Seize Treasure Fleet**

Dutch fleet under Piet Heyn intercepts 16-ship Spanish treasure fleet off Matanzas, Cuba, September. Total haul is 6 million pesos worth of gold, silver and indigo, by far the largest ever taken from a *Flota de Indias*, and without loss of life on either side (Spanish crews are put ashore). The loot supports the long Dutch siege and capture of the Spanish fortress at 's-Hertogenbosch, 1629, as well as the Dutch West India Company's designs on Brazil.

Note: Heyn speaks Spanish well because he was a galley slave for 4 years after his capture by a Spanish ship in 1598 and before his release in a prisoner exchange.

1629**Champlain Gives Up Quebec**

Samuel de Champlain surrenders Quebec to British privateers led by David Kirke, July 19. This is an episode in a brief but sharp conflict centered on British efforts to encourage and support a Huguenot rebellion in La Rochelle.

Those efforts fail and La Rochelle surrenders to Louis XIII, Oct. 28, 1628. As the treaty ending the war is signed before Kirke takes Quebec, Britain's Charles I also agrees to return New France, Acadia and Cape Breton Island to France (and Champlain), 1632. Charles does win new financial support for his expensive Catholic wife, Henrietta Maria, from King Louis who is Henrietta Maria's older brother.

1630**Dutch Take First Brazil Plantations**

Following the failed 1625 attempt to hold the Brazilian capital of Salvador, Dutch send a fleet of 65 ships to take Olinda and Recife, March.

Large Spanish-Portuguese and Dutch fleets duel inconclusively off Bahia, Sept. 12, 1631 but, by 1635, Dutch West India Company extends control over Pernambuco and its sugar plantations.

Dutch expand "New Holland" to include parts of Bahia and Maranhão,

1641, but guerrilla warfare and resentment on part of Portuguese owners of slave plantations reduce sugar production over next 18 years.

Portugal (which continues to be dominated by Spain) maintains control of southern Brazil from Salvador.

1630

Puritans Migrate to Massachusetts

John Winthrop leads 700 colonists in 11 ships to new Massachusetts Bay Colony, which takes the name of the native people. This begins the decade of the "Great Migration" of 40,000 Puritan men, women and children, largely from East Anglia, to Massachusetts Bay and the West Indies (mainly Barbados).

They flee religious tension and hard economy in England. But more than 2,000 will return to England after 1641 to join the Puritan army against Charles I at the beginning of English Civil Wars.

1630

Eruption in Azores

The Furnas volcano erupts explosively on São Miguel, largest island in the Azores. More than 200 are killed.

1630s

Mixed-Race Merchant Women

Dame Portugaise, first of the mixed-race merchant women known as *signares* or *nhara* (in Portuguese) and *métis* (in French), presides over the slave trade between the Cayor kingdom and the Portuguese at Rufisque (near Cape Verde). She is believed to be the daughter of a Portuguese man and a Wolof woman of high standing.

More famous is Bibiana Vaz de França, whose father was a Luso-African born in the Cape Verde Islands. She is married to a Sr. Gomez, the wealthiest man in Guinea; they live in Cacheu. She wields considerable power in slave trade and political influence. In 1687 she is arrested and held prisoner on Santiago, only to be pardoned.

1633-1634

New England Indians Devastated

Smallpox, introduced by either Dutch traders or new English settlers, sweeps up the Connecticut Valley and throughout New England, wiping out entire Indian villages. While the Plymouth Colony loses 20 people, including its only physician, Increase Mather asserts that God has forestalled an attack by Indians.

First slaves imported from Africa directly to Massachusetts arrive, 1634.

1634

Dutch Absorb Curaçao

Dutch West India Company fleet removes 30 Spaniards from Curaçao (but allows 30 Taíno families to stay). Piracy becomes profitable, then salt-panning. Jews

from Amsterdam and Dutch Brazil organize first Jewish congregation in the Americas, 1651.

1635

Hurricane Batters New England

Long Island and southern New England struck by Great Colonial Hurricane, Aug. 24. Based on contemporary accounts, meteorologists believe it is the first hurricane experienced by the Pilgrims, and the strongest to hit New England in the four centuries since.

Winds of up to 125 mph and an estimated 22-foot storm surge flatten coastal villages and wigwams, sink several ships, and kill scores of Indians and settlers. Damage to harvests threaten famine and exacerbate tensions between colonists and Pequot people in particular.

1635

French Take Guadeloupe and Martinique

A French expedition from Dieppe, supported by Cardinal Richelieu's Compagnie des Îles de l'Amérique, lands more than 500 men and 30 women on Guadeloupe, June 28. They are divided between the leaders, Charles Liénard, sieur de L'Olive, and Jean du Plessis, sieur d'Ossoville.

Supplies are short and settlers begin to die of hunger and disease. This leads L'Olive to attack Carib, killing men and taking possession of women and gardens. Du Plessis's faction actually joins Carib, adopting their ways and eventually intermarrying. Du Plessis dies later in the year on a ship returning to Dieppe. L'Olive leads a massacre of Carib over the next few years.

Two months after the landing on Guadeloupe, D'Esnambuc sails from his St. Kitts colony to Martinique with 80 settlers. They overcome Carib resistance and push survivors into the eastern Caravelle peninsula.

Later: While St. Kitts is eventually ceded to Britain (1713), Martinique and Guadeloupe are part of metropolitan France today.

1636

New Spain: Slaves Father Free Children

New Spain (Mexico) develops first laws to spell out status of "chattel slavery" for black Africans. Slaves are slaves for life and can be sold or willed to others. Children are classified slaves if their mothers are slaves.

But relatively few female Africans are sent to New Spain. Male slaves, able by law to marry Indian and *mestizo* wives, do so in large numbers. The resulting Afro-mestizo children may be regarded as "low-born" but are free under the laws of both Spain and the Church.

With total African slaves brought to New Spain estimated at 200,000 and most of their children born free, black slavery here never reaches levels of the 13 British colonies. Today, only 1.2% of Mexico's 120 million people identify as African descendants.

1636**Mosquito-Zambos Stay Free**

Several hundred African captives who have escaped one or two Dutch slave ships—perhaps after shipwreck—land on the Mosquito Coast of Honduras. They intermarry with indigenous Mosquito people to create the mixed Mosquito-Zambos who dominate the region and non-Zambo Mosquito to the south. The latter are undermined by smallpox in 1727.

The Mosquito-Zambos ally with English and Dutch privateers based on Jamaica, in nearby Belize and on Providence Island, a Puritan enclave. Despite Spanish dominance of Honduras and Nicaragua, they maintain their independence well into the 19th century.

1636**Bandeiras Sweep Southern Brazil**

From Brazil's southern São Paulo region, a *bandeira* led by António Raposo Tavares and comprising 69 white *Paulistas*, 900 Portuguese-Indian *mamelucos* and perhaps 2,000 allied Tupí warriors captures many thousands of Indians to be sold as slaves. They also destroy a series of Spanish Jesuit missions.

The *bandeirantes*, quite ruthless, operate well into the 18th century as slavers and fortune hunters (especially for gold), significantly expanding Brazilian territory with their expeditions.

1637**New England: Pequot Eliminated**

White settlers from Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, Providence and Saybrook colonies, joined by native Mohegan and Narragansett allies, kill perhaps 500 Pequot at Mystic, CT, May 26. Settlers are angered by Pequot attacks on whites encroaching into Connecticut.

More Pequot die in summer settler attacks near Stonington and Fairfield, CT. Most survivors sold into slavery in West Indies and Bermuda; others agree to disperse to other tribes.

1637**Dutch Take Portugal's Elmina**

Johan Maurits of Nassau, new governor of Dutch Brazil, sends a fleet from Recife to finally capture Portugal's fort-*feitoria* at Elmina on the Gold Coast, Aug. 29. Dutch appropriate further factories at Shama and Axim.

In just seven years, the Dutch West India Company has seized both the northern Brazil and Gold Coast ends of Portugal's most lucrative slave-trade-and-sugar operations (Portugal is actually ruled by Spain, 1580-1640).

Under Dutch control, as many as 30,000 slaves are held each year in Elmina dungeons for shipment, most going to Recife and Pernambuco. Dutch will further expand slaving operations with capture of Luanda in 1641 (see below).

1638**French Arrive in Senegal**

French establish their first factory on Bocos Island near mouth of Senegal river, giving them trade access to Wolofs and other peoples. This is moved 16 miles to Île Saint-Louis in 1659, where they preside with only brief interruptions for the next 300 years.

1638-1640

Mocambos Arise Amid Fighting

Continuing Dutch-Portuguese strife in northern Brazil enables many hundreds of slaves to flee to interior *mocambos* in mountainous Palmares, bringing their population to as much as 20,000. In addition to runaway blacks, the mocambos include Indians, mixed-race people, and a number of white deserters from the military.

Because many of the slaves came from partly Christianized Kongo and Angola, some mocambos build churches. But African traditions are also practiced.

The mocambos beat back multiple Portuguese and Dutch attacks over the next 50 years.

1640-1680

Britain Increases Caribbean Slaves

British introduce large-scale African slave labor to their Caribbean sugar plantations, beginning with Barbados, and followed by Antigua, St. Kitts and Nevis. The numbers increase dramatically after 1655, when Britain seizes Jamaica from Spain.

1640

Portuguese Rise Against Spain

Portuguese nobles rise up (40 Conspirators), kill Spanish governor in Lisbon and imprison Duchess of Mantua, winning support of people. Rebel motives include anger at Spanish failure to block Dutch takeover of Pernambuco, Elmina and Luanda. João, duke of Braganza, acclaimed king, ending 60 years of control by Spanish kings.

Portugal still must fight a long war before Spain recognizes Portuguese independence in 1668 treaty.

1641

Massachusetts Legalizes Slavery

First laws specifically legalizing slavery are adopted by Massachusetts Gov. John Winthrop and the General Court, Dec. 10. Followed by laws dictating slave marriage restrictions, curfews and taxes.

In 1644, Boston merchants begin slave-smuggling operations to West Indies to get around Royal African Company's monopoly on African captives.

1641

Irish Uprising Brings Massacre

Catholic uprising in Ireland, focused against Plantation of Ulster, with 4,000 Scots-Irish settlers killed on previously Catholic lands. Both sides engage in more

massacres with Irish Catholic Confederation and allied Royalists taking control of most of island.

Further divides Charles I from Parliament and leads to Wars of Three Kingdoms, including the English Civil War.

1641

Angola: Nzinga Aids Dutch

Adm. Cornelis Jol, leading another Dutch West India Company fleet from Recife, takes Luanda and São Tomé, only to die of malaria on the latter island, Oct. 31.

Portuguese withdraw from Luanda up Kwanza river to Massangano as Dutch forge alliance with Queen Nzinga of Ndongo and Matamba, and King Garcia of Kongo (all Ambundu Bantu). But they cannot finish off Portuguese who are able to disrupt Dutch access to interior and slaves.

Lisbon, focused on homeland fight to free Portugal of Spanish dominance, can offer little help to its Angolan colonists.

Queen Nzinga: Daughter of a king and his slave concubine, she learns Portuguese, has herself baptized into Catholicism, then wheels, deals and wars with Imbangala, Kongo and other neighboring kingdoms, and particularly with the Portuguese for nearly 40 years. Much of the fighting is over control of Angola's large slave trade. She also welcomes Catholic missionaries and wins praise from Pope Alexander VII, 1661.

1641

Mapuche Win Peace

Spanish monarchy directs Chilean governor to end decades of bloody fighting with the Mapuche (the Arauco War), which is achieved at Parliament of Quillín. Hundreds of captive Spanish women are also returned.

Mapuche may have taken the 1640 eruption of the Llaima volcano as a signal from *pillanes* (spirits) to negotiate.

But Spanish continue to enforce *encondemia* bondage upon captive Mapuche, who rise again in 1655.

1642

English Civil War Begins

English Civil War erupts over whether Charles I or Parliament should direct response to Irish rebellion. It goes on seven years, with victorious Oliver Cromwell and Parliament beheading Charles I, 1649, and establishing a Commonwealth with Cromwell as dictatorial "lord protector" in place of the monarchy.

1642

Cavaliers Immigrate to Virginia

Virginia's new governor, William Berkeley, favors the Crown's side in the civil war and attracts immigrants from the landed gentry—the Cavaliers—during and after the fighting. They include forbearers of Washington and Randolph families (1643). Lees, however, arrived in 1639.

1643**French on Madagascar**

French East India Company establishes Fort-Dauphin on Madagascar's southeast coast. But disease, infighting and conflict with Antanosy people inhibit growth, even after landing of hundreds of new settlers and clergy in 1660s.

Half the settlers are killed in 1672 by Antanosy. Remainder are evacuated by ship in 1674. The Merina empire begins to emerge in the central highlands. While various pirates (including Thomas Tew and William Kidd), establish safe havens at Île Sainte-Marie off northeast coast (1690s), Madagascar is deemed too dangerous for European settlement well into 18th century.

1644**Dedham: First Public School**

The first taxpayer-supported public school in the 13 colonies opens in the Massachusetts town of Dedham, Jan. 1. The Rev. Ralph Wheelock is the first teacher. This expands on the idea of Boston Latin (grammar) school, which opened in 1635 for boys, financed through donations and land rentals.

In 1647, Massachusetts Bay Colony mandates that every town of 50-plus families support an elementary teacher and school for both boys and girls.

Goal: To insure all Puritan children can read the Bible.

The colony also mandates that every town of 100-plus families also support a Latin school for older boys in preparation for college (Harvard, founded in 1636), the ministry or law.

By 1750, New England male literacy rates are far higher than English male literacy.

1645**Portugal's New Senegal Factory**

Portuguese establish Ziguinchor slave factory at the mouth of Senegal's Casamance river to trade with the Jola people of the kingdom of Khasso who deal extensively in slaves. Manjak, Balanta and Papel peoples are also found in the region, known for its long tradition of rice cultivation in mangrove swamps.

1645**Valdivia Fortifications in Chile**

A 20-ship Spanish expedition from Peru leapfrogs around Mapuche territory to begin building elaborate forts at Valdivia and around Corral Bay. Work crews include many Afro-Peruvian convicts who will remain as soldiers and settlers.

The 17 forts and hundreds of guns are considered essential in forestalling Dutch and British plots to ally with Mapuche and establish bases on South America's Pacific coast.

1647**Barbados: Yellow Fever Arrives**

First definitive outbreak of yellow fever in New World, on Barbados. Virus and mosquito vector now presumed to have been carried from Africa on slave ships.

Spread is accelerated by clearing of land for plantations (which reduces bird population) and wide use of sugar pots (which retain still water ideal for mosquito breeding).

What is believed to have been yellow fever breaks out on Guadeloupe and the Yucatán peninsula in 1648.

1647

Coffeehouses Spike Sugar Demand

First coffeehouse in Europe opens in Venice; first London coffeehouse opens in 1652. First tea served in London, at a coffeehouse, in 1657. By 1675, there are 3,000 coffeehouses in England. As popularity of both bitter beverages spreads throughout Europe, demand for sugar soars.

1647

Stuyvesant Seeks More Slaves

Peter Stuyvesant arrives in a demoralized New Amsterdam to take over directorship of New Netherlands. He soon petitions Dutch West India Company to send more African slaves to help rebuild the colony.

Many slaves are assigned to skill jobs and have a certain amount of free time. West India Company is colony's largest slaveholder but Stuyvesant, with 40, is the leading private slaveholder.

1648

Iroquois Expand in Beaver Wars

With over-trapped beaver disappearing from Hudson and Mohawk valleys, Dutch sell guns to give Iroquois an advantage in expanding their territory in present-day Ontario at expense of Huron and their French allies.

Iroquois kill many Algonquin warriors (and three Jesuit missionaries) and take women and children captive in attack near present-day Georgian Bay (Lake Huron). By 1660, Iroquois are raiding French settlements of Montreal and Québec. Off-and-on conflict continues into 1660s.

1648

Portuguese Win in Pernambuco, Angola

In Pernambuco, mixed Portuguese force (including long-rebellious planters, enslaved and free blacks, and Indians) defeat Dutch, despite reinforcements from Amsterdam, at Guararapes, April.

Dutch in Luanda also submit to a large Portuguese force sailing from Brazil under Salvador Correia de Sá, August. Warriors of Queen Nzinga, vital Dutch ally, are also defeated. De Sá also takes back São Tomé and Benguela. These defeats deprive Dutch of slaves for their ventures in the Americas.

1648

Bloody European Wars End

In Peace of Münster, signed May 15, Spain affirms Dutch independence while retaining Flemish provinces and assuring toleration of Catholicism in Dutch

Republic. This ends bitter and bloody Eighty Years' War (which included a 12-year truce).

Spain also grants Dutch *asiento* to provide slaves to Spanish colonies, withdrawing it from Portugal and its slave merchants. Spain still hopes to regain control of Portugal. Agreement does not end Dutch-Portuguese conflict overseas.

Münster agreement is part of the overall Peace of Westphalia, ending the Thirty Years' War in the Holy Roman Empire (Ferdinand III of Austria is emperor), in which more than 8 million Europeans died, more from disease and starvation than from fighting. The fighting, however, was particularly ruthless, fired by religious passion.

Monarchs are renewed right to determine dominant religion of their lands (Catholic, Lutheran or Calvinist) but must permit practice of other Christian faiths by individuals. Independence of Switzerland formally recognized. France gains much, Sweden less, Austria and Spain least. Free navigation of Rhine endorsed.

1649

Dutch Ejected from Brazil

Mixed local Portuguese force defeats Dutch mercenaries at Second Battle of Guararapes, Feb. 16. Brazilian-born André Vidal de Negreiros is the Portuguese leader in this Pernambucana Insurrection; also prominent are Henrique Dias, an Afro-Brazilian, and Filipe Camarão, a Potiguara Indian.

Dutch presence in Brazil shrinks rapidly. Besieged in Recife, they finally depart in 1654 as Portugal re-establishes dominance over Angola-slave-trade-Brazil-sugar-production. This is finally confirmed by treaty in 1661, the Netherlands receiving 8 million guilders in compensation.

1649

Cromwell Subjugates Ireland

Six months after Jan. 30 beheading of Charles I, Cromwell invades Ireland with New Model Army. Its siege of Drogheda ends with post-surrender death of most defenders and many civilians, Sept. 11. Survivors shipped in forced servitude to Barbados.

Ultimately Cromwell defeats Irish Catholic Confederation and remaining royalists. Guerrilla war leads to brutal repression and confiscation of Catholic lands. Over three years, violence, famine and plague kill at least 200,000, mostly Catholic. As many as 50,000 are transported to American colonies as forced indentured laborers.

Cromwell also defeats a Scottish army under Charles's son at Worcester, 1651, to bring the last of the Wars of Three Kingdoms to an end. The son escapes to France, to return nine years later as King Charles II.

1650

1650

Britain Establishes Whydah Factory

British build slave factory at Whydah on Slave Coast (now Benin). The dominant Dahomey kingdom forges into the interior, capturing many thousands through tribal wars and selling them to Europeans and Arabs. By 1716, Whydah is the second-busiest African factory in Britain's triangular trade.

Vodou (or voodoo) arose in region north of Whydah, which is considered the capital of vodou today.

1650

Portrait of Juan de Pareja

Diego Velázquez paints De Pareja, a slave who assists in his workshop, during an extended visit to Rome. Later the same year, Velázquez grants De Pareja a letter of freedom which goes into effect on their return to Madrid four years later.

De Pareja, born into slavery in Antequera, Málaga province, around 1606, works as an independent painter in Madrid until his death in 1670. His *Calling of St. Matthew* (1661) is on display at the Museo del Prado.

Velázquez's portrait of De Pareja is in New York's Metropolitan Museum of Art.

1650

First Africans to Guadeloupe

Slaves from Senegal arrive to work new sugar plantations established by the wealthy Charles Houël du Petit Pré who bought Guadeloupe in 1640 from the bankrupt Compagnie des Îles de l'Amérique.

Slaves desert in large numbers with the help of Carib people in the mountains and, in 1656, launch a two-month uprising. Houël eventually forces all but a few of the Carib to retreat to their nearby Dominica refuge. Guadeloupe's slave-worked sugar plantations will boom well into the 18th century.

1651

Scottish Prisoners to Virginia, Barbados

Thousands of Scots, prisoners after Cromwell's Sept. 3 victory at Worcester, are forced into servitude, for up to 10 years, and sent to Virginia and Barbados. Some Bajan plantations count 50 such indentured servants for every 100 slaves.

1652

Ravaged Irish Population Transplanted

Cromwell and Parliament reorder land and people in Ireland, which has lost perhaps a quarter of its population to war, famine and disease. Act of Settlement, Aug. 12, targets Catholic population.

Catholic landed gentry and officers lose estates to victorious Parliamentarian supporters; clergy (blamed for 1641 uprising) are killed or banished; thousands of officers and soldiers are transplanted to Spain; 40,000 peasants are pushed into western Connaught, and perhaps 10,000 more, including homeless women and 2,000 adolescent boys and girls, are shipped to colonies in America, especially Barbados.

Caribbean Irish: Last of the forced indentured servants on Barbados are

said to be freed by 1680. Many freed Irish move on to Jamaica and Montserrat, some becoming planters and slave masters. Others stay to create the Bajan “Redlegs” community that maintained its Irishness into the 21st century.

1652

Cape of Good Hope, Dutch Colony

Dutch East India Company sends Jan van Riebeeck to establish an intermediate safe haven at Table Bay, north of the Cape of Good Hope, for ships sailing to India and the Far East. Within 30 years several thousand *vryeburghers* are settled around Kaapstad (Cape Town), most of them former company soldiers and sailors.

The native Khoikhoi people, nomads with cattle, are decimated by European-introduced smallpox and are slowly pushed to the north.

First slaves are mostly women from East Indies who are sold by masters on their way home to Netherlands (where slavery is not recognized). They will marry Dutchmen, many winning freedom, and give birth to a significant percentage of the colony’s first generations. Later, thousands of mostly male slaves from Angola, Mozambique and Madagascar are brought in to work on farms raising grain, wine and livestock (although few large plantations develop).

This is the second European colony to be established on sub-Saharan mainland, as opposed to the fort-factories. First was coastal Angola by Portugal, 1575.

1652

Quaker Founder Draws Fire

George Fox climbs Pendle Hill in Lancashire where he envisions many souls coming directly to Christ, without interference of clergy. He is developing ideas and methods for what will become the Religious Society of Friends—mocked by a judge as “the Quakers.” This is a year following Fox’s first jailing on a charge of blasphemy.

Fox visits Barbados, Jamaica and Maryland in 1671. While there is no record of any statement on slavery, hostile Bajan planters say his words might incite a slave rebellion.

1650s

Barbados Ships Cotton

Some Bajan planters are growing long-staple cotton, with shipments to Europe beginning this decade.

The leading species of long-staple cotton—*Gossypium barbadense*—is named for the island. It will be grown on various Caribbean islands (although sugar cane is always dominant there) and most famously on the Carolina and Georgia Sea Islands beginning in the late 18th century.

1652-1654

Anglo-Dutch Competition Ignites War

Under Cromwell, Britain’s increasingly fierce competition with the Netherlands (a former ally against Spain) and its dominant merchant fleet leads to first of three

Anglo-Dutch wars, which ends inconclusively after the two sides trade naval victories.

1653

New Cape Coast Castle

Swedish Africa Company builds a new Cape Coast Castle on Gold Coast under Hendrik Caerloff, but Dutch soon take it over. Europeans trade for slaves with Guan people's Fetu kingdom.

1654

Curaçao's New Slave Market

Dutch, who lose last toehold in Brazil this year, establish a successful slave market on Curaçao. Enslaved Africans brought here from Elmina and other West Africa factories are then sold on Willemstad docks before delivery to their final destination on the Spanish Main or in the Caribbean.

1655

Jamaica: Britain Needs Maroons, Pirates

At Cromwell's direction, Gen. Robert Venebles and Adm. William Penn (whose son will found Pennsylvania) lead an attack on Santo Domingo, April 13, which is thwarted by Spanish in two weeks.

British fleet then turns to Jamaica, quickly overcoming light garrison to take Santiago de la Vega (Spanish Town). This begins long British struggle with Spanish settlers and with slaves the Spanish freed (or who escaped) who establish Maroon communities in the mountains. Within a year, British lose most of their men to disease.

It isn't until 1660, when a British governor persuades Maroon leader Juan de Bolas to switch sides, that Spanish settlers give up and flee to Cuba.

British governors also invite pirates ("Brethren of the Coast") to attack Spanish ships as well as cities on the Spanish Main and throughout Caribbean. The pirates (Henry Morgan among them) soon convert Port Royal into a town of fabulous decadence supported by their enormous loot.

Jamaica will succeed Barbados as Britain's main slave-worked sugar-plantation holding.

1656

Dutch Treaty with Ahanta

Dutch West India Company signs Treaty of Butre with the Ahanta people who basically accept protectorate status and a new Fort Batenstein. The treaty with Ahanta (supplanted eventually by Ashanti) will stand until the Netherlands sells its Gold Coast holdings to British in 1872, one of the longest-lasting agreements between European and African peoples.

1657

Fleet Lost, Not Treasure

Robert Blake's British fleet breaks off blockade of Cádiz to burn a 17-ship

Spanish treasure convoy in Santa Cruz Bay, Tenerife, April 20. Blake loses no ships, but misses the silver which, previously unloaded, is safe ashore.

1659

French Establish Saint-Domingue

Spain cedes claim on lightly populated northwest Hispaniola to French pirates, who name it Saint-Domingue; Louis XIV formally approves their settlement on island of Tortuga. Pirates are persuaded to give way to agriculture, especially sugar and coffee plantations worked by slaves.

To meet demand, France also builds a new African slave factory on Île Saint-Louis near mouth of Senegal river, replacing its 1638 fort on Bocos Island to the north. This will be their West Africa base for the next 300 years.

French version of Triangular Trade sees slave ships sail first from Le Havre, and later from Nantes, Bordeaux and La Rochelle.

1659

Ocean Haven Draws Few Settlers

British East India Company builds fort on volcanic island of St. Helena, a haven for ships plying South Atlantic. Company wins a royal charter to establish colony, but attracts few settlers to lonely rock.

1660

Charles II Profits from Slave Trade

Newly restored to the crown, May 29, Charles II charters Company of Royal Adventurers. Company is led by Charles's brother, James, the duke of York. First goal is to trade for gold, but new charter in 1663 directs company to supplant Dutch as main provider of African slaves to British-colony plantations.

Charles and James will intensely promote and personally profit from slave trade.

1660

Slave Escapes: Dominica, St. Vincent

British and French said to agree not to settle Dominica or St. Vincent, fiercely defended by indigenous Carib who have repelled European visitors for more than 150 years.

Both become havens for slaves escaping from nearby Guadeloupe, Martinique, St. Lucia and even Barbados.

Africans who escape to St. Vincent intermarry with Caribs, leading to a mixed Black Carib population and a smaller Yellow Carib community. The Black Caribs will fight many battles in the 18th century against would-be masters, usually British, and are never enslaved.

1661

Barbados's 'Model' Slave Code

Barbados assembly adopts first comprehensive slave code for British colonies,

which is copied by Jamaica (1664), South Carolina (1696) and Antigua (1702). Virginia and Maryland codes are also influenced.

Prescribes whipping for those who hurt Christians (first offence), and nose-slitting and face-branding (second offense), with no right to trial. And if a slave is injured or dies under punishment by master, "...no person whatsoever shall be liable to any fine..."

1661

Gambia: Slave Island Seized

British Company of Royal Adventurers seizes island and fort in Gambia river from Dutch. Renamed James Island (for Charles II's brother and the Royal Adventurers' leader), it becomes the first important center for the company's West Africa slave trade. Mandinka *mansas* along the river raid inland peoples to obtain slaves to sell to the British.

1662

Virginia Affirms Barbados Code

Virginia court rules that children born of mixed relationship will hold the status of their mother, usually black and a slave, and will be the property of mother's master, invariably white. Applying the Barbados code.

1662

Portuguese Princess Marries Charles II

Catarina of Braganza, daughter of Portugal's João IV, marries Charles II of Britain, cementing alliance against Spain. Her dowry includes Tangier and islands of Bombay but apparently none of Portugal's African slave factories.

1663

Charles Establishes Carolina

Charles II grants charter establishing the Carolina colony to eight noblemen critical to his regaining the British throne, March 24. These Lord Proprietors, who name the colony for Charles I, the beheaded father of the king, are led by Anthony Ashley Cooper, earl of Shaftesbury, who assigns his secretary, John Locke, to help draft a "Grand Model" for the colony.

Proprietors offer settlers 50 acres of land for each slave or servant they bring to Carolina.

1663

Adventurers: 69 Years, 212,000 Enslaved

This year through 1731, the Company of Royal Adventurers (which morphs into the Royal African Company in 1672) embarks approximately 215,000 slaves, or more than 3,000 annually, bound mainly for Caribbean plantations but also for Carolina and other North American colonies. Of the total, 45,000 die enroute.

To signify good health, many slaves are branded "DoY" for Duke of York. That ends by 1685 when Charles II dies and his brother, the duke, ascends throne as James II.

1663**Guinea Minted**

First "guinea" is minted, one inch in diameter, of 0.92% pure gold, with Charles II on the obverse side, Feb. 6. Its worth, originally one pound (20 shillings), fluctuates with price of gold, most of which comes from the Company of Royal Adventurers' Gold Coast trading operations. Full guineas are produced through 1799.

1663**Quebec: Send More Women**

To persuade soldiers and skilled workers to make a life in New France, Louis XIV and advisor Jean-Baptiste Colbert begin a 10-year program to recruit marriageable women to sail to Quebec. Most of the more than 830 *filles du roi* are 19-29 years old, and from Paris (including orphans) or Normandy (including experienced farm girls). All are endorsed by parish priests, and receive hope chests and dowries of at least 50 livres in gold.

Upon arrival, most marry quickly and collectively bear hundreds of children, helping to double the population to 6,700 by 1672. Two-thirds of today's Quebecois trace ancestry back to at least one *fille du roi*.

1664**Interracial Marriage Forbidden**

A year after formally legalizing enslavement, Maryland becomes first of the 13 colonies to make marriage between white women and black men illegal. Such marriages were not unknown between indentured English women and African slaves.

Wives in such marriages prior to 1664 are now obligated to provide 7 years indentured service to the husband's master. Mixed children of such marriages are obligated to provide service to the master until age 30 before they can claim to be free.

1664**Cape Coast Kept, New Amsterdam Taken**

Sailing on behalf of the Company of Royal Adventurers, a British fleet under Robert Holmes seizes most Dutch factories on African West Coast, including Cape Coast Castle and Gorée Island (at Cape Verde), as well as several Dutch ships (including West India Company's *Goulden Lyon*).

Dutch Adm. Michiel de Ruyter takes back all African factories later in year, except Cape Coast, which becomes the main slave factory for the Company of Royal Adventurers. Britain holds Cape Coast well into the 20th century.

Also in 1664, British seize New Amsterdam with four ships and 450 men. Peter Stuyvesant is forced by his reluctant burghers to capitulate without a fight, Sept. 6, and retires to his "Bowery" farm. British rename the town New York, for James, the duke of York.

These preliminaries lead to second of three Anglo-Dutch wars. Which in turn leads to the brief collapse of the Company of Royal Adventurers, 1667.

1664

Free People of Color Sought

Spain offers land on Puerto Rico to lure free people of color living on Jamaica, in Saint-Domingue and in other non-Spanish territories. They settle in western and southern regions. Most are mixed-race and adapt Spanish customs; some join the militia.

1665

Victory Insures Portuguese Independence

Portuguese, with British allies, defeat Spanish invaders in the Battle of Montes Claros, in the Alentejo near the mutual border, June 17. Spain suffers 7,000 dead, 4,000 wounded and 6,000 prisoners in this decisive end to fighting in war over Portuguese Restoration.

1665

London: Plague, then Fire

Bubonic plague breaks out in spring, kills more than 100,000 of London's half-million residents and spreads well beyond. Then the Great Fire destroys 80% of the city's structures, Sept. 2-6, 1666.

1667

Dutch Raid Stuns Royal Navy

Audacious Dutch naval raid into the Thames estuary and up the Medway, June, burns or captures 14 major ships over five days, including the British flagship, HMS *Royal Charles*, which is taken back to the Netherlands. Fleet of 62 ships is led by Adms. Willem Joseph van Ghent and Michiel de Ruyter.

This, one of the Royal Navy's worst disasters ever, forces Charles II to end the second Anglo-Dutch war (to curb British anger with their king) without achieving trade goals, which include taking over Dutch slave trade. The British fare no better in the third Anglo-Dutch war, 1672-1674.

British keep New York; Dutch keep Surinam, where Britain established slave-worked plantations in 1630. Dutch took it by force in February 1667.

1668

Yellow Fever in New York

First outbreak of yellow fever in Britain's North American colonies occurs in New York, four years after British seizure.

1669

Carolina Welcomes Slave Masters

John Locke completes his Grand Model for Carolina at the direction of Lord Ashley Cooper and his fellow Lord Proprietors. The Model includes "constitutions" that mix enlightenment and autocracy. The king and Lord Proprietors hold ultimate

authority, but religious freedom is guaranteed (in contrast to Virginia and New England), and a system of large plantations and smaller farms is prescribed. As for slavery: "every freeman of Carolina shall have absolute power and authority over his negro slaves."

Locke is rewarded with stock in the Company of Royal Adventurers.

1670

Charles Town Founded, Slaves Follow

New settlers, landholders from Barbados and Bermuda led by William Sayle, found Charles Town, naming it for Charles II (Carolina was named for Charles I). In 1679, it is moved to its present location on the peninsula between the Ashley and Cooper rivers (both named for Lord Ashley Cooper).

Charles Town is the first planned community in the English colonies, as laid out in the Grand Model set forth by Locke. This applies lessons of public health and safety learned from the Great Fire of London, including wide streets and public squares laid out on a standardized grid. These principles will be applied later in Philadelphia and Savannah.

A year later, John Yeamans arrives from Barbados with would-be sugar planters and 200 African slaves. Barbados will be a source of colonists and slaves for several decades.

1670

Jamaica: British Control Confirmed

British possession of Jamaica (dating back to 1655) is confirmed by Treaty of Madrid. Large Irish community also noted, originally brought in as indentured servants and soldiers, or as political prisoners (from Cromwell's invasion of Ireland).

1670

Ashanti Empire Straddles Volta

Osei Tutu, king of the Ashanti, establishes a Gold Coast empire straddling Volta river west of the Oyo empire. Kumasi is its capital.

When they are strong and have captives to sell, the Ashanti favor the Dutch factories. When they are weak, many captive Ashanti are forced onto ships at Elmina, Cape Coast Castle and other European factories.

Ashanti descendants are today found widely in Jamaica, Barbados, the Virgin Islands and the Netherlands Antilles.

1670

Portuguese Defeat in Kongo

After years of civil war in Kongo, where Portugal had converted leaders to Catholicism in the previous century, Francisco de Távora, Portuguese governor of Luanda, vows to assert control and restore Manikongo Rafael I to Kongo throne in São Salvador. De Távora sends a heavily armed force (including 400 musketeers and 4 cannon) plus Imbangala auxiliaries to oust leaders of Soyo province.

But Soyo win support of Ngoyo from north of the river Congo as well as

Dutch arms, and they annihilate the Portuguese force, Oct. 18, near Kitombo. This ends Portuguese activities in Kongo until the late 19th century.

1668

Morgan Sacks Spanish Main

Henry Morgan, sailing as a British privateer out of Port Royal (Jamaica) with a fleet of 10 ships, plunders Porto Bello and extracts a ransom of 1000,000 pesos, July 1668. He attacks Lake Maracaibo the following year and collects 250,000 pesos in loot.

In 1671, Morgan lands at Chagres, Panama, with 30 ships and 800 men who make their way across the isthmus to attack Panama City, January. Although more numerous, Spanish defenders break, detonate gunpowder and burn most of the city down.

On his return to Port Royal, Morgan discovers peace has been signed with Spain. He goes on to serve periodically as deputy governor and governor of Jamaica, to manage his three plantations and many slaves, and to unsuccessfully pursue Juan de Serras, leader of the troublesome Karmahaly Maroons.

1668-1671

Royal African Company Emerges

Charles II charters a new Royal African Company with exclusive authorization to buy gold and captives in Africa (the predecessor Company of Royal Adventurers collapsed from losses in war with the Dutch). Charles's brother, James, continues as its governor.

Bunce Island slave factory established in Sierra Leone estuary.

1673

Jolliet and Marquette Descend Mississippi

Louis Jolliet, Jacques Marquette (a Jesuit priest) and five *voyageurs* descend the Mississippi in two canoes, from the Wisconsin river to the mouth of the Arkansas river, the first European expedition to do so. They turn back, 435 miles short of the Gulf of Mexico, to avoid possible conflict with Spanish adventurers.

Indians show them two critical portages, between the Fox and Wisconsin rivers, and between the present Des Plaines and Chicago rivers; the latter on their return trip to Lake Michigan.

1674

Berbers Subjugated

Religious Berber tribes—the Zawaya—who have been fighting a 30-year war with dominant Arabs—the Hassan—are defeated soon after their charismatic Imam Nasr ad-Din dies in battle, August. Fighting spreads to Wolof regions south of Senegal river. At issue: Religious purity, and control of both slave and gum-arabic trade, both sought by French at Île Saint-Louis.

Gum arabic is increasingly in demand for textile dying in Europe.

Hassan will continue to "arabize" Moorish society north of the river

(present-day Mauritania), with Zawaya assigned to religious responsibilities. Freed blacks and non-Muslim black slaves make up much of the laboring classes.

1675

1675-1678

Thousands Die in King Philip's War

Brutal King Philip's War erupts between previously friendly Wampanoag, supported by most neighboring tribes, and expanding colonists in Connecticut, Rhode Island and Massachusetts. Springfield and Providence are burned early in fighting. Dozens more villages, including Northampton, Hadley and Sudbury, MA, and Warwick, RI, attacked.

Colonial militia loses dozens in ambush at Bloody Creek; Narragansett band nearly wiped out in Great Swamp Massacre. Of total colonist population estimated at 16,000, nearly 1,000 die in fighting; of estimated Indian population of 10,000 (previously depleted by disease), at least 3,000 die. These include women and children on both sides.

Many captured Indians hanged and others sold into slavery; the piked head of slain Wampanoag leader Metacom (known also as Philip) displayed in Plymouth for 20 years. Native Wabanaki, however, are victors in related Maine fighting.

1675

Barbados: Uprising Betrayed

A female domestic slave tells her mistress of a plot to overthrow and kill white masters, May. Confessions are forced and trials held. Of 17 slaves convicted, 6 are burned to death and 11 beheaded. Another 25 are executed later in the year and 70 are flogged or deported. Quaker masters are specifically required to be more strict with their slaves under new laws.

In September, Barbados suffers a major hurricane that destroys wind-driven sugar mills and knocks down many trees that survived plantation clearance.

1676

Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia

In Virginia, plantation owner Nathaniel Bacon leads rebellion of hundreds of settlers (including planters, European and African indentured servants, and slave and free blacks) against William Berkeley, colonial governor. One issue: Settlers want to take more Northern Neck land (between Rappahannock and Potomac rivers) from Doeg and other Indians, and want the right to continue to kill them indiscriminately; Berkeley wants peace. Bacon's supporters burn Jamestown, Sept. 19. Privateer Capt. Thomas Larimore helps restore Berkeley to power, January 1677; 23 rebels hanged.

Burgesses then adopt Bacon's policy of attacking Indians and turning much of their land over to indentured servants at the end of their term. This effectively divides the indentured from slaves. Burgesses also move to ultimately reduce

indentured numbers, increase slaves and, by 1705, subject latter to an onerous slave code.

1673-1678

British-Dutch-French Duels

Dutch fleet attacks Virginia and Maryland tobacco convoy in Hampton Roads, burning six, July 23, 1673. Dutch commanders learn from detainees that New York is only lightly defended, and a week later force its surrender after only 9 years under British rule. New York is returned to British in 1674 when British agree to peace.

But Britain's ally, France, continues its invasive war with the Dutch, instigated by Louis XIV. A French fleet, led by Jean II d'Estrées, retakes Cayenne from the Dutch, December, but is fought off by a Dutch fleet defending Tobago under Jacob Binckes.

D'Estrées then crosses Atlantic to take Gorée Island at Cape Verde and quickly returns to Tobago, December 1677. French attack Dutch fort, which is destroyed when a magazine explodes, killing Binckes and 250 men. The Dutch ships are scuttled; plantations are burned.

D'Estrées' fleet is in turn devastated, losing 7 major ships, including flagship *Terrible*, when they strike reefs of Las Aves archipelago at night, May 11, 1678, on their way to attack Curaçao.

France will hold Gorée (with two brief interruptions) for the next 300 years, build up Dakar on the Cape Verde mainland and expand into Senegal. Cayenne remains today the capital of French Guiana, part of metropolitan France.

1677

Iroquois Ally with British

Five Nations of the Iroquois (east to west: Mohawk, Oneida, Onondaga, Cayuga and Seneca), which dominate present-day upstate New York for more than a century (thanks to innovative production of corn, beans and squash), agree to Covenant Chain alliance with British. This holds through the French & Indian War, although they will divide during American Revolution.

1680

Pueblo Eject Spanish

Beset by drought, Comanche raids and onerous Spanish rule, thousands of Pueblo people rise up in New Mexico, Aug. 10. 400 Spanish settlers, including women and children are killed, also 21 Franciscan missionaries. All Spanish settlements destroyed. Santa Fé is besieged for months; the governor, Antonio de Oterman, finally leads a breakout toward El Paso, Jan. 1. Nearly 2,000 make it, including 500 Indian slaves.

Popé, the Pueblo leader, urges return to old ways and destruction of all things Spanish, including churches. A Spanish attempt to regain control in 1681 is turned back. It will be another 11 years before they try again.

1681**Charter for Pennsylvania Granted**

William Penn, a Quaker leader in England, wins charter from Charles II to establish colony of Pennsylvania (in partial payment of royal debt to Penn's father—a Cromwellian admiral and no Quaker—who had been instrumental in restoring Charles to the throne). This is six years after Quakers first settle Delaware Valley.

On site of what will become Philadelphia, Penn pays for land again, in treaty with Lenape chief Tammany, 1683. Soon after, Penn (whose mother was German) sets aside 15,000 acres to Quaker founders of Germantown.

The colony is named by King Charles for Penn's father, not for the son. Tammany (Tamenend) becomes a symbol of peace and amity, celebrated in Philadelphia, and up and down colonial coast.

1681**La Salle Follows Mississippi to Gulf**

René-Robert Cavelier de la Salle descends the Mississippi by canoe from the Illinois river to reach the Gulf of Mexico in April, 1682. He names the entire Mississippi basin "Louisiana" and claims it for France and his patron, Louis XIV.

La Salle had previously led French penetration of the Great Lakes (in pursuit of fur trading) by establishing Fort Frontenac near the St. Lawrence river outflow from Lake Ontario, then building the first fort at Niagara (where he was among the first Europeans to visit the falls) and launching a small ship to ply Lake Erie. In 1679, he traveled via lakes Huron and Michigan and down the Kankakee and Illinois rivers to the Mississippi.

1682**Oyo Empire Expands**

The Oyo empire of the Yoruba people begins expansion (from present-day Nigeria's Oyo state) toward Dahomey and to coastal Ajashe, which becomes a major slave trading port between the Oyo and the Portuguese. The latter name the city Porto-Novo.

1683**Tracking Down Fugitives**

South Carolina passes Act to Prevent Runaways.

1684-1687**Disastrous La Salle Expedition**

La Salle sails from La Rochelle with four ships provided by Louis XIV and 380 soldiers and settlers determined to establish a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. One ship is lost to pirates off Hispaniola and another runs aground shortly after expedition struggles into Matagorda Bay (present-day Texas), having overshot the Mississippi by 500 miles, January 1685.

A third ship soon heads back to France. When the last ship, *La Belle*, sinks in the bay, La Salle attempts to find Mississippi overland. On fourth attempt, his

men mutiny and kill him, March 19, 1687. Six of these men eventually find their way to French forts on the upper Mississippi.

Remaining adults are killed the following year by Karankawas Indians who take children captive.

1684

Philadelphia's First Slaves

Isabella, first slave ship to Philadelphia, delivers 150 Africans, three years after colony is established (see above). William Penn becomes master of perhaps 12 at his Pennsbury Manor. Other Quakers also take slaves, but opposition soon rises at meetings of the Friends.

1685

Rice Comes to Carolina

Rice introduced to Carolina via a merchant ship from Madagascar forced to put into Charles Town for storm repair (according to most sources). Henry Woodward, among the city's first settlers, plants rice with great success on his John's Island plantation.

By 1700, the province is shipping nearly 200 tons annually. By 1800, 100 times that weight is shipped, and Low Country rice planters become one of the richest groups in the colonies (wealth made possible in large part by Wolof and other West African slaves knowledgeable about rice cultivation in their native Senegambia and inland Niger deltas).

Labor-intensive: After salt-water recedes from estuaries, they must be dammed off, allowing fields to fill with fresh water. Then rice is planted, to be cultivated by hand. Management and maintenance of water works are critical.

The Gullah: Low Country slaves develop a distinctive African-based language and relatively independent culture. They are managed by overseers (some African) while white-master families stay away from unhealthy marshes (malaria, yellow fever), especially during rainy spring and summer months.

1685

Code Noir: Baptism and Limited Rights

Louis XIV decrees *Code Noir* to regulate slavery in French colonies. Slaves must be baptized into Catholicism (also, Jews must depart French colonies).

Onerous overall, but with some big differences compared to British colonies: Couples can marry; families should not be broken up; masters may strike, but cannot torture or mutilate; fewer restrictions on manumission; Indians and freed slaves gain some rights of white colonial subjects (but usually not the vote). The code is inspired by Catholic priests on Martinique and drawn up by Louis' minister, Jean-Baptiste Colbert and Colbert's son.

Articles intended to provide some protection for slaves, including the minimal nourishment requirement, are frequently disregarded.

Despite upholding much brutality, the code makes possible surprisingly large populations of free people of color in French colonies, including Saint-Domingue, Martinique and Louisiana.

1685-1690**Cape Verde: Deadly Drought**

Crops fail for lack of rain in Cape Verde Islands; 4,000 die on Santiago. First of eight multi-year droughts that devastate the islands through 1866, with 20,000-plus dying in 1773-75 and a full 25% of the population succumbing in 1854-56. Thousands migrate to São Tomé and the Americas.

1686**Kidnapping of Leaders Angers Iroquois**

New France's Gov. Jacques-René de Denonville takes 50 Iroquois sachem prisoner at supposed Fort Frontenac peace meeting (present-day Kingston, ON). They are shipped to Marseille to serve as galley slaves. Iroquois raids intensify in St. Lawrence Valley, with hundreds of farms burned and families killed; Montreal continually threatened.

Louis de Buade de Frontenac returns to replace De Denonville, and eventually retrieves 13 surviving sachem from France. He restores them to the Iroquois in bid to win a peace.

1687**Crown Reliant on Sugar, Tobacco**

British crown's customs revenue on sugar and tobacco (virtually all produced on slave plantations in the Americas), cover a third of cost of the king's navy, army and government.

1688**Quakers' Anti-Slavery Proclamation**

Dutch and German Quakers issue what is believed to be the first anti-slavery statement by a religious group, in five-year-old Germantown near Philadelphia, April. They cite New Testament, "Do unto others as you would have them do unto you." This is four years after first slaves arrive in city (see above).

Over the following century, it is the Quakers in America and in Britain who most consistently call and organize for an end to the slave trade. They encourage Quaker slaveholders to improve conditions, to educate slaves and, finally, to free them.

The signators are Francis Daniel Pastorius, Garret Hendricks, and Abraham and Derick op den Graeff.

Quote: (slightly modernized) "These are the reasons why we are against the traffick of men-body, as followeth...

"There is a saying, that we shall doe to all men like as we will be done ourselves; making no difference of what generation, descent or colour they are.

"And those who steal or robb men, and those who buy or purchase them, are they not all alike? Here [in Germantown] is liberty of conscience, which is right and reasonable; here ought to be likewise liberty of ye body, except of evil-doers, which is another case. But to bring men hither, or to rob and sell them against their will, we stand against...

"And if it is done according to Christianity?... Pray, what thing in the world

can be done worse towards us, than if men should rob or steal us away, and sell us for slaves to strange countries; separating husbands from their wives and children.

“Being now this is not done in the manner we would be done at therefore we contradict and are against this traffic of men-body. And we who profess that it is not lawful to steal, must, likewise, avoid to purchase such things as are stolen, but rather help to stop this robbing and stealing if possible.”

1688

'Glorious Revolution' Expels King

In England's "Glorious Revolution," William of Orange and Mary (James II's daughter) with large Dutch fleet land at Torbay, Nov. 5; James's army and fleet go over to them. James flees London for France and is ultimately defeated at the Battle of the Boyne in Ireland, July 1, 1690.

From this point on, Britain rises and Netherlands fade as a leading sea and trade power (despite fact that the Dutch leader has taken over Britain as William III).

Britain also takes part in Nine Years' War, which involves a coalition against France and Louis XIV, through 1697.

1688-1697

Massacres Mark Colonial Fighting

King William's War between the New England colonies and New France, and their respective Indian allies, is an extension of both the ongoing Beaver Wars over fur trade and the Nine Years' War in Europe.

On the fuzzy Maine border with Acadia (present-day New Brunswick and Nova Scotia) and in upper New York, fighting is characterized by back-and-forth raids, ambushes, bloody massacres (particularly at Schenectady, NY, and Fort Loyal, ME), and kidnapping of women and children. Port Royal, the Acadian capital, is burned while well-fortified Québec City fights off British attackers. Treaty restores borders as they were; Iroquois and French (led by Frontenac) manage to end longstanding conflict.

Witch Trials: Salem, MA, witch trials take place amid this fighting, May 1693. More than 200 are initially accused, 30 are found guilty, 14 women and 5 men are hanged, and one elderly man is "pressed" to death. Some scholars believe terrors of Indian wars fed fears of witchcraft.

1689

Slave Traders Curry Royal Favor

With King James gone, the London-based Royal African Company loses monopoly control of African trade. But Edward Colston, the company's deputy governor, transfers a large shareholding to William III to curry favor with the new monarch.

(In 2020, protestors in Bristol pull down a 291-year-old statue of slave-trading Colston, tossing it into the River Avon.)

1689**Locke Advises on Rights, Slavery**

William and Mary accept English Bill of Rights, which spells out Parliament's powers, basic civil rights and designates them as co-monarchs, Dec. 16.

Advising them is John Locke, who publishes *Two Treatises on Government* and other works that will have major influence on the political thinking of the Enlightenment and on Jefferson, Adams, Washington and other leaders of the American Revolution.

Note: In the Second Treatise, Locke writes that man cannot agree to enslave himself; nor do others have the right to enslave him, except if he is a captive in a just war and the alternative is death. Locke neither attacks nor makes any defense of black chattel slavery, even though he previously transcribed North Carolina's colonial constitution, including provisions for slavery.

1690s**Slave Traffic Accelerates**

Estimated number of African captives crossing the Atlantic reaches 30,000 a year. In the 1790s, it will be 85,000 a year.

1690**Primer for Colonial Youngsters**

The New-England Primer, the first reading-instruction book for young students in the 13 colonies, is published in Boston by Benjamin Harris. It is based on *The Protestant Primer*, which he had published in London (along with anti-Catholic pamphlets).

The *Primer* will be the basis of most colonial schooling through the Revolutionary War.

1691**Freedom Decreed for Marron Village**

The Palenque de San Basilio, the *marron* (short for *cimarron*) village in present-day Colombia founded in 1605 by Benkos Biohó, is granted a royal charter of freedom by King Charles II of Spain. This ends decades of futile attempts to storm the mountain stronghold, although viceroyalty of Cartagena does not acknowledge palenque's free status until 1714.

1692**Jamaica's Port Royal Flattened**

Earthquake and tsunami destroy most of Port Royal, Jamaica, June 7. One of the largest towns in the West Indies, it loses four forts and half its 6,000 population between earthquake and subsequent disease. Survivors move across bay to Kingston.

1692**Spanish-Pueblo Reach for Peace**

Diego de Vargas leads Spanish return to New Mexico and Santa Fé, Sept. 13.

Promises clemency and protection if Pueblo will accept Christian faith. Peace is difficult; two more bloody uprisings take place before Spanish are re-established, 1699.

But they make no further attempts to interfere in Pueblo culture or religion, and grant considerable land to each Pueblo village. Also, a public defender is named to represent Indians in court.

1693

William & Mary College Founded

College of William and Mary is founded by Anglican churchman James Blair in Middle Plantation, VA (later Williamsburg). The second-oldest college in the U.S. is named for the British king and queen.

1693

Florida Sanctuary for Carolina Runaways

Spain's Charles II orders that sanctuary be provided in Spanish Florida for slaves escaping from South Carolina if they convert to Catholicism and agree to serve four years in the colony's militia, November. Extended in 1733 by his successor, Felipe V.

1693 and beyond

Gold Rush in Brazil

Bandeirantes from São Paulo, in pursuit of Indians to enslave and long on the lookout for gold, discover the latter in the Rio das Velhas valley of the Serra do Espinhaço, 180 miles north of Rio de Janeiro. This touches off an 80-year gold rush that draws more than 400,000 Portuguese (perhaps 25% of Portugal's male population, mostly from the north) and other Europeans, and 500,000 slaves by 1750, including tens of thousands from the sugar plantations of Bahia and Pernambuco.

A new rough-and-tumble city, Vila Rica (later, Ouro Preto), becomes the capital of a new captaincy, Minas Gerais (General Mines) and grows into South America's largest (population 40,000 in 1730; 100,000 in 1789). Gold mined from streams by mostly African slaves pours into the treasury of Portugal's kings (they insist on 20 %), focusing their attention on Brazil as never before.

It is the longest gold rush in history, generating 800 tons of legally reported gold over the next century. It redirects energy and people to southern Brazil, depleting the sugar plantations of slave labor. The capital of the new viceroyalty of Brazil is thus moved south to Rio de Janeiro in 1763 from Salvador in Bahia.

New Rights: Mines require more teamwork, and many slaves are eventually rewarded some portion of profits and right to buy manumission. Number of freed people and children of mixed marriages rises quickly.

Richest ever? The Brazilian gold rush lasts far longer and extracts perhaps double the gold by weight that the California rush will generate in the mid-1800s. It redirects the history of Brazil and Portugal.

1694**Palmares Mocambos Fall**

Worried about the supply of slaves, officials in Brazil's Recife launch a new expedition against the Palmares *mocambo* havens of runaway slaves. The largest, in the Serra de Barriga, falls to a Portuguese force including *mamelucos* and Indian allies led by Domingos Jorge Velho, a *bandeirante* from São Paulo.

More than 200 inhabitants are said to commit suicide, and thousands are again enslaved. Their leader, Zumbi, is captured the following year and beheaded.

1694-1700**More Conflict Among Slave-Traders**

On-and-off Komenda Wars, between Dutch established in this Gold Coast port and encroaching British, draw in the king of Eguafu and a rival prince, and eventually the Twifo and Denkyira peoples. Dutch remain a force on the coast but British gain important foothold.

1697**French Adventurer Sacks Cartagena**

A fleet of French privateers led by Bernard Desjean, Baron de Pointis, descends on Cartagena de Indias, whose decaying forts are easily taken, May 6. The French methodically plunder the city for 17 days, accumulating more than 10 million livres worth of loot.

De Pointis avoids a joint British and Dutch fleet led by John Nevell who manages to capture only a single ship whose crew is infected with yellow fever. The disease kills 1,300 British sailors, six captains and Nevell himself. Although fever had also spread to French ships, fewer than 150 die.

De Pointis gives King Louis XIV his 10% share and keeps the rest, achieving instant super-wealth. His buccaneer allies, left lootless in the Caribbean, return to Cartagena and pillage it all over again.

1697**Saint-Domingue Enriches France**

France is formally granted the Saint-Domingue end of Hispaniola (including Tortuga) from Spain in the Peace of Ryswick, Oct. 30, ending the Nine Years' War between Louis XIV's France and the "Grand Alliance" of Spain, Britain, Emperor Leopold I and the Dutch Republic.

Saint-Domingue, which French actually took over in 1659, develops into the richest single European colony, based on slave-powered sugar-cane production.

1697**Royal African Monopoly Ends**

William III and Parliament end the Royal African Company's London-based monopoly on commerce in Africa; any merchant can now engage in slave trade. King and Parliament act at urging of Bristol's would-be slave merchants.

It also allows New England and New York slave-smuggling merchants to operate in the open.

1698-1699**Protestant Scots Flood Ulster**

Four severe winters and failed harvests lead to famine in Scotland and drive thousands to Ulster, adding to the population of Protestant Scots-Irish tenant farmers (brought in by English kings throughout the 17th century), who soon claim the majority in Ulster.

1698-1699**Disease Kills 25% in Charles Town**

Smallpox, followed by an earthquake and yellow fever, kill as many as 25% of the people of Charles Town, SC.

1698**Portuguese Expelled from Zanzibar**

Two centuries of Portuguese control of the slave trade from this island off present-day Tanzania ends when it falls to Saif bin Sultan of Oman who has also taken Mombasa and now rules the entire Swahili Coast between Zanzibar and Oman.

Two squadrons of ships sent from Lisbon fail to mount a counterattack, largely because disease ravages troops and crews.

1699**Scottish Colony Collapses**

Scottish settlers abandon an 8-month attempt to create a New Caledonia on the Darien coast of the Panama isthmus. Only 300 of original 1,200 survive malaria, yellow fever and hunger, July.

An increasingly desperate Scotland—nobles, merchants, clerics—had pooled considerable assets into the Scotland Company to establish a colony that could straddle the isthmus, create a new highway for trade to the Pacific, and build wealth to support some level of Scottish independence from England.

A second expedition of five ships and 1,000 settlers arrives Nov. 30 to find New Caledonia deserted and is soon besieged by a Spanish force. The Scots negotiate their final departure, February, 1700.

The loss in capital to Scotland is so great that it begins negotiating the Acts of Union that will be voted in 1707, establishing a much more united Great Britain dominated by England.

1699**A Slaver Goes Missing**

Henrietta Marie departs England for New Calabar (in present-day Nigeria). Trades iron bars and pewter goods for slaves, 191 of whom are then delivered to Port Royal, Jamaica.

Ship loads final cargo of Jamaica sugar, cotton and dyewoods for England. Detours via Yucatán Channel to avoid Windward Passage pirates, only to founder. No survivors from crew of about 18. Ship's fate unknown until discovered on New Ground Reef, off Key West, in 1972.

1700

1700

Escape to Dismal Swamp

Great Dismal Swamp, covering perhaps 1,600 square miles of Carolina and southeastern Virginia, sought out by runaway slaves, with likely help from Indians. Develops into largest refuge of maroon families in the 13 colonies. **Note:** Carolina slave population said to be at least 40,000 in 1700.

Maroon community survives construction of Dismal Swamp Canal, begun in 1793, and a militia raid in 1823. Mosquitoes, water moccasins and trackless, waterlogged forest keep slave hunters out.

1700

Liverpool Moves into Slaving

Price for male slave in a Slave Coast factory: £3 in goods. Price at auction in West Indies: £20, according to the Royal African Company, no longer holding a monopoly.

Liverpool is a fishing village on the Mersey with 5,000 residents. But its merchants begin to move into slaving. A century later, it is a leading port of 58,000 with Triangular Trade slaving credited for most of its growth and wealth.

Slave ships are built, crewed and loaded in Liverpool with trade goods for the First Passage to Africa. Very rarely are slaves brought to Liverpool.

1701

Queen Anne's War Begins

War of Spanish Succession opens, in which Britain, Portugal and the Netherlands fight to maintain separation of French and Spanish thrones. The death of Charles II (Spain's last Habsburg king and childless) opens throne to Philip of Anjou, Spain's first Bourbon king. He is also in the line of succession to France's throne.

In North America and the Caribbean, it is known as Queen Anne's War (she succeeds brother-in-law William III in 1702), pitting British colonies against those of France and Spain and runs through 1713.

1701

Ashanti Expand to Atlantic

Denkyira people, weakened by Komenda Wars, are defeated on Gold Coast by Osei Tutu, who expands the militaristic Ashanti empire to the Atlantic. Gold and slave trade with Europeans brings wealth. Ashanti maintain their independence through 19th century.

1702

Carolina Raids for Indian Slaves

James Moore, Carolina governor, leads raid of colonists and Yamasee Indian allies into Spanish Florida to gather Indian slaves and besiege Castillo de San

Marcos at St. Augustine. Spanish warships from Havana force Moore to retreat, burning a number of his boats, December.

In 1704, Moore leads raids with Yamasee and Creek allies against Apalachee Indians and Spanish missions near Apalachee Bay on the Gulf side.

The fighting, part of Queen Anne's War in the colonies, significantly weakens Spanish in Florida.

1703

New York: Slaves Widely Held

More than 40% of New York households hold slaves, second in colonies only to Charles Town.

1703

Scots-Irish Flee to America

Queen Anne's Test Act further discriminates against Scots-Irish Presbyterians (as well as Irish Catholics). Thus political and religious motives are added to economic woes that convince 200,000 Scots-Irish to emigrate to American colonies over the following decades, most as voluntary indentured servants.

1704

Carolina Slave Patrols

South Carolina establishes first slave patrols, administering passes, seeking fugitives and enforcing bans on slave gatherings for fear they could lead to insurrection. Patrols are gradually extended to other colonies, including Virginia (1726), North Carolina (1753) and Georgia (1757).

Patrols continue through end of Civil War, and will provide framework for Ku Klux Klan and other vigilante operations during Reconstruction.

1704

Raid on Deerfield

Massachusetts "frontier" settlement suffers 47 English colonists killed by attacking French and Abenaki allies, who depart with 112 captives. Some of the latter die enroute to Montreal; 60 are ransomed, and remaining are adopted by Mohawk families.

1706

Tribe Eliminated in Louisiana

French Louisiana colonists raid Chitimacha Indian settlements, kill many men and enslave many more, as well as women and children. Between war and disease, the tribe is practically wiped out by 1720.

1706

Pirates Take Over Nassau

"Republic of Pirates" rises in Nassau, Bahamas, after Spanish and French forces burn port and drive off British settlers. British privateers move in and harass Spanish and French through the 1713 close of Queen Anne's War (aka War of

Spanish Succession). Most then turn to piracy, with Blackbeard at one point selected as their magistrate. Nassau pirates finally defeated by ex-pirate Benjamin Hornigold, 1718.

1706

Slave Vaccine Saves Boston Lives

In Boston, the slave Onesimus demonstrates an African method of fending off smallpox for his new master, Cotton Mather.

Vaccination: Take drops from a pustule of an infected patient, then cut the healthy recipient's skin and insert the drops (it's called variolation).

During a smallpox outbreak 15 years later, Mather convinces 280 persons in a generally distrustful Boston to accept the inoculation. Six die (2.2%) compared to 844 deaths (14.3%) among 5,889 non-inoculated patients.

Based on this success, and on similar experiences in London (where it was introduced from Turkey by the British ambassador's wife), variolation is widely adopted throughout Britain and the American colonies.

Note: Edward Jenner performs his first smallpox vaccination—with cowpox—in 1796.

1707

Spain Formally Established

Philip V, Spain's Bourbon king, extends laws of Castile over Aragon and Valencia, formally establishing a single Kingdom of Spain. Similar decrees bring in Balearic Islands, 1715, and Catalonia, 1716.

1707

England + Scotland = Great Britain

With Acts of Union, English and Scottish parliaments combine into a single Parliament of Great Britain, May 1, building a much more unified British economy and a somewhat more unified population.

1707-1709

War in Goldfields

Paulistas follow the *bandeirantes'* trail from São Paulo to dominate Brazil's gold rush at first. But immigrants from Portugal and Azores, pouring into Rio de Janeiro, build a more direct road from Rio to Vila Rica. Armed conflict between the *Paulistas* and these *emboabas* ends with government favoring latter.

The *bandeirantes* roam west to Mato Grosso to find more gold-laden streams, igniting a new rush, 1720, in which native Bororo people are enslaved to work the streams. But transporting gold 2,200 miles back to São Paulo via rivers and portages is dangerous; convoys of up to 400 people are wiped out by Payaguá and other Indians every few years, until gold plays out.

1708

Royal African Company Mutates

Royal African Company, driven into insolvency by competition permitted under

1697 Trade with Africa Act (see above), eventually transfers assets to African Company of Merchants, which continues slaving operations to 1731, then devotes itself to gold and ivory trade.

1709

Europe's Harshes Winter

Beginning in January, temperatures plunge across Europe, freezing the Thames (for two months), the Rhine and Po, and even Venice's lagoon. It is the continent's coldest winter since at least 1500 to the present.

Thousands freeze, and many more die from famine, which runs through 1710. It leads to food riots and to first large migration of Palatine Germans, who are also beset by marauding armies of France's Louis XIV. 13,000 go first to England and Ireland (at invitation of Queen Anne), and then to New York's Hudson and Mohawk valleys, Carolina and later, in larger numbers, to Pennsylvania.

1709

Cape Verde Marrons Resist

Portuguese governor of Santiago, largest of the Cape Verde Islands, sends troops to subjugate *marron* community of Julangue, estimated at 600. Their success is not immediate; the marrons are still fighting in 1719.

1709

Slavery 'Legalized' in Quebec

Intendant Jacques Raudot issues decree asserting that enslaved Panis (Indians) and Negroes are legally held in bondage, April 13.

Slaves are relatively few in Canada, mostly Indians captured and traded to French by rival Indians in the west. African slaves are brought in from the English colonies to work for wealthy families.

Between 1629 and 1834, fewer than 5,000 individual black slaves are counted in the colonies that comprise Canada, with a large number coming to Nova Scotia under Loyalist masters in the wake of the American Revolution. No trans-Atlantic slave ships are ever recorded entering the St. Lawrence estuary.

1710

Enslaved Africans to Louisiana

French introduce African slaves to Louisiana, most taken from Dutch and British slave ships during Queen Anne's War. First slaves transported directly from Africa arrive in 1719. Slaves will make up a significant portion of population here, in contrast to Quebec.

1710

Sugar War in Pernambuco

Brazil's Mascate ("Sugar") War boils between Olinda, capital of Pernambuco and home of plantation and mill owners, and upstart Recife, where merchants and bankers gain upper hand as price of sugar drops.

1711**New York Opens Slave Market**

In New York, a formal slave market opens at the East River foot of Wall Street. Operates through 1762.

1711**Bloody Tuscarora-Carolina Fighting**

Tuscarora War begins in North Carolina (then Albemarle province) with an Indian alliance killing hundreds of settlers and leaders in Bath and New Bern. South Carolina (then Clarendon province) sends white officers and 300 allied Yamasee and other Indians to force Tuscarora truce.

Fighting reignites the following year amid a yellow-fever outbreak that hits whites hard. Another Carolina contingent with many Indians (including Cherokee) uses artillery and explosives to reduce the Tuscarora's Fort Neoheroka.

Many Tuscarora begin migration to mid-New York where they will be accepted as sixth Iroquois nation.

1712**Slave Uprising in New York**

Uprising in New York City, in which 23 black slaves set fire to building on Maiden Lane, near Broadway, and kill nine whites, April 6. Seventy blacks are arrested. Six commit suicide, 27 tried, 20 burned to death and one executed on breaking wheel. Repressive laws follow, including requirement that masters who free slaves post a large bond, and that contact among slaves be limited. Slave population estimated at 1,000 of 7,000 total, or 14%.

1712**Carolina Divides**

South and North Carolina created from the two provinces, Clarendon and Albemarle, respectively, of the original Carolina colony, to ease administration. South Carolina taken from proprietors and made a royal colony in 1719; North Carolina follows in 1729.

1712**Cassard's Grand Raid**

Jacques Cassard, with eight French warships, loots and destroys Ribeira Grande on Cape Verde island of Santiago. This squadron crosses Atlantic, joining with pirates from Saint-Domingue. Together they sack Montserrat and Antigua (both British) and then bombard Meerzorg, extorting a ransom from Surinam and making possible the escape of hundreds of plantation slaves into the forest.

Cassard finishes up with Berbice and Essequibo (Dutch Guyana), Sint Eustatius and heavily fortified Curaçao. Returns to Toulon with one of the grandest single-voyage hauls ever of treasure, goods and slaves.

This all takes place as Treaty of Utrecht is being negotiated.

1713**British Win Slave Asiento**

Treaty of Utrecht ends War of Spanish Succession (Queen Anne's War in North America). Britain, Portugal and Netherlands accept Philip IV as Bourbon king of Spain, but he must drop any claim to French throne. Britain wins Gibraltar (which it holds to this day) and recognition of its possession of Jamaica since 1655.

British merchants (South Sea Company) gain Spanish *asiento* to deliver 4,800 slaves annually to Spain's colonies in America. British hold the *asiento* until 1750, dramatically expanding their share of slave trade. South Sea hires African Company of Merchants, which mounts 96 voyages over 25 years, purchasing and shipping 34,000 enslaved blacks, 30,000 of whom survive to reach reception factories at Cartagena, Vera Cruz, Portobelo and Havana, and Jamaica as well.

1713**Safe in Surinam Jungle**

Escaped slaves, many able to flee during Cassard's raid, create *Ndjuka* (marron) communities in Surinam jungle under Alabi, Boni and Capt. Broos.

Dutch colony reports 200 plantations and 13,000 slaves, the great majority African.

1715**Indians Fight Slave Raids**

Yamasee and allied tribes, including Catawba and Cherokee, rise up in South Carolina to end settler slave raids. Port Royal attacked, smaller settlements destroyed and more than 100 settlers and slaves killed. Also, 90 white traders die in individual confrontations. South Carolina desperately gives land to remaining Tuscarora to win their help against Yamasee. Cherokee switch to join settlers.

Tuscarora and Yamasee wars sharply reduce potential Indian slaves through new reliance on Indians as allies, as well as through death and migration. Carolina planters import increasing numbers of African slaves by 1717.

1715**Hurricane Destroys Treasure Fleet**

Hurricane overtakes 12-ship Spanish treasure fleet, outbound from Havana, as it emerges from Bahamas Channel. The lead ship, a French frigate with no treasure, escapes, but three galleons sink in deep water and the rest are driven onto Florida beaches (just north of present-day Vero Beach). More than 1,000 sailors die, including commanding Adm. Don Juan de Ubilla.

Most of the treasure, perhaps 7 million silver pieces of eight, is recovered by 300 divers, African and Indian slaves.

1716**The Whydah Gally's Tale**

Whydah booms on the Slave Coast (present-day Benin) with King Haffon loading 500 captives and much gold aboard the British *Whydah Gally* (commissioned by London banker and slave-merchant Humphry Morice).

After trading slaves in Caribbean for sugar, indigo and rum, *Whydah Gally* is captured off the Bahamas by pirate "Black Sam" Bellamy who then heads up the East Coast. Ship is storm-wrecked off Cape Cod, April 26, 1717; Bellamy and all but two of the crew die.

In 1984, wreckage and treasure (15,000 African gold coins and 60 cannon, plus loot from other ships taken by pirates) is discovered by archaeologist Barry Clifford and identified by a ship's bell inscribed with her name.

1718

New Orleans Founded

New Orleans (La Nouvelle-Orléans) founded by Jean Baptiste le Moyne de Bienville. Earlier, De Bienville founded Old Biloxi and La Mobile (at the mouth of Mobile Bay).

The first enslaved Africans brought directly to Louisiana are purchased at Whydah and carried by the *Duc du Maine*, with 250 landed at Biloxi, 1719.

Louisiana is to generate revenue for the Mississippi Company and various financial offshoots directed by John Law, a Scotsman serving as France's controller general. Demand for Mississippi Company stock leads to sudden inflation, and a run on banks for gold and silver as the "Mississippi Bubble" bursts, 1720.

Two years later, a hurricane blows most of little New Orleans' flimsy structures away.

1719

Robinson Crusoe Published

Defoe's novel, published in London April 25, is a huge best seller. The English protagonist trades for gold in Guinea, is enslaved by Salé pirates, escapes with a younger slave whom he later sells, starts a sugar plantation in Brazil and is shipwrecked off Venezuela on his way to trade for slaves in Africa. He is marooned on an island for 28 years.

His man Friday? An Indian whom Crusoe saves from native cannibals. Defoe is believed to have based his story, in part, on the 1705 marooning of privateer Alexander Selkirk on a Pacific island. Selkirk, rescued after four years, dies of yellow fever aboard a Royal Navy ship on an anti-pirate patrol off West Africa, Dec. 13, 1721.

1720s

Slave Traders Shop Africa

Joseph Wragg and Benjamin Savage establish themselves as slave traders in Charles Town, SC, for all 13 colonies. Their fleet of 36 ships imports 10,000 enslaved people between 1717 and 1744, dealing first with the Royal African Company and its factory in Gambia.

They go independent in the 1730s, obtaining human cargos from the Portuguese in Luanda. Between 1735 and 1739, Joseph Wragg & Company receives 20 cargoes of African slaves. Charleston's Wraggborough section is named for the family.

1722**'Black Bart' Dies**

Short but spectacular buccaneer career of Bartholomew Roberts ends with his death in a broadside from HMS *Swallow* off Cape Lopez (present-day Gabon), Feb. 10, 1722.

Last great pirate: A mate on a slaver, Roberts and his ship were captured by pirate Howell Davis at Anomabu (near Cape Coast Castle) in June 1719. Roberts then agreed to join the pirates. (Davis himself had been a mate on another slaver when he turned pirate a year earlier.)

When Davis died in an attack on the Portuguese island of Príncipe his men elected Roberts as their new captain. He led them back to Príncipe for bloody and profitable revenge. The crew then opted to cross Atlantic to Brazil where they discovered a fleet of 42 Portuguese merchant ships in All Saints Bay (Salvador).

Looting the richest ship (carrying gold and gems for King João V), they then sailed north to Newfoundland, sweeping up Grand Banks fishing ships. At Trepassey, they captured 22 merchant ships and another 150 fishing vessels.

Returning to the Caribbean in the fall of 1720, they took more ships off St. Kitts and St. Lucia, and all but shut down navigation in the West Indies. Roberts returned to West Africa in April and captured two French ships near the Senegal river. In Whydah harbor, Roberts allowed captains of 11 slave ships to ransom vessels for eight pounds of gold dust each. One was set afire when the captain declined; as many as 80 trapped Africans died.

After killing Roberts and two other pirates on the *Royal Fortune*, *Swallow* rounds up 272 men, including 65 Africans who had been freed by Roberts; they are returned to slavery. Of the remaining buccaneer crews, many die on the voyage to Cape Coast Castle where 52 are hanged. Another 17 are sent to Marshalsea Prison in London.

In less than three years, Roberts and his men captured more than 400 ships. It was the high point of Atlantic piracy.

1722**Earthquake Shatters Algarve**

Major earthquake (perhaps 7.8R) strikes Portugal's Algarve, followed by a tsunami, Dec. 27, damaging buildings in Tavira, Albufeira, Faro and Loulé.

1725**1727****Imamate Established in Guinea**

Fula Muslims defeat a larger force of Fula "infidels" at Talansan in the Futa Djallon highlands of Guinea. Karamokho Alfa, leader of nearby Timbo, then launches a jihad against neighboring traditional kingdoms. By 1750, he establishes a Fula imamate, which institutes sharia law.

This is the first of several Muslim states formed in West Africa, but Islam doesn't spread much farther south in decades to come.

1727**Ursalines: Schools for New Orleans**

Twelve Ursuline Sisters arrive in New Orleans from France, and soon open a convent and a boarding school, the oldest school for women in what will become the U.S., and also the oldest continually operating Catholic school. Much later, they hold first classes in the U.S. for free women of color, for female slaves and for Native Americans.

1727**Dahomey Takes Whydah**

Agaja, king of Dahomey (present-day Benin), completes conquest of Allada and Whydah (5,000 die in battle for the latter). His Fon people war on all neighbors, including dominant Oyo empire, and bring captives to capital of Abomey. Month-long Annual Customs include decapitation of 500 captives in name of Fon ancestors. The several thousand remaining slaves are traded, often for guns, to Portuguese, French, Dutch and, later, British factories in Whydah.

Legend: The Allada leader, Gaou Guinou, and his wife are among those sold as slaves to French. He eventually is taken to Saint-Domingue and starts a new family (presumably as a slave).

Much later, Gaou Guinou is said to have been the grandfather of Toussaint Louverture.

Women warriors: Dahomey's aggressive military includes the *Mino* ("Our Mothers"), women warriors who train intensely, and regularly deploy in battle and slave raids. They include free Fon and young captives; none are married. Their female commanders take part in king's grand council. *Mino* fight well into 19th century, when they number several thousand and suffer many casualties against better-armed French army.

1727**Scots-Irish Mass Emigration**

Second mass emigration of Scots-Irish from Ulster follows third consecutive poor harvest. Nearly 300,000 depart Ireland by 1760, most going to North American colonies.

1727-1775**South Germans to America**

Second, larger wave of Palatine and other south German families begins emigration to Philadelphia. Refugees from ongoing wars, they include Mennonites and other dissenters, but most are Lutheran and Reformed church members. Estimated at 65,000 by 1775, many arrive as indentured servants. When free of that, most establish farms in counties north and west of Philadelphia as "the Pennsylvania Dutch."

1728-1740**Jamaica: First Maroon War**

Escaped slaves defend several mountain communities (Windward Maroons

under Queen Nanny and Leeward Maroons under Cudjoe) against British settlers (numbering no more than 3,000) and soldiers. Tactics foreshadow guerrilla warfare. Sugar production declines. Ends with a negotiated peace and land grants to Maroons; in turn, they agree to return future fugitive slaves to plantations.

A significant number of slaves on Jamaica are said to be Ashanti. The term "maroon," used on Jamaica, is derived from Spanish *cimarron* and *marron*, applied to escaped slaves.

1728

Lançados Destroy Factory

Bunce Island fort and slave factory, operated by Royal African Company in the Sierra Leone estuary, is leveled by rival *lançado* slave traders. Their leader is José Lopez da Moura, the Portuguese-African grandson of a Mane chief. Bunce Island lies abandoned for 20 years.

The lançados: Those "cast out" from Portugal, including Jews, New Christians fleeing the Inquisition, and desperados fleeing the law followed early navigators to settle the West African coast from 1500 on. Virtually all male, they married African wives from ruling families and set themselves up as middlemen in trading of weapons, spices and slaves. Their mixed-race descendants developed a unique Luso-African culture that continued well into the 20th century.

They became prominent in the ports and along the rivers from the Senegal to Sierra Leone, including the Gambia and Casamance, and the Geba and Rio Grande de Buba (present-day Guinea-Bissau).

1728

Fon-Oyo War Benefits Slavers

Oyo cavalry strikes back at Kingdom of Dahomey, whose Fon army has firearms and builds trenches to counter horses. Oyo (Yoruba people) attack Dahomey seven times before finally subjugating it in 1748. These wars generate considerable captives for slave trade on all sides, including trans-Atlantic.

1729

Natchez, Yazoo Enslaved

Natchez and Yazoo people, provoked by a French commander's demand that they turn over a burial ground for his plantation, surprise and kill 230 male settlers and burn Fort Rosalie (present-day Natchez, MS) but spare captured women, children and black slaves.

French retreat to New Orleans, ally with Choctaw, and defeat Natchez and Yazoo, 1730. Thousands of Indians are enslaved, many of them sent to Saint-Domingue and other French colonies. Yazoo survivors absorbed by Chickasaw; Muscogee take in Natchez survivors.

1730

Slaver Taken by Captives

Five days after departing Banana Islands (off present-day Freetown) 96

captives on *Little George* slip out of chains, break down a bulkhead, kill three watchmen, threaten to blow up ship with a quickly made bomb and win surrender of Capt. George Scott and crew, June 6.

Little George was returning home to Newport, RI; she is owned by merchant Godfrey Malbone, known later for his 1741 mansion in Newport.

Africans sail ship to Sierra Leone river where they regain land. Capt. Scott and crew, left behind on island, tell the tale to another slaver crew that eventually picks them up.

1730-1755

Great Evangelical Awakening

Great Awakening brings evangelical and revivalist fervor to churches and open fields in Britain and, by 1740, to its American colonies, North to South. While this spurs some slave masters to bring the evangelical word to their slaves, it does not ignite widespread anti-slavery or abolitionist feelings. Leaders include George Whitefield (who owns slaves), John and Charles Wesley, and George Tennent.

John Wesley is the most outspoken against slavery, particularly in *Thoughts Upon Slavery*, published in London in 1774. A week before his death in 1791, Wesley writes to encourage William Wilberforce in his early efforts to abolish the slave trade.

1730

From Lanzarote to Texas

Eruptions on Lanzarote, in the Canaries, will continue for six years, creating 32 small volcanoes, the smoky Montañas del Fuego and lava fields covering a quarter of the land.

Islanders are thus quick to answer the crown's call for emigrants to Cuba and Texas. Sixteen Canary families, the Ileños, most from Lanzarote, become the first civilian settlers of San Antonio, TX, in March 1731.

1731

Santiago: Large Forro Majority

Population of Santiago (largest of Cape Verde Islands): 17,709, of which 2% are white; 15% are mixed race; 16% are black slaves and the remaining 67%—11,919—are freed blacks, known as *forros*.

1732

Birth of George Washington

George Washington is born to a tobacco plantation family on Pope's Creek, VA, where it meets Potomoc, Feb. 22. When his father dies in 1743, George inherits a small plantation and 10 slaves managed by his half-brother. He becomes a county surveyor at age 17, a militia officer at 19.

1733

Georgia Founded, Slavery Banned

First 116 settlers arrive at Savannah to establish colony of Georgia under the

plan of their leader, James Oglethorpe: Land is designated for the “worthy poor” of England’s debtors’ prisons who will also serve as a buffer between Carolinas and Spanish Florida. Slavery and alcohol are banned, the only British colony to prohibit either to this date. But it doesn’t last.

Oglethorpe had been inspired earlier in year to resign from deputy governorship of the Royal African Company by a letter from an enslaved Fulani from Senegal—Ayuba Suleiman Diallo—whom Oglethorpe then bought and freed.

Oglethorpe wins site of Savannah in negotiations with Yamasee, survivors of 1715 war with Carolina settlers.

1733

Danish Island Uprising

Insurrection on St. John, Danish Virgin Islands, as 150 Akwamu slaves (from Gold Coast) seize Coral Bay fort, Nov. 23. Many of island’s 206 whites killed. Planters regain control following May with French and Swiss troops from Martinique. Total slaves number 1,000-plus; some groups stay loyal to planters (they fear Akwamu intend to enslave them). At least one slave rewarded with freedom and an estate. Breffu, a woman leader, and 23 others commit suicide.

1738

Smallpox Kills Many Cherokee

Smallpox epidemic sweeps through Cherokee and Catawba villages in Carolinas and Georgia, killing nearly half their population over two years. Still more Indians, disfigured and despairing, take their own lives.

Disease believed to have been introduced by ship via Charles Town, where 800 to 1,000 citizens accept variolation inoculations; only eight of whom die.

1738

St. Augustine Offers Freedom

Spanish governor of Florida directs construction of Fort Mose north of St. Augustine. This becomes a free black settlement for ex-slaves who escape from Carolina, accept Catholicism and are willing to serve as St. Augustine’s first line of defense.

First commander is Francisco Menéndez, a Mandinka from Gambia who fled a Carolina plantation for St. Augustine.

1738

Quaker Denounces Slavery

Benjamin Lay confronts Yearly Meeting of his fellow Philadelphia Quakers (in Burlington, NJ) with diatribe against slavery, plunging a sword into a Bible and through a bladder of blood-red pokeberry juice.

Lay’s pamphlet, *All Slave Keepers that Keep the Innocent in Bondage, Apostates*, printed the previous year by his friend Benjamin Franklin, calls upon slave-holding Quakers to free the enslaved. Most of them will do just that by the time of the Revolution.

1738**Worst Slave-Ship Sinking**

The *Leusden*, with 700 slaves aboard, capsizes in a storm in the mouth of Surinam's Moroni river in worst known slave-ship disaster, Jan. 1. As the Dutch West India ship slowly sinks in shallow water, crew deliberately nail down hatches, trapping enslaved below; only 16, already on deck, survive.

Later, Capt. Joachim Outjes testifies that slaves might otherwise have escaped and set off a revolt. He is acquitted of wrongdoing.

1738**Flying Shuttle Doubles Output**

John Kay invents flying shuttle, doubling a weaver's output. Worker opposition forces him to flee Lancashire for Leeds.

1739**Rebellion Leads to Slave Ban**

Stono Rebellion, south of Charles Town, SC, results in 25 whites and 35-50 blacks killed, September. Congo-born slaves led by Jemmy set out for the promise of freedom in Spanish Florida. Intercepted by militia at Edisto river. Most executed; some sold to West Indies.

In response, legislature bans import of African slaves for 10 years, and restricts slave assembly and education. Also requires governor's approval of individual manumission, significantly shrinking that door to freedom.

1739**War for the Asiento**

Britain, complaining about limited access to Spain's West Indies ports and lack of slave-trading profits despite holding Spain's *asiento*, declares, in October, a new conflict with Spain, later dubbed the War of Jenkins' Ear.

Sailing from Port Royal, Jamaica, Adm. Edward Vernon attacks, occupies and loots Portobelo, Nov. 22, then destroys its forts. This victory inspires the song "Rule Britannia."

1740s**Saint-Domingue's Sugar Riches**

Saint-Domingue and Jamaica (a distant second) rise to become leading producers of world sugar. Saint-Domingue's sugar exports to Bordeaux are almost equal to value of *all* exports from 13 colonies to Britain. Estimated that livelihood of one million of France's 25 million people depend directly on imports from Saint-Domingue. Among the most profitable of all European colonies in 1700s.

1740s**Indians Migrate to Florida**

Creeks from Georgia and Alabama, and some Choctow and Yamasee move into northern Florida, from which original Timucua people have disappeared (due to

disease and slave raids). New arrivals are called *cimarrons* by the Spanish at St. Augustine, which apparently morphs into "Seminole."

Many runaway slaves from Carolina and Georgia Sea Islands (also called *cimarrons*) establish their own villages, paying tribute to and developing a working relationship with Indians. While most are Gullah, they learn Seminole languages, share agricultural skills (including rice cultivation) and intermarry to an extent. They are later called Black Seminoles and will ally with Indians against the Americans.

1740

Liverpool Rises

Liverpool begins to dominate Britain's Atlantic triangular trade over Bristol and London. Traffic of about 50 slave ships annually in 1750s rises to 100 before the American Revolution (during which it declines), and finally peaks at 120 to 130 annually (perhaps half of all Liverpool shipping) in the two decades before the 1807 ban.

Total slave voyages, 1695-1807: Bristol, 2,200; London, 3,100; Liverpool, 5,300.

Prominent Liverpool slave merchants: Banker Thomas Leylin, credited with transporting 3,500 slaves to Jamaica alone between 1782 and 1807; his fortune estimated at £736,531 in 1826. Banking partner was also a slave merchant.

Also, John Moss and John Gladstone, who each owned large slave plantations in Demerara (present-day Guyana). Isaac Gascoyne, an army officer, is a leading Liverpool opponent of abolishing the slave trade in Parliament, 1799.

1740

Citizenship Act for Colonies

Parliament passes Plantation Act, allowing Protestant aliens residing in Britain's colonies for seven years to be recognized as "His Majesty's natural born subjects of this Kingdom." Colonial courts are empowered to determine if petitioners fulfill requirements. Not intended for Catholics, but Quakers and Jews can be citizens by this means.

Will serve as basis for U.S. Naturalization Act of 1790.

1740

Oglethorpe Turned Back in Florida

From Georgia's Fort Frederica, James Oglethorpe leads a well-equipped attack on Spanish at St. Augustine as part of War of Jenkins' Ear, June. He captures Fort Mose, held by free blacks who retake and destroy the fort in a surprise counter assault.

Oglethorpe is forced to retreat, abandoning 56 cannon, when the Royal Navy commander withdraws his blockading ships at advent of hurricane season.

1740

Privateers Spur Revival

Santo Domingo, bashed by hurricanes and epidemics, and a backwater at the beginning of the century, becomes a base for Spanish privateers and profits from their plunder of Caribbean shipping. Spanish Hispaniola also benefits from arrival of Canary Islands immigrants in the Cibao Valley.

1740

Yaqui Insurrection in New Spain

In present-day Sonora, Yaqui people who had long lived peacefully under Jesuit missionaries, revolt against encroaching Spanish settlers. More than 1,000 Spanish and 5,000 Yaquis die. Uneasy peace follows with Jesuits replaced by Franciscan priests in 1767.

1741

Slave Uprising? Panic in New York

In a brutally cold New York winter, the governor's house in Fort George (originally Fort Amsterdam) is set afire, March 8. This and other arsons are attributed to a slave conspiracy to burn the city, which leads to hysteria and then seizure of 150-plus African slaves and 20 lower-class whites. Slaves include many owned by prominent DeLancey, Philipse, Livingston, Roosevelt and Bayard families, some of whom speak in slaves' defense.

Seventeen blacks are hanged and 13 burned at stake; 4 whites, including a tavern keeper, his wife and another woman, and a Catholic priest (a "Popish" connection to Spain is suspected) are also hanged. More than 70 blacks and 7 whites are banished to Madeira and various Caribbean islands.

Frequent Names: The list of accused blacks includes 9 Toms, 7 Jacks, 7 Caesars, 6 Yorks, 6 Tobeys or Toneys, 5 Londons (and 1 Dublin), 5 Wills, 5 Fortunes, 5 Catos, 4 Quacks, 4 Pompeys, 3 Sams, 3 Cofis, 3 Sarahs and 2 Scipios.

Most names are assigned by masters. But "Cofi" and variations thereof are found throughout 13 colonies and the Caribbean. It's Akan for "Friday" and often given to boys born that day (including Kofi Annan, former UN secretary general).

1741

British Foiled at Cartagena

Britain, in its most ambitious attack of War of Jenkins' Ear, sends huge 186-ship fleet and 27,000 men (including 4,000 Virginia recruits under Lawrence Washington, George's older half-brother) from Jamaica with orders to seize Havana, Portobelo, Vera Cruz and Cartagena de Indias.

Adm. Vernon and Gen. Thomas Wentworth decide to begin, in March, with Cartagena, key transfer port for Spain's treasure fleets, defended by a much smaller force under Blas de Lezo.

Yellow fever kills much of the British force, including 90% of the Virginians. British do little better on the attack, losing 10 warships and 27 transports, with another 17 warships seriously damaged. They get past one major fort, but fail to breach the city walls and withdraw to Jamaica, May 20. This disaster brings down Prime Minister Robert Walpole and helps ignite War of Austrian Succession.

1741**Sermon Heralds Awakening**

Jonathon Edwards' sermon, "Sinners in the Hands of an Angry God," electrifies revival crowd in Enfield, CT, July 8, heralding the Great Awakening in the 13 colonies.

George Whitefield, a particularly influential evangelist from England, delivers 18,000 sermons, many outside, on seven separate tours of 13 colonies through 1770.

Most of the leading preachers condone slavery, although they may oppose "abuse" of slaves. Samuel Davies of Virginia stands out for his conversion of hundreds of slaves to Christianity, support for their learning to read the Bible and his declaration of their "spiritual equality" to their masters. He establishes meeting houses in Virginia, 1748-1759, but these are not for slaves.

The movement works to fully engage individuals and congregations in their spiritual conversion. New England church attendance doubles to 50,000 in two years, with hundreds of new churches opening.

Great Awakening leaders help to found forerunners of Princeton, Rutgers, Columbia, Dartmouth and Brown colleges.

1742**Oglethorpe Turns Back Spanish**

Spain's latest military thrust into Georgia (with 36 ships and 1,900 men) is defeated at Battle of Bloody Marsh near Fort Frederica on St. Simons Island by Oglethorpe's much-smaller force of rangers, regulars, Indians and settlers. It is the last time Spanish from Florida threaten Georgia.

Oglethorpe departs for London a year later, never to return.

1742**Enslaved Build Faneuil Hall**

Faneuil Hall, built by Peter Faneuil largely with slave labor, opens in Boston. Peter and his uncle, Andrew, are major merchants in the Triangular Trade, smuggling slaves from Africa to the West Indies.

The upstairs Assembly Room becomes a gathering place for proponents of revolution in 1774.

1742-1746**Long Sahel Drought**

Life in West Africa from Senegal to Lake Chad disrupted by severe drought and famine, said to be the worst in 200 years, according to Arabic records in Timbuktu. Hundreds of thousands die as agriculture and trade are severely disrupted.

1747**A Slaving Partnership**

London-based Richard Oswald leads a group of fellow Scots to buy the abandoned Bunce Island slave factory in the Sierra Leone estuary, previously operated by the Royal African Company. Wolof captives gathered here are experienced in river

rice cultivation and thus sought by rice-plantation masters of South Carolina's Low Country.

One of these rice planters, Henry Laurens, becomes Oswald's agent in Charles Town, selling slaves from Bunce Island to other planters and keeping 10% commission.

Revolutionary War story: Laurens is an American diplomat in 1780 who is captured by a British ship enroute to Amsterdam, imprisoned in the Tower and eventually exchanged for Gen. Cornwallis, Dec. 31, 1781.

Laurens' son, John, is killed in a skirmish with the British near Beaufort, SC, August 1782 (among the final actions of the war in the colonies). An aide to Washington, and friend of Lafayette and Hamilton, he had unsuccessfully urged South Carolina to enlist slaves for the patriot effort and to ultimately free them, including 40 he was to inherit from his father.

In 1783, Laurens helps Benjamin Franklin and John Jay negotiate the Treaty of Paris (see below). Oswald, Laurens' old slave-trade partner, and liberal David Hartley are the principal British negotiators. Historians regard the treaty as highly favorable to the Americans.

In his will, Laurens manumits none of his 260 slaves, not even those his son might have freed. His ashes are buried next to his son on their largest plantation.

1748

Montesquieu's Inspiring Argument

Montesquieu publishes *De l'esprit des lois* ("On the Spirit of the Law") in Geneva. He draws such a clear argument for the end of slavery, as all humans are born equal, and so effectively mocks pro-slavery defenses that it will serve as a basic Enlightenment platform for abolitionists who arise over the next half century.

The book also argues for separation of the essential government powers: making laws (legislative), executing laws (executive) and resolving disputes under laws (judiciary). Montesquieu is later cited by James Madison and others as a basic inspiration in their redesign of the U.S. government via the Constitution.

1748

Saved Slaver Embraces God

John Newton, future author of "Amazing Grace," miraculously survives Atlantic storm on the disabled *Greyhound*, a frequent slaver bound for its homeport, Liverpool.

But the religious inspiration is not complete; Newton captains slave ships for several years before becoming a preacher and, eventually, embracing abolition.

1750

1750s

More Scots-Irish Arrive

Scots-Irish immigration to 13 colonies rises, mainly Protestant small farmers

and merchants leaving Ulster after periodic crop failures. More than 14,000 through 1759, 21,000 in 1760s and another 13,000 through 1775.

Most land at Philadelphia, and move west and south (down the Shenandoah Valley). They run into Indian resistance in Appalachian hills and valleys.

Also significant are Scottish Highland immigrants, most of whom land at Charles Town.

1750s

Iroquois, Palatines Coexist

German Palatine families, who came to New York's Mohawk Valley in 1712-1713, establish close relations with the Iroquois, in contrast with most white-Indian frontiers. Communities share skills (Palatine metal-working, mill construction; Iroquois corn, bean, squash agriculture). A number of intermarriages take place in Palatine churches; Palatines in turn learn and practice Iroquois condolence ceremony.

1750

Georgia Ends Slavery Ban

Georgia settlers overturn Oglethorpe-Parliament ban on slavery in the colony. The 1742 victory over Spanish Florida, success of Carolina plantations and lack of indentured servants from Britain are factors. So is the advocacy of evangelist preacher George Whitefield who says his Georgia orphanage cannot survive financially without slave labor on his plantation. Parliament consents.

Within six years, Georgia adopts South Carolina slave code; within 25 years, slave population reaches 18,000. South Carolina slave masters soon dominate the colony. Irrigation works developed to support rice and indigo; sugar is attempted later.

1750

Buffalo Exceed 60 Million

Buffalo population of North America in excess of 60 million (2019 estimate), ranging from Alaska to northern Mexico, from Rockies to Adirondacks, and even to tidewater Carolina. They will be all but wiped out less than 150 years later.

1750

Royal African Company Folds

Royal African Company dissolves after decades of crushing competition from Liverpool slave traders. Nine Gold Coast factories transferred to African Company of Merchants, including Cape Coast Castle and Fort Komenda.

1750

Dahomey King's Slave Profits

King Tegbesu of Dahomey (present-day Benin), who pays tribute to neighboring Oyo empire (Yoruba), significantly expands slave trade. He is said to gain £250,000 in one year selling thousands of captives to Europeans, mostly at the Whydah and Allada factories.

That compares to an estimated £300,000 annual profit by all Liverpool slave traders combined.

1751

Early Saint-Domingue Rebel

In Saint-Domingue, *marron* groups are led by charismatic François Mackandal in raids and poisoning campaigns against white planters and French soldiers in a prelude to revolution of 1791.

The number of marrons increases after a strong earthquake (estimated at M_l 6.6) levels two-year-old Port-au-Prince and disrupts plantations, Nov. 21.

Captured in 1758 (a female slave is tortured to reveal his location), Mackandal is burned at stake in Cap-Français. Witnesses claim his spirit survives flames. Mackandal is said to have been a vodou *houngan* (priest).

1752

Puritans Purchase Slaves

Forty-three Puritan families, originally from Dorchester, MA, arrive in Savannah with 586 African slaves obtained during their short intermediary stay in South Carolina.

1752

Mozambique, a New Colony

Mozambique becomes a colony of Portugal, which combines its old coastal settlements of the Isle of Mozambique and Sofala. European settlers are given large land grants (*prazos*). Gold is obtained from the Razvi empire (Shona people) on the Zimbabwe plateau. Gold then pays for spices in India. Slave trade expands under European and African traders on Isle of Mozambique.

1754

Fighting Over Appalachian Forts

Fighting breaks out between Britain and France (and their Indian allies) over forts on the western slope of the Appalachians. The initial skirmish between small detachments includes a young colonial officer, George Washington, May 28. At issue is control of the Ohio Valley.

This is the undeclared beginning of the French & Indian War, which escalates in 1755, with both sides sending fleets.

1754

Quaker Preacher Spreads Word

John Woolman, a traveling Quaker preacher from New Jersey who has persuaded many Quakers to free their slaves, publishes *Some Consideration on the Keeping of Negroes* which lays out, in detail, the moral (and abolitionist) case against slavery.

He also opposes paying taxes that support colonial militias fighting in the French & Indian War. He also opposes cruelty to animals.

From *Some Consideration...*: "To suppose it right, that an innocent man

shall at this day be excluded from the common rules of justice; be deprived of that liberty, which is the natural right of human creatures; and be a slave to others during life, on account of a sin committed by his immediate parents; or a sin committed by Ham, the son of Noah; is a supposition too gross to be admitted into the mind of any person who sincerely desires to be governed by solid principles.”

1754

Brazilian Mystic and Writer

Rosa Egipcíaca, a former slave and goldfield prostitute turned mystic, founds a convent for other former prostitutes in Rio de Janeiro. She develops a unique service that includes Cape Verdian *batuque* music and dancing. Most famously, she publishes the first Brazilian book written by an African woman, *The Sacred Theology of Love of God*. Only six of 290 pages survive.

1755

Acadians Expelled from Nova Scotia

British battle French in western Pennsylvania and Hudson River Valley, and begin expulsion of disgruntled French Acadians from Nova Scotia (which Britain won in 1713 Treaty of Utrecht). After small but bloody actions through 1764, nearly 7,000 Acadians will have been deported to the 13 colonies (where they create communities in port cities), another 900 to Britain and 11,300 to France (many of whom ultimately settle in Louisiana where “Acadian” becomes “Cajun”).

1755

A First Girls’ School

In Philadelphia, Anthony Benezet opens the first public school for girls in North America (a Catholic girls’ school opened in 1727 in New Orleans). A Quaker, he previously taught at the Friends’ English School and, in 1750, he and his wife, Joyce Marriott, a Quaker minister, began teaching black children at night in their home.

1755

Earthquake Flattens Lisbon

Great Lisbon Earthquake, fire and tsunami destroy much of the city, Nov. 1. Lagos and other Algarve coastal towns inundated. Tsunami washes over Cádiz, Madeira coast, Azores ports; rolls as far as Ireland, West Africa, Barbados and Brazil. Modern estimate of intensity is 8.7-9.0 R; of deaths, 40,000-50,000 in Portugal, Spain and Morocco. Lisbon’s royal Ribeira Palace is lost, including art works, a vast library and many archives of explorations.

Reconstruction is decisively led by Sebastião José de Carvalho e Melo, chief minister to King José I. Later, as the Marquês de Pombal, he will reform Portugal along Enlightenment lines, albeit with a heavy authoritarian hand, and direct end to slavery in Portugal and several colonies (but not in Brazil or Angola).

1756**French & Indian War Expands**

British finally declare war in French & Indian conflict, which now widens to Europe as the Seven Years' War, May 18.

1756**Busy Dutch Free Port**

Netherlands designates Sint Eustatius a "free port" in the Caribbean, open to ships of all nations with no duties or taxes imposed. By 1770 "Statia" is receiving more ships than Amsterdam or London. Its warehouses are packed with goods of every description and its Waterfort is used to hold slaves for purchase.

Merchants of French, Spanish and British colonies, particularly the Americans, rely upon Sint Eustatius to get around requirements that they trade with their home countries only.

1757**Surinam: Ndyuka Revolt Succeeds**

Black slave revolt on Dutch Surinam plantations results in large band of runaways to greatly augment existing rainforest *marron* band, which evolves into the Ndyuka community. Dutch choose to negotiate and recognize Ndyuka territorial sovereignty, Oct. 10, 1760; in return, Ndyuka agree to return any future runaways.

Ndyuka soon move to Tapanahony valley, develop trade route between Surinam and French Guiana, and maintain independence to this day.

1758**British Win over Indians**

British take French fortress at Louisbourg on Cape Breton Island, July, and Fort Duquesne (present-day Pittsburgh), Nov. 25, although they are defeated in bloodiest battle of North American war outside Fort Carillon (to be renamed Ticonderoga).

French lose confidence of many Indian allies, who blame French for smallpox epidemic and restrictions on looting. British appeal to Indians with a promise to prohibit white settlement west of Appalachians if they are victorious.

1758**Portuguese King Survives Attack**

José I is wounded in a pistol attack, quickly blamed on leading nobles, including José's mistress's Távora family, and her Jesuit confessor, Gabriel Malagrida.

All are enemies of the chief minister, De Carvalho, who leads the inquiry finding entire families guilty. The nobles, men and women, are publicly tortured and executed outside of Lisbon, Jan. 13, in the presence of the king. Malagrida is garroted and his body is burned in 1761.

Jesuits suppressed: De Carvalho, who has already dialed back Portugal's Inquisition, uses the incident to expel the Jesuits from Portugal, Sept. 3, 1759,

and from Brazil. This launches a movement among Catholic monarchs to ban the order in Europe and in their American colonies, culminating in Pope Clement XIV's 1773 order to "suppress and abolish" the Society of Jesus throughout the world.

1759

British Seize Quebec and Guadeloupe

British forces take Guadeloupe, May 2 (after being turned away from Martinique) and, under Gen. James Wolfe, win Quebec, Sept. 13. A full year later, Gen. Jeffrey Amherst takes Montreal, completing British seizure of Canadian and Acadian New France.

On Guadeloupe, more than 800 British die of disease after victory. They also bring 18,000 slaves to the island in just four years and open North American markets to Guadeloupe's resulting sugar boom.

1760

Tacky's Revolt on Jamaica

Tacky (once a Fante chief) launches first of a series of uprisings, taking over Fort Haldane at Port Maria, and the Frontier and Trinity plantations, April 7.

Rebels kill white overseers, commandeer arms and powder at Fort Haldane and see their numbers swell. But as responding militia and Maroons pursue rebels over two days, many return to plantations. A Maroon marksman kills Tacky, April 14. Some followers, trapped, commit suicide; others are captured.

Within weeks, Apongo (once a Dahomeyan chief) leads a similar uprising on island's west end. Again, British rely on Maroons (this time from Accompong and Trelawney Town) to contain revolt. But it takes weeks of fighting before militia capture Apongo, July 3. British snuff out a half dozen other plots inspired by Tacky. Apongo's surviving followers struggle into January 1761.

More than 60 whites and 400 black slaves die in the uprising. Apongo is starved to death. Others are burned alive. More than 500 slaves are shipped to Honduras and resold.

On Tacky: When he was a king, he said, his army captured Ashante, Nzema and Ahanta rivals and sold many to British. When enemies in turn captured and sold him, he ended up on Jamaica.

1760

New Mine is Richest Yet

The Valenciana mine opens in Guanajuato, 170 miles northwest of Mexico City, and quickly exceeds fading Potosí mine to become the Spanish empire's greatest silver producer over next 40 years. More than 3,000 Indians are forced to work the mine complex in early years, until Mexican independence when they are paid as freed men.

Refined silver bars sent to Mexico City to be minted into Spanish pesos. Bars and pesos are transported to Vera Cruz to be loaded on treasure fleets, through 1790.

1761**Slavery Abolished in Portugal**

Black slavery abolished within Portugal and Goa at urging of Sebastião José de Carvalho e Melo, who is directing the rebuilding of Lisbon and nation after earthquake. The black Mocambo neighborhood (centered on collapsed basilica of Santa Catarina) was devastated. It's not clear how former slaves merge into Portuguese society.

But African slavery continues on Cape Verde Islands and in Angola, and rapidly expands in Brazil where, De Carvalho is persuaded, it is essential for both gold mining and sugar plantations. He organizes two companies—the Grão-Pará and Maranhão, and the Pernambuco and Paraíba—to deliver more slaves to Brazil's northeast.

1762**Spain Invades Portugal**

Spain enters Seven Years' War on France's side, January, and invades a Portugal much-weakened by effort to rebuild Lisbon and sharply reduced flow of Brazilian gold, April 30. Goal is to break up Portugal's old alliance with Britain.

Peasants in north rise in furious opposition, depriving Spanish of food, attacking supplies and picking off stragglers. Spanish drive toward Porto, but are turned back by aroused guerrilla forces and retreat in disorder to Spain, losing more than 8,000 to ambushes, starvation and disease, June.

King José I and De Carvalho win British help via a force of 8,000 men arriving under William, count of Schaumburg-Lippe. He trains an equal number of Portuguese soldiers and turns back a second invasion, even with French forces joining the Spanish, at Vila Velha, October. The invaders lose 30,000, half through desertion; British Gen. John Burgoyne is deemed a hero.

A third invasion, targeting the Alentejo, is equally unsuccessful, November, forcing the Spanish and French to sign a battlefield truce, Dec. 1. The Portuguese call this utter defeat of Spain and France "the Fantastic War."

1762**Spain Loses Cuba**

Spain and France are frustrated in the Caribbean, too, as British take Martinique, St. Lucia, Grenada and St. Vincent from France, and then besiege Havana with large fleet and army (including American militia). Morro Castle, Havana and a trapped Spanish fleet surrender in August to Adm. George Pocock and the Earl of Albemarle.

Both sides offer freedom to slaves, with British freeing 90 who sided with them in invasion. Then, over their one-year occupation of Havana region, British import 4,000 slaves from Jamaica and other islands, and greatly expand sugar plantations.

In Brazil, Spanish lose Rio Negro and Mato Grasso territories to Portuguese as well.

1763**Spoils of War**

Treaty of Paris ends Seven Years' War, February. France cedes Quebec, and Grenada, Dominica and other Caribbean islands to Britain but gets back profitable sugar islands of Guadeloupe and Martinique.

Spain cedes Florida to Britain; Cuba and its new British-developed sugar plantations are returned to Spain, which also receives all of Louisiana, including New Orleans, from France as payment for its assistance, even in defeat.

Free blacks in St. Augustine, many who escaped from Carolinas slavery, leave for Cuba to avoid potential British enslavement.

Separately, France attempts to colonize Cayenne (French Guiana) with 12,000 settlers. But disease kills all but 2,000.

1763**Pontiac Leads Indian Coalition**

Pontiac, an Ottawa chief, leads multi-tribe Indian uprising against British frontier forts, beginning in May. Detroit and forts Pitt and Niagara hold out, but eight others fall, their garrisons and nearby settlements wiped out.

George III issues Proclamation of 1763 in October, fulfilling promise to ban colonial settlement in Indian lands west of Appalachians. Meanwhile, Pontiac forces suffer disease, starvation and desertion of some allied tribes.

In 1764, new British forces break Delaware and Shawnee, while western tribes and French decline to help, and Pontiac alliance cracks. He finally agrees to treaty in 1766.

1763**Berbice Rebellion Suppressed**

Slaves rise up on a half-starved sugar plantation in the Dutch colony of Berbice (present-day Guyana), Feb. 23, inspired in part by nearby 1757 Ndyuka revolt. Rebellion quickly spreads to neighboring plantations and 3,000 slaves control southern part of colony for almost a year (half of only 350 white settlers flee), while Dutch collect soldiers from Sint Eustatius and Britain's Barbados.

Arrival of 600 soldiers from Amsterdam Jan. 1, 1764 leads to betrayals among slave captains, suicide death of their chief, Cuffy (said to be Akan), and their defeat in April. Estimated 1,800 rebels die in fighting and subsequent executions.

1763**Rio, Brazil's New Capital**

With the gold of Minas Gerais being shipped out of Rio de Janeiro, and thousands of African slaves and Portuguese settlers arriving here each year, De Carvalho directs that Brazil's viceroy and capital move 750 miles from Salvador.

De Carvalho (made Marquês de Pombal in 1770) seeks to reorganize Brazilian economy along mercantilist lines. He worries that too much gold is being siphoned off between Minas Gerais and Rio, and that too much is flowing to Britain

in payment for industrial goods. He allows textile manufacturing in Brazil to reduce dependence on Britain.

1764

Spinning Jenny Boosts Production

Spinning jenny, invented by James Hargreaves, produces much more yarn for flying-shuttle looms, near Blackburn. Essential to development of the factory system for manufacturing cotton.

1764

Oyo, Ashanti Empires Clash

An Oyo army, including fighters from Dahomey and other Akan states, defeats the leading Akan people, the Ashanti.

1765

Stamp Tax Imposed

Parliament passes, March 22, Prime Minister George Grenville's tax on printed materials, from newspapers to playing cards to deeds, in all North American colonies to cover cost of 10,000 British troops mainly on the Appalachian frontier. They are assigned ostensibly to keep peace between Indians and white settlers.

Hugely unpopular among colonists who believe such a force is unnecessary and protest "taxation without representation." Demonstrations and riots in Boston, New York, Philadelphia and other towns unite residents of the 13 colonies.

Note: Colonists have been referring to themselves as "Americans" with much greater frequency since the French & Indian War. British leaders are also using the term.

A Stamp Act Congress, with delegates from nine colonies, meets in New York, October, and sends a "Declaration of Rights and Grievances" to the king and Parliament. Benjamin Franklin makes the colonies' case to Parliament, February 1766. William Pitt leads a Parliament majority to repeal the Stamp Act a few days later, and King George III assents, March 18.

1765-1793

Boni's Rebels Hold Out

A *marron* band in Surinam, led by Boni and separate from the Nyduka, carries on raiding and guerrilla war against Dutch plantations and soldiers for 28 years. When the latter finally discover Boni's fort in 1772, he escapes and forms a new band.

Boni is ultimately killed by the chief of the more numerous Ndyuka marrons, February 1793, fulfilling their 1760 agreement to work with Dutch.

John Gabriel Stedman, a Dutch officer, publishes an English narrative of the war against Boni in 1796. It is illustrated by William Blake (the hopeful *Europe Supported by Africa and America* shown here).

1766

Quaker Teacher's 'Warning'

Anthony Benezet, a 53-year-old Quaker who has taught young blacks in Germantown, PA, for 16 years, issues what becomes a particularly influential tract: *A Caution and Warning to Great-Britain, and Her Colonies, in A Short Representation of the Calamitous State of the Enslaved Negroes in the British Dominions*.

In Britain, Benezet's writings are cited by John Wesley, Granville Sharp and Thomas Clarkson as an essential influence on their thinking. He is regularly quoted and thanked by Olaudah Equiano, the freed slave also known as Gustavus Vassa, who will play a central role in Britain's abolition movement in the 1780s.

1767

Mason-Dixon Line Drawn

Survey completed to determine border between Pennsylvania to north, Maryland and Virginia to south, and Delaware to east. Resolves confusing proprietary grants made by Charles I to Cecil Calvert (Baron Baltimore) and by Charles II to William Penn. Later known as the Mason-Dixon Line, it will mark off free Pennsylvania from the three slave states.

Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon were English astronomers and surveyors.

1767

Jeffersons Inherit Land, Slaves

Thomas Jefferson, 25, inherits 5,000 acres and 52 slaves via father's will. Begins work on Monticello, 1769; marries Martha Wayles, 1772. They inherit two more plantations and another 135 slaves, including Sally Hemmings, daughter of Martha's father, John, by an enslaved woman, and thus a half-sister of Martha's.

At one point, Jefferson mortgages 150 slaves to finance Monticello; as many as 100 slaves take part in its construction. Mortgaging slaves, often to London and Amsterdam banks, is more common among planters than mortgaging land.

1767

Jesuits Expelled from Spain and Colonies

Charles III orders all Jesuits expelled from Spain and its colonies, April 2. The Jesuits dominate in New Spain. But within a month virtually all are in exile. Of the 678 priests, 75% are from *criollo* families already angered that they are barred from high colonial office under Bourbon Reforms.

Franciscan priests ("gray robes") replace the "black robe" Jesuits.

Many of Europe's Catholic monarchs are united in banning the Jesuits, beginning in Portugal in 1758 (see above) and continuing in France, 1764, and in Austria and Hungary, 1767. The peak comes with Pope Clement XIV's 1773 order to "suppress and abolish" the Society of Jesus worldwide. This is not reversed until 1814.

1768

Europe Wants More Sugar

European demand for sugar soars, with Britain consuming five times as much this year than in 1710, as people drink more coffee and tea, and eat more jams,

confections and processed foods; honey is the only alternative sweetener. Sugar surpasses grain as “most valuable commodity” in European trade, accounting for 20% of value of all European imports. A full 80% comes from French and British colonies in West Indies.

1768

First Steam Sugar Mill

First steam-powered sugar mill, developed by John Stewart, begins operating at the Greenwich Plantation in Jamaica’s St. Andrew Parish. In Saint-Domingue, a steam mill is installed by a Monseur Bineau. However, planters find early designs can’t handle great volumes of fibrous cane.

1769

Black Caribs Survive Assault

First Carib War breaks out on St. Vincent, where Black Caribs have long held the island’s north, resisting British who hold plantations in the south and seek to force Caribs to sell their land. Black Caribs, led by Joseph Chatoyer, turn back a full-scale assault. British sign peace agreement in 1773.

1769

Father Serra in California

Franciscan Father Junipero Serra founds Mission San Diego de Alcalá, July 16, the first of nine he establishes in Alte California, extending north to Mission San Francisco de Asís (aka Mission Dolores), 1776. The Franciscans seek, first, to convert Indians and, second, to establish Spanish control with accompanying soldiers (thus countering possible Russian interference from the north).

The missions apply strict discipline to new Indian “disciples” who are conscripted for labor and segregated from the unconverted. Old ways of life are disrupted. The Indian population, mainly hunters and gatherers, declines by thousands in the mission districts, mainly as a result of disease. More than 5,000 indigenous Americans die at Mission San Francisco alone by 1832.

1769

Wayuu Push Back

The Wayuu people of the large, arid Guajiro peninsula of New Granada, protest viceroyalty’s effort to force them to rebuild fortifications at Cartagena.

Known for at least six previous uprisings, they are skilled with horses and soon number 20,000 with firearms (from English and Dutch traders). They take back most of the Spanish settlements on the peninsula. Rebellion fades, but Wayuu are never subjugated.

1769-1776

Fula Jihad on Senegal

Fula people of Futa Toro, inspired by fellow Muslims of Futa Djallon, establish their own imamate, through jihad, along the central Senegal river.

1770**Boston Massacre: 5 Die**

Harassed British soldiers fire into a Boston street mob, killing five, March 5. "Boston Massacre" dead include Crispus Attucks, described as a sailor in his 40s born in Framingham to a Natick Indian mother and a black slave father. He is also usually described as a free man, although some sources claim him to be an escaped slave.

1770**Applause for Enslaved Boston Poet**

"On the Death of the Rev. Mr. George Whitefield" is published in newspapers in Boston, New Haven and Hartford, bringing fame to its author, Phillis Wheatley, a 17-year-old house slave to the family of Boston merchant John Wheatley. She was brought to Boston at age 8 aboard a slaver named *Phillis*. Wheatley's wife and older children taught her English, introduced her to many books and encouraged her writing.

In 1773, a book of her poems is published in London, the first book published anywhere by an African-American. Statesmen and writers from Washington to King George III to Voltaire praise her work. The Wheatleys free her shortly afterward. She continues to write, but finds no support in Boston for books. She marries a free black grocer who is imprisoned for debt in 1784. She dies in relative obscurity, in December of the same year. Their infant son dies soon thereafter.

1770**Philadelphia: Schools for Blacks**

Quaker Anthony Benezet founds the Negro School in Philadelphia. Previously he and his wife taught young blacks in their home. Three more schools for blacks open in the city before the Revolution breaks out.

1770**Saint-Domingue: Earthquake, Famine, Escape**

Major earthquake (estimated at M_I 7.5) destroys Port-au-Prince and liquifies much of the large Cul-de-Sac plain to the east, June 3. A tsunami also floods much of the plain. Many cane fields and sugar mills are destroyed, particularly in the south. Although a warning roar keeps initial deaths down to 250, more than 15,000 slaves die in the famine that follows. Another 10,000, again mostly slaves, succumb to anthrax from eating tainted meat brought in to feed them.

Sugar shortage: As Saint-Domingue was producing much of Europe's sugar and most of its coffee, earthquake damage pushes prices up. Recovery takes years.

Prelude to revolution: Thousands of surviving slaves are able to escape disrupted plantations to *marron* communities in hills, several of which date back to a 1751 earthquake. They will be the vanguard of the 1791 uprising that leads to eventual independence.

Tectonics: The North American plate pushes on the Caribbean plate

along the Enriquillo and Septentrional fault zones, generating many significant earthquakes on Hispaniola. The Port-au-Prince quake of Jan. 12, 2010 kills as many as 300,000 people.

1771

Minister Attacks Slavery

Samuel Hopkins (a one-time slaveholder) launches a crusade against slavery from his Congregational church in Newport, RI. He and other "New Divinity" ministers are the first non-Quaker religious leaders to denounce slavery in the 13 colonies.

Three years later, they help persuade both Rhode Island and Connecticut to prohibit the import of slaves.

1771

Liverpool Dominates Slave Trade

Total of 29,250 slaves transported in 107 Liverpool ships, usually following Triangular Trade routes to Africa and the Americas; 8,136 in 58 London ships; 8,810 in 23 Bristol ships, indicating wide range of ship capacities.

1771

Revolution: Arkwright's Cotton Mill

Richard Arkwright, inventor of water frame, opens water-driven cotton mill on River Derwent in Cromford, Derbyshire. This is among first factories built to house machinery rather than just gangs of workers, among first to employ and directly manage workers (rather than contract them) and among first to run by a clock.

When Arkwright installs his carding machine as first step in preparing cotton fiber, it is the first factory to move from raw material to finished product in a continuous series of operations.

1772

Judge Rules England is Free

In *Somerset vs. Stewart*, Lord Mansfield, England's chief justice, rules that slavery has no legal protection except where common law or legislative statute explicitly sanctions it... yes in Virginia, no in England; James Somerset is free and cannot be compelled to return to slavery, June 22. Granville Sharp selects Francis Hardgrave and others to argue for Somerset. Decision distresses many American slave masters, spurring talk of independence.

While Britain has no institutional slavery at least since the 12th century (when it was superseded by Norman serfdom), purchased slaves have been brought in to be servants over many decades. Mansfield estimates total black people in England at 15,000, including free blacks; status of servants is not immediately changed.

The ruling serves to contrast a no-slavery Britain with its various colonies built around large enslaved populations.

1772

Quaker Spreads Word to Britain

John Woolman, the Quaker preacher who has convinced many fellow Friends to free their slaves, and many Friends Meetings in the 13 colonies to oppose slavery, journeys from Philadelphia to England to persuade England's Friends to call for abolition in their annual Epistle. He dies of smallpox in York, October, age 51.

The Journal of John Woolman is published in 1774 by a Quaker printer in Philadelphia. In it, Woolman vividly describes how his personal experience with slavery led to his outspoken opposition.

1772

Newton's 'Amazing Grace'

John Newton, ex-slave ship captain, writes "Amazing Grace" for New Year's Day (1773) service at the church of St. Peter and St. Paul in Olney, England, where he is a curate.

1773

Philadelphia Leader Attacks Slavery

Benjamin Rush, Philadelphia physician and community leader, publishes "An Address to the Inhabitants of the British Settlements in America, upon Slave-Keeping" attacking slave trade and slavery in general. Three years later, he signs Declaration of Independence.

1773

Slave Master Dies Wealthiest

Peter Manigault, a prominent South Carolina plantation and slave master, attorney and legislator, dies as the wealthiest man in British North America, Nov. 12. His surviving father, Gabriel, is a separately wealthy planter and slaveholder who will support the American side in the Revolution.

Peter's wife, Elizabeth, who dies earlier the same year, is the daughter of Joseph Wragg, a leading Charles Town slave trader of the early 18th century. Manigault's net worth, including value of hundreds of slaves, estimated at £33,000, a surprisingly paltry \$4-\$5 million in 2023 dollars.

1773

'Tea Party' Provocation

Sons of Liberty dump entire shipment of East India Company tea into Boston Harbor to protest Parliament's new tea taxes, Dec. 16. Days later, Philadelphia protestors send a tea ship back to England without unloading.

Parliament passes Intolerable Acts in May 1774 to punish Massachusetts by closing the port of Boston until dumped tea is paid for; suspending Massachusetts' charter, limiting town meetings to one yearly, giving the governor the power to block trials of royal officials in the colony, and requiring the colony to quarter British troops.

Anger spreads through the colonies, connected by Committees of Correspondence.

1773-1775**Cape Verde: Deadly Famine**

More than 20,000 die on Cape Verde Islands after several years of drought. The islands suffer periodically from lack of rain, and resulting famine and disease.

Islanders who ship out on visiting New England whalers lead small waves of emigrants to New England in 19th century.

1774**Quebec Act Stirs Pot**

Parliament's restructuring of Quebec government (June) further angers 13 colonies by assigning vast lands between Ohio and Mississippi rivers to Quebec. Long-standing claims on that land by Massachusetts, New York, Virginia and the Carolinas are important to potential speculators, including George Washington, Richard Henry Lee, and Robert and Gouverneur Morris.

The Quebec Act comes on top of the Proclamation Act of 1763 by which George III sought to protect Indian lands west of the Appalachians from white incursion (see above).

Quebec Act also protects Catholic Church, and restores previous French law for civil and land-tenure matters.

1774**Protest in Virginia**

Fairfax County freeholders adopt Fairfax Resolves, July 18, "to define our Constitutional Rights" in the words of George Washington. He is elected a special delegate to a colony-wide meeting, the Virginia Convention.

The protest follows dissolution of the House of Burgesses by Lord Dunmore, the royal governor, who is angered by the burgesses' support of Massachusetts, targeted by Parliament's Intolerable Acts as punishment for the Boston Tea Party.

The Resolves list American complaints re taxation, military matters and colonial trade; and call for a congress of all 13 colonies.

Importantly, they also condemn the practice of importing slaves as "a wicked, cruel and unnatural trade" and urge its termination.

1774**Kentucky: Indians Give Way**

Lord Dunmore, governor of Virginia, leads militia against Shawnee and Mingo people opposed to white settlers moving into their hunting lands south of the Ohio river (present-day West Virginia and Kentucky).

More militia than Indians die in Point Pleasant battle, Oct. 10, but the latter retreat across the river and eventually are forced to cede lands to Virginia.

The following year, Daniel Boone helps widen a path through the Cumberland Gap, which becomes part of the Wilderness Road, the main throughfare between Virginia and Kentucky.

As the Revolutionary War breaks out, Shawnee and Cherokee side with British and Loyalists against the American settlers.

1774**First Continental Congress**

Only Georgia fails to send delegates to the First Continental Congress, meeting in Philadelphia's Carpenters Hall, Sept. 5-Oct. 26.

Delegates, including George Washington, John Jay, Patrick Henry, Edward Rutledge vote to support Massachusetts if it is attacked and to boycott British goods. Toward the latter end, the Congress vows to suspend slave imports on all ships, American, British or otherwise flagged.

Assemblies of each colony, except New York, approve the congress's actions over the following months, most of them including the slave-trade ban. The rush to conflict accelerates.

Americans in Revolt (to 1783)**1775****1775****First Abolitionist Society**

Society for Relief of Free Negroes Unlawfully Held in Bondage established in Philadelphia by Quakers, led by Anthony Benezet; Thomas Paine is a supporter, April 14. This first abolitionist group in America campaigns for New World's first emancipation law (1780, below) and becomes the Pennsylvania Abolition Society, led by Benjamin Franklin and Dr. Benjamin Rush, after Benezet's 1784 death.

1775**Shots Heard 'Round the World**

American Revolution breaks out with skirmishes at Lexington and Concord, April 19. British assault is decimated at Bunker Hill, June 17. George Washington, commissioned by Second Continental Congress in Philadelphia, takes command of American forces surrounding British forces in Boston, July 3.

1775**Hanged as Suspected Spy**

Thomas Jeremiah, a free and prosperous black harbor pilot, is hanged in Charles Town, SC, on suspicion that he plans to aid a possible British attack, Aug. 18. An attack comes, but 10 months later.

1775**Blacks Sought to Fight Rebels**

In Virginia, Lord Dunmore proclaims martial law and offers freedom to all "indentured servants, Negroes or others" willing to desert rebelling masters to fight for the crown, Nov. 7. Furious members of Virginia Convention respond by promising death "without benefit of clergy" to any slave acting on Dunmore's offer.

Between 800 and 2,000 slaves—of both Patriot and Loyalist masters—

enlist with Dunmore. This Ethiopian Regiment fights one battle north of Norfolk, a British loss, before being riddled by smallpox. After much of Norfolk burns down in another fight with rebels, Jan. 1, 1776, Dunmore is forced to depart by ship for New York Harbor, taking 300 ex-slaves with him.

Patrick Henry is elected governor by the patriot Virginia Convention.

1775

Slavery Ends on Madeira

Slavery abolished on Madeira by order of Marquês de Pombal, 14 years after the same minister ended it in Portugal and Goa.

Madeira is where Portuguese first developed the slave-worked sugar plantation model in the 15th century. But little sugar has been produced for more than a century (as necessary forest firewood is long gone). Thus, most slaves were long ago sold to the Americas. For more than a century, Portuguese tenant farmers have worked vineyards to produce Madeira wine, popular in both Europe and the American colonies.

Brazil: Despite ordering many reforms in colonial administration, Pombal continues to support slavery in Angola and Brazil, deeming it vital in the latter to both sugar plantations and gold mining. Slavery also continues on São Tomé and the Cape Verde Islands.

Language: Pombal also decrees that Portuguese replace Tupí *lingua gerais* (general languages) that dominated Brazil for 250 years before the current gold-inspired mass immigration from Portugal.

1775

Watt's Better Steam Engine

In England, James Watt patents an improved steam engine, which first powers mine pumps but is soon applied to factories, including early cotton mills.

1776

First State Constitution

New Hampshire's provincial congress writes a constitution for independent government, first for any colony, Jan. 5 in Exeter, to replace the authority of the crown and departed royal governor.

South Carolina follows in March; Virginia in June (with a Bill of Rights) and New Jersey in July, just before the Declaration of Independence is signed in Philadelphia. Pennsylvania and Maryland act before year's end.

These constitutions develop key features—separation of powers, election of delegates, dual houses, checks on the executive—that will be incorporated into the U.S. Constitution 11 years hence. Not surprisingly, many authors of the latter, including John Adams, James Madison, John Jay and Robert Livingston, first built state constitutions as the Revolution got underway.

1776

Common Sense, Black Soldiers

Thomas Paine, who arrived from England only 14 months before, lays out the

case for American independence in the 47 pages of *Common Sense*, January; 100,000 copies distributed in a few months. Title is suggested by his Philadelphia mentor, Dr. Benjamin Rush.

Paine refers to "America" much more often than to individual colonies, as in "The cause of America is in a great measure the cause of all mankind."

Meanwhile, Washington reverses November ban on enlistment of blacks into Continental army, and now invites free blacks to join.

Several states will offer freedom to enslaved blacks who fight with patriots, countering Lord Dunmore's similar offer to those who join British.

Best estimate: 15,000-20,000 men of African descent will support British and Loyalists during the war; 5,000 to 8,000 will join Continental army and thousands more will join state militias.

1776

British Forced to Leave Boston

Americans drag heavy guns from Fort Ticonderoga (at south end of Lake Champlain, captured by Ethan Allen the previous May) across Massachusetts to Dorchester Heights overlooking British forces in Boston. The latter evacuate the city, March 17, never to return.

1776

British Stopped at Charles Town

British attempt with 20 ships and 2,900 men to take Charles Town, SC. But fleet is turned back by stubborn American fire from Fort Sullivan, June 28.

British sought to use port to link up with Loyalists. Their defeat helps convince South Carolina delegation at Second Continental Congress to support Declaration of Independence.

Meanwhile, a much larger British fleet enters New York Harbor and lands thousands of troops on Staten Island, July 2. They prepare for major attack on Brooklyn and New York.

1776

Anti-Slavery Tract to Congress

"A Dialogue Concerning the Slavery of the Africans" is delivered to the Continental Congress in Philadelphia to urge not only an end to the slave trade, but the emancipation of all slaves. The author is Samuel Hopkins, the Newport Congregational minister who led efforts to ban the slave trade in Rhode Island and Connecticut.

1776

'All Men Are Created Equal...'

Declaration of Independence signed and issued in Philadelphia, July 4. Second paragraph: "We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness." The words are by Thomas Jefferson, a Virginia master of hundreds of slaves.

In his first draft, Jefferson charges George III with profiting from the slave trade, opposing colonists' attempts to end it and inciting slaves to win their freedom by murdering their rebellious white masters.

This paragraph is dropped in the final version issued by the Continental Congress, except for the complaint that the king has "excited domestic insurrections amongst us..." with no allusion to slaves.

Declaring independence are "the United States of America;" they are colonies no more. Washington orders Declaration read to his troops gathered at the Common in New York (today's City Hall Park) as British continue landing troops on Staten Island.

1776

Quakers Demand Slaves' Freedom

The Societies of Friends in England and in Pennsylvania require their members to free their slaves or face expulsion.

1776

Defeat in New York

In Lower New York Bay, British regiments are ferried from Staten Island to Gravesend Bay, Aug. 22. Over the next several days they outflank Washington's forces in the Battle of Long Island, which will be the greatest on the continent before the Civil War. After suffering 300 killed (most of them Marylanders in a desperate rearguard action) and more than 1,000 captured, Americans are forced to retreat across East river to New York on night of Aug. 30. Adm. Richard Howe seems to let them, delaying British crossing to Manhattan until Sept. 15, perhaps to support an attempt to negotiate end to war. Toward that end, he meets with American negotiators Benjamin Franklin, John Adams and Edward Rutledge on Staten Island, Sept. 11. No agreement results.

Washington continues to retreat, fighting rear-guard actions at Harlem Heights, Sept. 16; Pell's Point, Oct. 18; and White Plains, Oct. 28.

On Sept. 20, fire sweeps through much of New York, destroying 493 buildings. Each side blames the other, but Washington is not sorry it happened.

Particularly stinging for Americans is the loss of Fort Mifflin, at high point of northern Manhattan, with 2,800 defenders taken prisoner, Nov. 16.

British, joined by many Tories, make New York their main headquarters until the end of the war, departing on Evacuation Day, Nov. 25, 1783.

1776

Cherokee Battle American Rebels

Cherokee-colonial wars, with off-and-on raids and skirmishes along the Carolina-North Georgia frontier. Cherokee ally with Muscogee (Creek) and Shawnee groups, and with British and Loyalists against rebelling colonists. Fighting continues into 1794, long after British depart.

1776

U.S. Ship Wins Salute

Andrew Doria, a 14-gun brig flying the new "Grand Union" flag of the rebelling colonies, sails into Sint Eustatius anchorage to buy munitions. Dutch fire welcoming salute from Fort Oranje, Nov. 16, the first international acknowledgement of American independence.

British protest bitterly, but Americans will receive as much as half their overseas military supplies during the Revolution via the tiny free-port island. In exchange, the Americans deliver tobacco, rum and indigo.

1776

Slavery's Economic Superiority? None.

In *The Wealth of Nations*, published March 9, Adam Smith argues that slavery does not produce economic benefits equal to that of free workingmen. Which undermines British merchants' assumption that colonial slavery is essential to generating cheap commodities for the home country.

1776

Lonely Voice in Parliament

David Hartley, representing Hull, is the first member to call upon Britain's Parliament to condemn slave trade as "contrary to the laws of God and man." He finds few allies.

1777

Washington Orders Vaccinations

With smallpox moving through Philadelphia and other cities, Washington orders variolation inoculation, Feb. 6, of entire Continental army at Morristown, NJ, and of all new formations coming north through Philadelphia.

Variolation requires that scrapings from pustules of an infected person be transferred into open scratches on recipients.

Smallpox comes and goes throughout the war, killing perhaps 130,000 people altogether, with Indians and slaves particularly devastated, British forces much less so. Washington himself bears facial scars of smallpox, contracted when visiting Barbados as a teenager.

1777

British Surrender at Saratoga

Americans stop British army descending into New York from Quebec at Battles of Bennington and Saratoga. British Gen. Burgoyne surrenders his army Oct. 17 to Gen. Horatio Gates in this major American victory. Gen. Benedict Arnold's actions are also important to American success.

Constitution of newly independent (self-proclaimed) Republic of Vermont bans adult slavery, July 8.

1777

Morocco Recognizes New Nation

Morocco's Sultan Muhammad III includes U.S. on a list of nations to which

Moroccan ports are open. Morocco is thus the first country to publicly recognize independent U.S.

1777

Pombal Dismissed

Maria I ascends Portuguese throne, Feb. 24, on death of her father, José I, and immediately dismisses the Marquês de Pombal who has ruled in José's name for almost three decades.

Maria will reverse various Pombalian policies, including manufacture of textiles and other products in Brazil, 1785. Administrators fear Brazil, now with a population equal to perhaps 66% of Portugal's estimated 2.8 million, could compete economically with the home country, or even move toward independence.

Exception: Production of coarse fabric for clothing slaves (and other workers) is specifically allowed to continue in Brazil.

1778

Virginia Ends Slave Trade

Virginia General Assembly votes to ban importation of slaves by sea or land, Oct. 27. All 13 colonies adopt similar resolutions during the war to cut off this source of revenue for British merchants. American slavers turn to privateer attacks on British ships.

1778

Slavery Illegal in Scotland

Slavery declared illegal by a 10-4 vote of Scottish high court, which is separate from English courts, Jan. 15. All slaves in Scotland, perhaps 80, are now free, including Joseph Knight, the complainant who was bought on Jamaica by a wealthy sugar plantation owner, John Wedderburn, and eventually taken to the master's home in Scotland.

Arguing in Knight's favor is Lord Advocate Henry Dundas who will go on to play contrary roles in the defense and abolition of slavery.

Exception: Scottish coal-mine owners are allowed to keep miners and salters (almost entirely white Scots) in permanent bondage (resulting from debt or a declaration of "vagabondage" under a 1606 act). Their final liberation comes only in 1799.

Note: Scots continue to hold 30% of all Jamaica plantations and slaves.

1778

France, Spain Ally with U.S.

France, encouraged by American success at Saratoga and assured by Benjamin Franklin, recognizes independent U.S. and signs Treaty of Alliance, Feb. 6. Britain declares war on France. Spain joins conflict as an ally of France, June 1779. Conflict widens to West Indies and Europe.

Spain's forces will clear Mississippi of British and take their bases at Mobile Bay, 1780, and Pensacola, 1781.

Additional goals: France hopes to take sugar-rich Jamaica from British; Spain seeks to win back Gibraltar.

1779

British Commander Offers Freedom

British Gen. Henry Clinton issues Philipsburg Proclamation, offering freedom to any Negro who deserts his rebel master and the chance to follow any occupation "he shall think proper," June 30 at his headquarters in the Philipsburg Manor House north of Tarrytown, NY.

Extends the Dunmore Proclamation of 1775 and does not require slaves to fight for the crown. Thousands of slaves do run for British lines, including 5,000 in Georgia alone.

1779

Iroquois Power Broken

American forces under Gen. John Sullivan destroy more than 40 Iroquois villages and their winter stores to drive Mohawk, Cayuga, Onondaga and Seneca people from homelands in central and western New York, September.

Scorched-earth attack is in retaliation for 1778 Loyalist and Indian attacks on Pennsylvania's Wyoming Valley (300 of 375 Americans killed), and New York's Germann Flatts and Cherry Valley (48 killed and 80 taken captive).

Thayendanegea (John Brant) is a Mohawk leader.

More than 5,000 Iroquois flee to British-held Fort Niagara; many more succumb to famine and exposure.

Few Iroquois return after the war, including few Oneida and Tuscarora even though they largely sided with Americans. Western New York and northwest Pennsylvania are "secured" by U.S. in Treaty of Fort Stanwix, October 1784. White settlers begin to move in, largely from New England.

1779

Spinning Mule Unveiled

In England, Samuel Crompton invents spinning mule, a hybrid of the spinning jenny and the water frame, further accelerating demand for cotton.

1780

British Besiege Charles Town

Stalemated in New York and New Jersey, British turn to a Southern strategy, sending 12,000 men and a substantial fleet to take Charles Town after a six-week siege, May 12. (They have held Savannah since Dec. 29, 1778.) British count 5,266 prisoners, the largest American surrender of the war. Many later escape, others suffer on prison ships in Charles Town Harbor. An accidental magazine explosion in the city kills 200 from both sides.

British Gen. Clinton's success is undermined, however, by lack of a Loyalist upswelling in the Carolinas. Americans put together hit-and-run militia opposition led by Francis Marion, Andrew Pickens and Thomas Sumter. Gen. Nathanael Greene arrives with Continental troops, December.

1780**Philadelphia: First 'Gradual' Emancipation**

Pennsylvania Assembly bans slave importation and adopts policy of gradual abolition, March 1, freeing children of all slaves born after Nov. 1, although they are to continue as indentured servants until their 28th birthday.

Supporters, led by Quaker Anthony Benezet and the 5-year-old Pennsylvania Abolition Society, note hypocrisy of Americans "who condemned the tyranny of England's colonial policies... while holding one-fifth of the colonial population in chains."

Legislation passes by a 34-21 vote, 108 years after the Germantown Quakers issued their first protest against enslavement. Older slaves are not freed by law, and can still be bought and sold within the state, although many masters free individuals and families, often in wills. Pennsylvania slaves, estimated at 6,000 in 1750 (about 5% of total population), are down to 795 by 1810.

New ground: It is the first significant emancipation law voted by an elected body in recorded world history.

Note: Slaves held by members of the Continental Congress, which meets in Philadelphia, are specifically exempted from law's protections.

1780**Escapees Throng New York**

Black people number 10,000 in British-held New York City. Many are escaped slaves responding to British promise of freedom to all who leave rebel masters; they include two of Washington's slaves. At war's end, 3,000 blacks will join Loyalists abandoning New York for Nova Scotia.

1780**Marrons in Louisiana**

Escaped slaves, led by Jean Saint Malo, set up a *marron* community in Lake Borgne swamps well east of New Orleans (now under Spanish rule). Militia captures 60 of them in 1783; Saint Malo is charged with murder and hanged in the plaza of St. Louis Cathedral.

1780**Deadliest Hurricane Decimates Fleets**

Great Hurricane of 1780 sweeps through Lesser Antilles and over Puerto Rico and Hispaniola, killing an estimated 22,000, the deadliest Atlantic hurricane on record. On Barbados, all houses and most trees are leveled, cannons are tossed 100 feet in air and 4,500 die. It is the second of three October hurricanes which together sink or disable 15 Royal Navy warships, drowning most of their crews. Opposing French lose several troop transports off Martinique and many soldiers, but only one frigate.

1780**Britain Extends War to Dutch**

Britain declares war on the Netherlands, Dec. 20, provoked by the central role

the Dutch free-port of Sint Eustasius is playing in supplying the American rebels, and by Dutch willingness to trade with France. The Netherlands will follow France in recognizing American independence and John Adams will negotiate a major loan from Amsterdam merchants.

1780

Slave-Trade Supporters Unite

The London Society of West India Planters and Merchants is formed to resist the growing movement to abolish the slave trade. It includes a number of Parliament members who are absentee plantation owners, slave-ship owners, sugar merchants or colonial agents. London merchant Beeston Long and his family are leaders well into the 19th century.

1780

Peru: Vast Indian Rebellion

Major Indian uprisings on the high-Andes plateau of Peru are led by Túpac Amaru II, a Quechua cacique, and Túpac Katari, an Aymara trader (they take *noms de guerre* from earlier Inca leaders). They oppose forced work in Potosí mines and Bourbon Reform taxes levied to defend New Spain against the British.

Followers of each man swarm to 40,000-plus by December. Each is also joined by his wife and other female leaders.

Túpac Amaru II and wife Micaela Bastidas attack Cuzco, to the north, in following March, but are turned back with heavy loss. Spanish viceroy's mostly Indian loyalist army surrounds rebels and captures Amaru II. His wife and son are executed before he is quartered, May 18.

Meanwhile, Túpac Katari besieges La Paz (capital of present-day Bolivia), south of Lake Titicaca. Siege continues for 109 days, led by his partner, Bartolina Sisa, before Spanish forces and Indian allies break through, Oct. 17. Katari and Sisa are betrayed and captured. She is hanged, he is drawn and quartered, November.

Followers, including many women, continue guerrilla war through May 1782, when viceroys of Peru and Rio de la Plata offer general pardon.

Deaths of as many as 100,000 Quechua and Aymara, and another 10,000-plus *mestizos* and *criollos* testify to brutality of conflict on both sides. Vestiges of Inca culture and office of cacique are suppressed afterward. Seen as a prelude to successful revolutions of early 19th century.

1781

State Pays for Black Soldiers

New York State offers to pay masters to assign slaves to militia, with a further promise that they will be freed at war's end. A quarter of the militia in White Plains that joins Washington's march to Yorktown is black.

1781

'Statia' Free Port Closed

Large invasion force under Adm. George Rodney and Gen. John Vaughn compels

Dutch surrender at Sint Eustasius, February. British capture 130 merchant ships in harbor and much loot in the huge warehouses, with Rodney focusing particular anger on Jewish merchants, deporting many to St. Kitts.

Sint Eustatius—"a nest of Villains" in Rodney's words—is thus denied to Americans as a key port of trade for foreign war material. But Rodney spends months assessing island's loot, and is later accused of missing opportunities to intercept French warships that ultimately help the Americans at Yorktown.

In November, a French force lands quietly and surprises a small British garrison left by Rodney. Most of the deported merchants are back on the island after the Dutch resume control in 1784.

1781

Creole Uprising in New Granada

Revolt of the Comuneros erupts in Socorro, New Granada (now Columbia). Popular uprising protests new taxes on tobacco and brandy (a Bourbon reform intended to pay for New Spain's defenses against the British). More than 10,000 rebels, led by Juan Francisco Berbero, a *criollo*, march toward Bogotá, defeat an opposing force and then negotiate acceptance of demands with archbishop.

This is a white protest. In this case, Creoles are people of full European descent, not of mixed-race parentage, who were born in America.

Back in Bogotá, the archbishop nullifies the agreement as the viceroyalty awaits reinforcements and then forces new taxes on cities. Berbero survives, but other leaders are run down, and executed or imprisoned for life.

1781

French Fleet's Critical Victory

A French fleet under Adm. François, Comte de Grasse sails from Cap-Français in Saint-Domingue to defeat a British fleet led by Adm. Thomas Graves sailing from New York. No ships are sunk in the Battle of the Capes, Sept. 5-9, but the British fleet is severely banged up, leaving French ships in command of Chesapeake Bay.

Note: This critical victory is credited in part to early dispatch of French ships north to avoid a replay of hurricane damage suffered in October 1780. British kept more of their ships (many still under repair from storms) in the Caribbean, including Rodney's fleet at Sint Eustasius, where it had been busy into the summer rounding up merchant prizes and loot.

1781

Surrender at Yorktown

Cornwallis is unable to escape Yorktown thanks to the defeat of Graves' British fleet. Also, many of his troops are incapacitated by malaria and demoralized by American and French bombardment. The Americans (Col. Alexander Hamilton leading their assault) and French take two interior redoubts, Oct. 14.

Cornwallis surrenders his army to Washington and Rochambeau, Oct. 19. Five days later, British Adm. Graves appears with a relief fleet carrying 7,000 men. Too late, they sail back to New York.

Independence Won: This gives the Americans ultimate victory in their

Revolution, confirmed by Parliament in a vote of no confidence in the prosecution of the war by Lord North. He resigns, March 20, 1782. Treaty of Paris follows in September 1783.

Slave Roundup: After surrender, Washington orders detention of all fugitive slaves who had joined the British; they are returned to masters. One of these runaways, James Armistead, is actually a spy for Lafayette. He is not freed under Virginia's 1783 emancipation of soldiers (see below), which doesn't apply to spies, but wins liberty in 1787 with a supporting petition from Lafayette to the Virginia assembly.

1781

Massachusetts Courts Rule for Freedom

In separate cases, Massachusetts courts rule in favor of slaves Elizabeth Freeman and Quok Walker who sue for their freedom, citing the new (1780) state constitution's declaration that "all men are born free and equal."

This effectively ends slavery in Massachusetts, with some masters formally manumitting and others attempting to hold slaves as indentured servants. In 1790, first U.S. census reports no slaves remain in the state.

1781

The Zong Incident

Officers of Liverpool slaver *Zong* order more than 130 captives thrown overboard over several days after ship overshoots Jamaica, struggles to recover and runs low on water, beginning Nov. 29. Ship was way overloaded with 442 slaves when it departed Accra with stop at São Tomé; only 208 survive. In 1783 trials in London, owners argue they are due insurance on each lost slave. Lord Mansfield, chief justice, rules for insurers.

Incident becomes rallying story for British abolition movement, and subject of 1839 Turner painting "The Slave Ship."

1782

Lenape Massacre in Ohio

Nearly 100 Lenape, followers of pacifist Moravian Church, executed by frontier Pennsylvania militia who also burn their village of Gnadenhutten (present-day Ohio), March 8. This is retaliation for various raids into Pennsylvania, of which these Lenape, who are unarmed, deny any knowledge.

Dead include 29 women and 39 children; widespread rape and plundering also reported. Eighteen of militia refuse to participate in massacre.

1782

France, Spain Frustrated

France's main object in allying with Americans against Britain—to take sugar-rich Jamaica and smaller British-held Caribbean islands—is thwarted by Adm. De Grasse's defeat in the huge Battle of the Saints, April 9-12, off Dominica. British fleet under Adm. Rodney captures four major French vessels, inflicts thousands of casualties and takes De Grasse prisoner.

Gibraltar: Spain, ally of France and the Americans, also fails in its central objective—to take back Gibraltar—when a combined French-Spanish force of 60,000, 49 ships and 10 “floating batteries” is turned away with heavy loss in the largest single battle of the war, Sept. 13.

For Britain, these victories go a long way in taking the sting out of their defeat at Yorktown, and convince the French and Spanish to agree to peace negotiations.

1782

Virginia: Thousands Freed

General Assembly allows slaveholders to manumit slaves at will, without specific approval of the assembly, May. Former masters must provide support for slaves over and under certain ages.

Several thousand slaves are indeed freed by hundreds of masters swept up in post-Yorktown euphoria and inspired by ideals of liberty. Free black populations of Richmond, Petersburg and Alexandria more than double over 10 years, and establish true communities.

And in October 1783, the assembly guarantees emancipation of all Virginia slaves who enlisted in the Continental Army or the militia, many sent by masters. There’s no estimate of how many benefit.

This is in addition to perhaps 3,000 Virginia slaves who escaped and fought for the British during the war in exchange for freedom, most of whom end up in Nova Scotia.

Of the Founding Fathers from Virginia, only Washington will direct manumission of his slaves, upon his death in 1799. Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, Henry and others decline to manumit their slaves even in their wills.

1782

British Depart Charles Town

British evacuate Charles Town, Dec. 14, taking 4,200 Loyalists and 5,000 people of African descent, most of them still in bondage to Loyalists. But hundreds who won freedom, by escaping American-rebel masters for British lines, will eventually settle in Nova Scotia, Quebec, the Caribbean or Sierra Leone.

1783

American Soldiers ‘Mutiny’

As many as 400 soldiers mob the Pennsylvania State House demanding back pay from the Continental Congress and blocking departure of delegates, June 20.

They relent when Alexander Hamilton promises that Congress will address their complaints in the afternoon. Instead, the delegates implore the Pennsylvania executive council to assign the state militia to defend Congress, which is denied.

The delegates then leave Philadelphia for Princeton, NJ, while Washington dispatches 1,500 troops to suppress the protest, June 24. Congress moves the capital again to Annapolis, then Trenton and then New York, not returning to Philadelphia until after the Constitutional Convention of 1787.

Washington, DC: The new constitution will provide for creation of a

federal district, separate from any state, that Congress will control and police directly. The result is the District of Columbia and the city of Washington. Southern congressmen deem this much more friendly than Philadelphia with its new gradual-emancipation law, and its large and outspokenly anti-slavery Quaker community. The district will be carved out of two slave states, Maryland and Virginia, and become a leading slave market. The federal government will move from Philadelphia into its first buildings in the district May 14, 1800.

1783

Peace of Paris Ends War

Peace of Paris ends Revolutionary War, Sept. 3. Independent U.S. is granted vast territory to the Mississippi. Britain also cedes Florida back to Spain, while retaining Quebec and Gibraltar, and regaining St. Vincent and the Bahamas.

As noted above, former slave-trade partners Richard Oswald (on British side assisting David Hartley) and Henry Laurens (on U.S. side assisting Benjamin Franklin, John Adams and John Jay) play direct role in negotiation of treaty provisions deemed highly favorable to the Americans.

Revolution deaths: The estimates are very rough. On the North American battlefields, 6,800 on American side; French, 2,100; British, 6,000; Germans (in British service), 1,800; Loyalists, 1,700.

At least another 17,000 on American side die of disease, many of them on British prison ships anchored in East River off Brooklyn (these include many hundreds of sailors seized on American privateers and merchant ships). Perhaps 17,000 British military, 6,000 Germans and 5,300 Loyalists also die of disease.

Total Indian deaths are unknown. Perhaps 3,000 Germans also desert to stay in America. Not included are considerable casualties in Europe and the Caribbean incurred mainly by the European belligerents.

1783

British Depart New York

Final evacuation of British troops and more than 25,000 Loyalists from New York, Nov. 25, including 3,000 Black Loyalists. Washington demands return of latter as "property" under recent negotiations, but is turned down by British commander Guy Carleton. Their names, occupations and former masters are recorded in a *Book of Negroes* for possible compensation which never happens.

Another 500 blacks still enslaved to white Loyalists are also embarked on ships for Nova Scotia.

A number of Loyalists from other colonies win land grants in Bahamas; they develop cotton plantations, transfer their slaves and import more. Most of today's Bahamians said to be descended from those slaves. Others are settled in Bahamas as freed blacks after their liberation from slave ships (post 1807).

1783

British Quakers Petition Parliament

In London, 273 Quakers present the first petition submitted to Parliament to abolish the slave trade, June 17. This is partly at the urging of Anthony Benezet

and other U.S. Quakers. William Dillwyn and John Lloyd write an accompanying pamphlet for the public.

Lord North, now the home secretary, is said to assert that slave trade and slave plantations are economically essential for every major European nation (apparently unconvinced by Adam Smith's 1776 views to the contrary, see above).

1783

American Quakers Address Congress

In Philadelphia, 534 Quakers from Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Delaware, and western Maryland and Virginia petition the Continental Congress "to discourage and prevent so obvious an Evil" as the slave trade, Oct. 4. Leaders include William Savery, Henry Drinker and Abel James.

However, because most Quakers refused to take up arms during Revolution (with Drinker and James among 20 Friends exiled in 1777 from Philadelphia to Virginia), they lose considerable political influence in immediate post-war years.

1783

Maryland Prohibits Slave Trade

Maryland joins Virginia in banning the import of slaves, but not slavery. This comes three years after Maryland raised tax on importing slaves to a prohibitive \$500.

1783

Free Land on Trinidad

Spain offers 32-acre lots on Trinidad to white Catholics willing to settle and 16 acres to free people of color, and more land for each slave these settlers bring. This Cedula of Population is credited with attracting people from nearby French islands and boosting population in the so-far failed colony from 1,400 in 1777 to more than 15,000 1789.

1784

Webster's School Speller

Noah Webster, former teacher and vocal critic of America's haphazard schooling of children, issues his "Blue-Backed Speller" (actually, the first part of his *Grammatical Institute of the English Language*). The Speller is arranged to be taught as children grow older and to rescue English language from "corruptions" of British aristocracy.

It quickly supersedes *The New-England Primer* to be leading book in teaching U.S. children to read, spell and pronounce words. It sells 15 million copies by 1837 when first McGuffey's Readers come out.

1784

Triangular Trade Accelerates

In wake of war, Britain's Triangular Trade—British-made goods to Africa to trade for slaves; slaves to Caribbean and American colonies; slave-plantation sugar, tobacco and cotton to Britain—will soon account for roughly 80% of

Britain's foreign revenue. In these peak years, British ships carry 40,000 enslaved men, women and children across the Atlantic annually. At least 13% of total die on voyage.

1784

Rhode Island, Connecticut Emancipation

Rhode Island and Connecticut pass gradual emancipation laws. New Hampshire has virtually no slaves, but does not codify emancipation.

1784

London Essay Spurs Abolitionists

James Ramsey publishes, in London, "An essay on the treatment and conversion of African slaves in the British sugar colonies," which has major impact on coalescing British abolitionists.

Ramsey, a Scottish navy surgeon turned Anglican minister, witnessed slavery, first upon boarding a slave ship in 1759, and later on St. Kitts (1762-1777) where he presided over churches he opened to both whites and blacks, and strongly protested treatment of slaves.

After returning to England, he works with William Wilberforce and Thomas Clarkson, who will continue and enlarge his campaign against the slave trade.

1784

White Loyalists Riot

In the new Nova Scotian town of Shelburne, white-Loyalist majority (many coming from New York and some of whom still hold slaves) attack Black Loyalists, July 25, destroying homes in bitter competition over land, jobs, food. Baptist church of black pastor David George targeted. Conflict continues for weeks before British troops arrive; many hurt but no reported deaths.

1785

Power Loom Introduced

First power loom introduced in England by Edmund Cartwright. Modified and improved over the following decades, 100,000 are operating by 1833. Manchester develops into the center of the cotton-textile industry, which leads the entire Industrial Revolution.

1786

Lafayette's Cayenne Experiment

Now a dedicated abolitionist, the marquis, back in France, buys two small sugar plantations on the Oyapok river in the French colony of Cayenne. His agent converts them to less debilitating spice cultivation. Lafayette intends to demonstrate practicality of gradual emancipation of its 70 slaves, beginning with payment for their labor, schooling for their children, and banning of slave sales and severe punishments.

When Lafayette is imprisoned by Austria in 1792 (after escaping France

in the Terror), the plantations are confiscated by the French revolutionary government and the slaves sold. They are presumably freed two years later, when the National Convention votes to end slavery in Cayenne and other colonies (see below).

Lafayette letter to John Adams, 1786: "In the cause of my black brethren, I feel myself warmly interested and most decidedly side against the white part of mankind. Whatever be the complexion of the enslaved, it does not, in my opinion, alter the complexion of the crime which the enslaver commits, a crime much blacker than any African face."

1786-1789

Anti-Slavery Writings Increase

More anti-slavery narratives and reports appear, including Thomas Clarkson's *A Summary View of the Slave Trade and of the Probable Consequences of its Abolition*, 1786; John Newton's *Thoughts upon the African Slave Trade*, 1787; Olaudah Equiano's *The Interesting Narrative of the Life of Olaudah Equiano*, 1789.

West Indies plantation owners counter with Thomas Bellamy's play, *The Benevolent Planters*, 1789.

1786-1787

Black Poor Bound for Sierra Leone

A number of Black Loyalists from America arrive in London, significantly increasing the city's Black Poor population, which includes Africans freed under the Somerset decision of 1774, and beached navy and merchant seamen.

A committee for their relief is organized by some of London's financial elite, with Quakers donating the most.

In October, it's proposed to resettle volunteers to Sierra Leone. Three ships carrying 280 black men, 40 black women and 70 white women depart Portsmouth the following April 9; 96 succumb before arrival five weeks later at the Sierra Leone estuary where "Granville Town" is established.

Conflict with Temne people, disease and withdrawal of a disappointed Olaudah Equiano end the initial experiment by 1789. But Sierra Leone will develop into a refuge within a few years.

1787

Slavery Banned in U.S. Northwest

Northwest Ordinance, based on an earlier bill written by Jefferson, excludes slavery from new U.S. territories ceded first by Britain and then by original states to federal government, north of Ohio river.

Includes present-day Ohio, Indiana, Michigan, Illinois, Wisconsin and Minnesota east of Mississippi. Confederation Congress approves, 17-1, with all five Southern delegations present voting in favor, July 13.

Why Southern support? Slaves are few in Northwest; most are native Americans held by tribes who still control a majority of the region. Also, original Jefferson bill would have banned slavery south of Ohio river as well (in territories

that will become Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama and Mississippi), but those are not included in final bill.

Also, without slaves, Northwest farmers cannot threaten competition against Southern tobacco and indigo plantations. Finally, the ordinance includes a fugitive-slave clause requiring no-slave territories to recognize rights of slave-territory masters to retrieve fugitives.

The slavery ban does not automatically apply to states that are carved out of the Northwest Territory. But all six choose to include ban in their constitutions (although Indiana will attempt to legalize bondage of several hundred blacks under "indentured service" loophole).

Establishment of this vast no-slavery tract is a landmark in U.S. history. And final abolition would have been far more difficult without it.

1787

Constitution to Permit Slavery

Proposed U.S. Constitution finalized in Philadelphia, Sept. 17. There is strong debate over slavery, Aug. 21-22, with many challenging it as immoral and abhorrent, including delegates from Virginia and Maryland. But the Carolinas and Georgia insist their economies are totally dependent on it. To retain them, the delegates determine that slavery cannot be forbidden by the new national government; that's left to each state to decide.

The words "slave" and "slavery" do not appear in new **Constitution**, reflecting discomfort with enshrining it into a founding document. But three articles touch on the young nation's enslaved, who now number nearly 700,000:

Article I, Section 2 allots representatives in the House and direct taxes according to the states' respective populations, which are to be calculated "by adding to the whole Number of free persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years (this refers to indentured servants), and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other Persons."

"All other Persons" are the slaves. The Southern states want them counted in full, as they make up a major portion of their populations, to maximize Southern representatives in the House. The Northern states argue they should not be counted at all, because their status is that of property, not citizens. The Great Compromise is to count each slave as three-fifths of a person for this purpose only. The debate has no impact, either way, on slaves' rights or wellbeing.

Article I, Section 9 prohibits laws that would ban "the Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit" before 1808. This is an extremely obfuscated reference to the slave trade; the 21-year hiatus is a compromise between pro- and anti-slavery delegates. And in 1807, a law banning the slave trade to the U.S. from other countries—but not banning slavery itself or domestic slave trading—is indeed passed, taking effect Jan. 1, 1808.

Article IV, Section 2 covers extradition by any state of persons charged with crimes who are found in another state. This is extended to runaway slaves

with this language: "No Person held to Service or Labour in one State... escaping into another... shall be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due."

1787

Quakers Create Abolition Society

Society for the Abolition of the Slave Trade forms in Britain. Nine of the 12 founders are Quakers, including five who signed the 1783 petition to Parliament. Three Anglicans join them, including Thomas Clarkson and Granville Sharp, the lawyer who took slaves' side in the Somerset and *Zong* cases.

William Wilberforce of Yorkshire agrees to lead Parliamentary drive to ban slave trade at dinner with leading abolitionists, May, and is encouraged by his friend, William Pitt the Younger, prime minister since 1783 (now just 28). This is two years after Wilberforce's self-searching evangelical conversion.

Note: Quakers are effectively barred from Parliament membership (until 1832) because they cannot swear allegiance to a monarch.

1787

Clarkson's Anti-Slavery Circuit

Thomas Clarkson undertakes research and speaks in English cities against slave trade. In Liverpool, he is badly beaten by a gang of sailors said to have been paid to assassinate him. He survives and plays a leading role over the next 20 years.

1787

Story of Pierre Toussaint

As tensions mount in Saint-Domingue, the Bérard family leaves its plantation for New York, taking with them a 21-year-old slave, Pierre. He becomes successful hairdresser, supports the widow Bérard and is ultimately freed by her. In 1811, he takes the name Toussaint after Haiti's revolutionary hero. Known as a benefactor of Catholic Church and schools for black children in New York, he is declared "venerable" by Pope John Paul II in 1996.

1788

Constitution Takes Effect

U.S. Constitution ratified by New Hampshire (9th state to do so) making it the law of the land, June 21. Washington (Virginia) elected first president, November. John Adams elected vice president; Jefferson named secretary of state; Alexander Hamilton, secretary of the treasury.

Notably, free black men have the right to vote for delegates to constitution-ratifying conventions in a number of states—including Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey and North Carolina—if they meet property-ownership minimums.

1788**Limit on Packing Slave Ships**

British Parliament passes, by a significant majority, Slave Trade Act put forth by Sir William Dolben, which limits number of slaves that a ship can carry to 1.67 slaves per ton up to 207 tons burthen. Also requires a doctor aboard and record keeping. Wilberforce among opponents, fearing it will undermine drive for complete abolition of the trade.

Example: One slave ship, *Brookes*, previously carried as many as 609 slaves, but now is limited to 454.

Mortality on British slave ships subsequently declines.

1788**Senegal Muslims Free Captives**

In northern Senegal, coffles of captives being marched to the French factory at Île Saint-Louis are stopped by followers of Abdel Kader Kane, the Muslim leader of Futa Toro. Ninety are freed.

The following March, Kane warns the governor at Saint-Louis to cease buying and enslaving Muslims captured by enemies of the Futa Toro. "All those who will come to our land to trade in slaves will be killed or massacred if you do not send our children back," reads his letter.

1789**Bill of Rights Voted**

First U.S. Congress, meeting in New York, adopts Bill of Rights, 12 amendments to the Constitution, Sept. 25.

Included are guarantees of freedom of religion, the right to free speech and trial by jury, protections against unreasonable search and self-incrimination, and more.

The 2nd Amendment is crafted by Madison to meet Virginia's insistence that states will always be allowed to deploy militias of armed citizens. Virginia's main fear? Slave rebellions.

Virginia is the 10th state to ratify 10 of the amendments, making them the law of the land, Dec. 15, 1791. The remaining two, addressing when Congress can increase its pay and future increases in membership of the House, fail to win 10 states.

Congress moves to Philadelphia in 1790 and, in 1800, moves again to Washington, DC. First session in the new Capitol building is held Nov. 17, 1800.

1789**Wilberforce Opens Anti-Slave Drive**

Wilberforce gives his first speech against the slave trade in Parliament, May 12. But slave-trade proponents push issue into a committee for study.

1789**Paris: The Bastille**

Storming of Bastille prison in Paris ignites French Revolution, July 14.

National Assembly adopts Declaration of the Rights of Man, grounded in political ideas of the Enlightenment, Aug. 4. Drawn up by Lafayette who consults with Jefferson (in his last year as U.S. ambassador to France) and advanced by Honoré, Comte de Mirabeau.

Article I: "Men are born and remain free and equal in rights. Social distinctions can be founded only on the common good."

But category of "passive citizens" continues the practice of withholding full political rights from women, children, slaves and foreigners.

Note: Jefferson begins relationship with teenage slave Sally Hemings (a half-sister of his late wife) in Paris. She negotiates special treatment for herself and freedom for any children to come. Four survive into adulthood and are freed, the last two only upon Jefferson's death in 1826.

1789

Código Negro: New Rights

Spanish crown (Charles IV, the new Bourbon king) issues *El Código Negro* for its Caribbean colonies to promote slave plantations, but also to allow slaves more opportunity to work their own plots of land and as craftsmen, with the right to buy freedom of their children and themselves. Over time, many are able to accomplish this.

It is based on the *Code Noir* of French King Louis XIV and includes similar restrictions, and punishments (whipping, branding, mutilation are permitted depending on the offense).

1789

Rebels in Brazil's Gold Country

Inspired by the American Revolution and angered by a royal tax to make up for sagging gold production, a number of officers, intellectuals and priests in Brazil's Minas Gerais captaincy plot to break free of Portugal. A smaller number also propose to abolish slavery.

But the plan is betrayed to the government. Most involved are exiled to Angola, but one leader, Joaquim José da Silva Xavier, is hanged in Rio de Janeiro, April 21, 1792. His butchered remains are ordered on display in Ouro Preto, the gold-rush capital. April 21 is now celebrated as a national holiday in honor of Da Silva. His nickname, Tiradentes (he was a dentist) has been taken by another town in Minas Gerais.

1790s

Annual Slave Count: 85,000

Estimated number of African captives crossing the Atlantic (to *all* Americas destinations) reaches 85,000 a year. That's up from 30,000 a year in the 1690s.

Black Americas: Enslaved Africans (8.7 million) arriving in the Americas between 1500 and 1820 far outnumber white European immigrants (2.6 million).

1790

Census: Enslaved and Free

First U.S. Census: total population, 3.89 million; slaves, 698,000 (17.8%).

Free blacks number 60,000 (1.5% of the total). This is more than quadruple the 14,000 free blacks estimated by historians in 1775. Many slaves gained freedom for serving in the Continental army or navy during the Revolution. Also, Massachusetts ended slavery, 1781, while other Northern states instituted gradual emancipation. Also, manumission by individual slave masters increased both North and South.

These numbers also reflect departure of thousands of Black Loyalists.

New York is confirmed as the largest city with 49,401 people, leaping far ahead of Philadelphia (28,522 in 1790) in the wake of the Revolution.

1790

Citizen Act Excludes Blacks, Indians

Congress passes Naturalization Act of 1790, limiting U.S. citizenship to "free white persons... of good character," excluding Indians, black people (slave or free), indentured servants of any race. However, several states do recognize free blacks as citizens within their borders.

As in British Plantation Act of 1740, courts determine eligibility and administer oaths of allegiance. Women not specifically excluded from citizenship, but practice continues that they are excluded from public life.

1790-1840

Second Awakening Sweeps States

Second Great Awakening, beginning in Kentucky and Tennessee, but spreading throughout states (notably in western New York). Evangelical and revivalist fervor among Presbyterians (who introduce camp meetings), Baptists and Methodists (who send "circuit rider" preachers far and wide). Boosts church participation dramatically, but also sows church divisions, including over slavery.

1790

Pennsylvania Calls for Educating Poor

New Pennsylvania state constitution calls for free public education for poor children. Wealthier families are expected to pay for their children's schooling.

1790

Saint-Domingue: A First Step

Vincent Ogé, a free, Saint-Domingue mulatto planter in Paris on business, petitions new National Assembly for citizenship and voting rights for free people of color (*gens de couleur libres*) but not for slaves. A first step toward what will be 13 years of bloody fighting among diverse groups in Saint-Domingue.

Returning home, Ogé organizes and arms other free men of color to press for rights. Ogé is captured, then broken on the wheel, Feb. 6, 1791; 21 supporters are hanged and 13 more are sentenced to galleys.

Separately, slaves begin to mobilize around demands for additional free days and abolition of the whip as punishment. White planters refuse to negotiate.

Background: Saint-Domingue is a rich colony, now producing perhaps

40% of all sugar and 60% of all coffee consumed in Europe. It is home to 32,000 whites, plus 23,000 free people of color (mulattoes and blacks). But life is brutal for the 500,000 black slaves, 90% of the population. Each year, another 40,000 are imported from Africa, of whom half die, mostly of disease, within 12 months.

Santo Domingo: Spanish portion of Hispaniola has climbed out of depressed circumstances of early 1700s. Bourbon trade reforms help as does influx of Canary Islanders. By 1790, Santo Domingo population has risen to 125,000 (40,000 white settlers, 25,000 free people of mixed race and 60,000 black slaves (nearly 50% of population).

1791

No-Slave Vermont Joins Union

Vermont joins Union, the 14th state, and retains its constitution explicitly banning slavery, Feb. 18. Accepted by Congress after paying \$30,000 to New York to resolve conflicting land claims.

1791

Indians Overwhelm U.S. Force

Indian confederation led by Little Turtle (Miami) and Blue Jacket (Shawnee) defeat an American force of 1,000 led by Gen. Arthur St. Clair in Battle of the Wabash, near Fort Recovery, OH, Nov. 4. The two tribes reject U.S. claims to Northwest Territory based on treaties negotiated with other Indians.

More than 830 Americans are killed; only 21 escape unharmed. Indian casualties total 61. It's the second overwhelming Indian victory in the Northwest Indian War, and among the most decisive defeats ever in U.S. military history.

Uprising in Saint-Domingue (to 1804)

1791

Saint-Domingue Explodes, Le Cap in Flames

In Paris, National Assembly grants citizenship and right to vote to free people of color (*gens de couleur libres*) in colonies, including freed slaves, May 15. Slavery is not addressed, however.

White planters and *petit blancs* in Saint-Domingue reject the Paris edict and, through the colonial assembly, continue to withhold rights from all non-whites.

Slaves finalize insurrection plans at Bois Caïman vodou ceremony led by Dutty Boukeman, a slave who once worked on Jamaica, and mulatto *mambo* Cécile Fatiman, Aug. 14. This is only six months after execution of Vincent Ogé who led uprising of free blacks.

With the outbreak, numbers of rebel slaves quickly swell to 80,000; they burn hundreds of northern plantations, kill many whites, take others hostage. Le Cap (then Cap-François, Cap-Haïtien today) burns, Sept. 26; Port-au-Prince burns in October.

Boukeman dies in battle; whites mount head on stake, November; ex-slave Toussaint Louverture emerges as new leader.

In Paris, National Assembly revokes May 15 decree, Sept. 24, which pushes free *gens de couleur* in Saint-Domingue to join with the slaves.

1791

Slave-Trade Ban Defeated

Wilberforce, leader of anti-slavery forces in Parliament and supported by Pitt the Younger, the prime minister, puts forth his first bill for Abolition of the Slave Trade. It fails in House of Commons, 163-88, amid negative public reaction to French Revolution and to the Saint-Domingue slave revolt, April 25.

But Wilberforce and allies sense a new momentum in their favor.

1791

A Gradual, Mass Emancipation

Robert Carter III, owner of tobacco plantations on Virginia's Northern Neck, files a "Deed of Gift" in court, Aug. 1, directing emancipation of more than 500 slaves over the next 20 years, adults over the next five years and children as they reach adulthood (18 for women; 21 for men).

It is believed to be the largest individual act of manumission in the nation before the Civil War. A convert from Baptism to follow the theology of mystic Emanuel Swedenborg, Carter writes, "...I have for some time past been convinced that to retain them in Slavery is contrary to the true principles of Religion & justice..."

1791

Slave Trader Indicted

James DeWolfe indicted in Newport, RI, for directing killing of a female slave two years earlier aboard his ship *Polly*. The victim, ill with smallpox (thus said to be a threat to others aboard), was bound to a chair and lowered into the sea. Prosecutor declines to pursue case. DeWolfe is later acquitted of same crime on Danish St. Thomas, 1795.

Slave trading enriches DeWolfe family, which is believed to have transported 11,000 slaves to U.S. in 30 voyages from West Africa and Cuba before 1808 ban. A nephew continues slaving illegally afterward. Family founds bank in Bristol, RI, a slave auction house in Charleston, SC, and a slave-ship insurance company.

DeWolfe leads consortium that opens Arkwright, RI, textile mills in 1810. During War of 1812, he outfits privateers, including the *Yankee*, which alone captures 40 British ships worth more than \$5 million.

Over the years, DeWolfe plays large role in Rhode Island politics, including serving as a U.S. senator, 1821-1825. Upon his death, Dec. 21, 1837, he is described as second only to John Jacob Astor in amassed wealth among Americans.

1791**Quebec Divided**

Britain's Parliament divides Quebec into Lower Canada (present-day Quebec) and Upper Canada (present-day southern Ontario) to accommodate 10,000 largely white Loyalists who fled the 13 colonies. Upper Canada's first capital is Newark (later Niagara) and in 1797 moved to York (population about 250; renamed Toronto in 1834).

Much of north shore of Lake Ontario was taken from Mississauga Indians in a series of land sales, culminating with the Toronto Purchase, 1793.

1792**Kentucky Joins Union, Slave**

Kentucky joins Union as the 15th state; slavery permitted.

1792**Carolina Mulls Slave-Trade Ban**

South Carolina considers legislation to ban importation of slaves, driven by fear that new slaves from Africa or the Caribbean are more likely to revolt, Saint-Domingue-style.

1792**Black Loyalists to Sierra Leone**

Nearly 1,200 Black Loyalists, most originally American slaves who evacuated to Nova Scotia at end of Revolutionary War, depart Halifax on 15 ships to establish colony of Sierra Leone, Jan. 15, supported by Wilberforce, Clarkson, Sharp and other British abolitionists. The migrants voice deep disappointment with treatment at hands of white Loyalists in Nova Scotia.

These new settlers found Freetown (on West Africa's best natural harbor) and introduce American manners, fashion, even Methodism. Among them are Thomas Peters, their leader, and Harry Washington, who escaped Mount Vernon after Lord Dunmore's Proclamation in 1775 and fought for the British.

Lt. John Clarkson, a younger brother of Thomas, commands the expedition from Nova Scotia and assists in establishing Freetown.

This follows 1787 settlement in Sierra Leone of more than 300 of London's "Black Poor," including some Loyalists from America. That community failed because of disease and hostility of native Temne people.

1792**Lords Stop Slave Bill**

Wilberforce, with supporting speeches from Pitt the Younger, the prime minister, and Charles James Fox, wins passage of Slave Trade Abolition Bill by the House of Commons, 151-132, to take effect in 1796. But Henry Dundas, the home secretary, and Edmund Burke, although both avowedly anti-slave trade, delay progress and the Lords ultimately block it.

1792**Saint-Domingue: Many Factions**

Saint-Domingue's French governor attacks rebel slaves who slip into hills, leaving behind several hundred women, children and elderly who are massacred by whites; other slaves are returned to masters only to be killed as "examples," January.

In the south, free people of color will soon ally with British against French, June. In the north, slaves again attack Le Cap.

Reversing the French position, new commissioners from Paris promise freedom to slaves who help fight Spanish and British. Many agree; but more, including Louverture, go over to Spanish.

1792**Portugal's Queen Insane**

When Maria I is deemed insane, her son João takes over government in her name. The very religious Maria has been overwhelmed by depression following deaths of her husband (who was also her uncle and consort) in 1786; and of her eldest son and her confessor, both in 1788.

1793**Fugitive Slave Act Passes**

Congress passes a Fugitive Slave Act to enforce the Fugitive Slave Clause in the Constitution. Signed by Pres. Washington, February.

1793**Cotton Gin Speeds Production**

Eli Whitney invents cotton gin (patent approved 1794). Each gin (from "engine") can clean 55 pounds of cotton a day, compared to one pound by one person by hand. Whitney, a Connecticut Yankee, was visiting Mulberry Grove, a mainly rice plantation near Savannah owned by widow of Gen. Nathanael Greene who led patriot forces in the Carolinas.

The gin makes possible cultivation of short-staple cotton inland. Previously, virtually all American cotton was long-staple variety grown in Carolina Low Country and Sea Island estuaries.

1793**Philadelphia: Fever Kills 5,000**

Yellow fever in Philadelphia forces Pres. Washington and national government to flee. Possibly introduced by 2,000 refugees from Saint-Domingue. The small black community, thought to be resistant to fever (as they are to malaria), volunteers to nurse victims. More than 5,000 die between Aug. 1 and Nov. 9, or more than 9% of city's population. Cold weather then apparently eliminates mosquitoes.

1793**Slavery Limited in Upper Canada**

Assembly of new province of Upper Canada (present-day Ontario) bans importation of slaves from U.S. or elsewhere and provides for gradual emancipation of current slaves, July 9.

The law is pushed by Lt.-Gov. John Graves Simcoe after Chloe Cooley, a slave in Queenston is forcibly taken across the Niagara river to be sold in New York (an act the new law would not have prevented). But the law provides for freeing of chattel slaves in province after 25 years (1818) and for immediate emancipation of their children, and encourages former masters to employ ex-slaves as indentured servants.

It is the only law to limit or end slavery in any British colony before Parliament passes the Slavery Abolition Act in 1833, to gradually emancipate slaves in all British colonies. While Simcoe's law does not apply to Lower Canada (present-day Quebec), courts there gradually withdraw support for slavery (there are relatively few slaves; there was never an organized slave trade from Africa to Canada).

But without this step, Upper Canada might never have become a sanctuary for fugitive U.S. slaves.

1793

Reign of Terror

War of First Coalition against France follows execution of Louis XVI, Jan. 21. France, declaring war on Britain, Netherlands, Spain, begins mass-conscription to build large armies.

Reign of Terror convulses France as revolutionary government reacts to both hostile armies and internal opponents. Thousands die on guillotine in Paris and tens of thousands in the rebellious Vendée while hundreds of thousands are imprisoned. Terror runs through July 1794, ending only when Maximilien Robespierre and many Jacobin supporters are arrested and executed. Many of those who escape the guillotine are banished to Guiana.

1793

Britain Allies with Slave Masters

Britain signs Whitehall Accord with anti-revolutionary French slave masters from Saint-Domingue, Guadeloupe and Martinique who invite British forces to occupy islands; in return, slavery is to be restored, Feb. 19. The accord anticipates, correctly, that the revolutionary government will abolish slavery.

Signing on behalf of fellow slaveholders in Saint-Domingue is Pierre Victor, baron Malouet and, on behalf of Britain, Pitt's home secretary, Henry Dundas. This agreement will lead to the deaths of many British soldiers, for little gain.

Meanwhile, 10,000 whites flee Saint-Domingue for U.S. and Caribbean ports.

1793

British Invade Saint-Domingue

In Saint-Domingue, France's commissioner issues decree emancipating slaves in north, Aug. 29. Decrees restricting punishments and even granting pay to "laborers" follow. Land ownership becomes next goal of ex-slaves.

British forces, to ultimately number 20,000, invade Saint-Domingue's south, Sept. 20. They support anti-revolutionary white planters under the Whitehall Accord. Pitt the Younger also hopes that British seizure of sugar-rich Saint-Domingue will be a staggering blow for France. British work to win over free people of color before attempting to take on ex-slaves to the north.

British soon control most southern ports, and take Port-au-Prince following year.

1794

Indians Removed from Ohio

Legion of U.S.—the reorganized Continental army under Gen. Anthony Wayne—defeats Indian confederation under Blue Jacket south of present-day Toledo, Aug. 20. Brief Battle of Fallen Timbers, the last of the Northwest Indian War, determines U.S. control of Ohio Territory and the removal of Indians, under a subsequent treaty (1795), to northwest corner of present-day Ohio and most of present-day Indiana.

1794

A Blow Against Slavers?

U.S. Congress bans construction, fitting or dispatching of any vessel for slave trade. Apparently with little effect on shipbuilders of New York, Baltimore and New England who will launch nearly half of all ships seized over the coming decades by mostly Royal Navy anti-slaver patrols. Most sail under foreign owners and flags.

1794

Early Black Church Founded

In Philadelphia, Richard Allen and other black Methodists form Bethel African Methodist Episcopal Church. One of the nation's first black congregations is dedicated July 29. Allen acts after blacks suffer many discriminatory slights in their previous, integrated church.

1794

France Abolishes Slavery

National Convention abolishes slavery in all French territories, Feb. 4. While new law is implemented only in Saint-Domingue, Guadeloupe and Guiana, it inspires uprisings throughout Caribbean.

This dramatic emancipation act will be repealed by Napoleon in 1802.

1794

Martinique Planters Reinstated

British fleet takes Martinique and reinstates regime controlled by French planters, as per the Whitehall Accord, March 30, signed by Henry Dundas on British side. Thus slavery continues on island despite National Convention's act of abolition.

1794

Louverture Returns to French Side

In Saint-Domingue, Louverture abandons Spanish army and joins with the French in wake of France's abolition of slavery and Spanish refusal to follow suit, May 6.

France's revolutionary governor, Étienne Laveaux, makes Louverture lieutenant governor. His lieutenants now include Jean-Jacques Dessalines and Henri Cristophe. Their army of ex-slaves begins attacks from north on British forces occupying central and southern Saint-Domingue.

Inurrection Spreads across Caribbean

1794

Guadeloupe: French Join Blacks

Britain invades island to support white plantation owners under the Whitehall Accord (British also take St. Lucia). France responds with a small force under Victor Hugues who proclaims end to slavery as ordered by the National Convention, wins over ex-slaves and retakes island. Several hundred white royalists go to the guillotine.

Hugues organizes integrated army, but 1796 attempt to take Anguilla fails. Hugues also launches privateers against Caribbean shipping, including American ships during France's undeclared "Quasi War" with U.S. American navy cooperates with British against these privateers.

1794

Cape Colony: Slaver Wrecked

São José Paquete Africa, a Portuguese slaver, founders while carrying as many as 500 slaves from Island of Mozambique to Maranhão, northern Brazil. The 7,000-mile voyage was expected to take four months, but ship strikes reefs off Camps Bay (South Africa). Crew and perhaps 290 slaves are rescued, but all others are lost, Jan. 1. Survivors sold into slavery in the Dutch Cape Colony.

Wreck, discovered in 1980s, is not correctly, officially, identified until 2015.

1795

Sugar Comes to Louisiana

Jean Étienne de Boré produces first granulated sugar in Louisiana, still held by Spain, on his indigo plantation near New Orleans. De Boré credits Antoine Morin, a refugee from Saint-Domingue, for developing the mill to complete the processing. Louisiana counts 75 sugar mills by 1812.

De Boré goes on to be the first mayor of New Orleans under U.S. rule, 1803.

1795

Saint-Domingue, 'French and Free'

France gains control of all of Hispaniola in Peace of Basel, July 22, as Louverture gradually establishes his military strength in dealing with French governor.

In Paris, Directory takes over government, October, vows to keep Saint-Domingue and the rest of Hispaniola "both French and free."

1795**British Exile Black Caribs**

Black Caribs in the north of St. Vincent, who have never been subjugated, take the British plantations to the south except for Kingstown, the capital, March. Their chief, Chatoyer, gets help from French troops sent from Martinique by Victor Hugues.

But they are crushed two years later by a large force under Gen. Ralph Abercromby. Chatoyer is killed and more than 5,000 of the darker Black Caribs are banished to tiny Baliceaux in the nearby Grenadines, where half die from disease and exposure.

Survivors are moved to Roatán off Honduras. From there they settle in communities on the Honduran and Belize coast, becoming known as the Garifuna people.

A small number of lighter Caribs are joined by new African slaves to work on expanded St. Vincent plantations (sugar, coffee, cotton).

1795**Uprising on Curaçao**

Revolt of more than 1,000 slaves on Netherlands' Curaçao plantations, led by Tula Rigaud, Louis Mercier, Bastian Karpata, Pedro Wakao, Aug. 17. Gunfights alternate with negotiations over a month. Several whites and 20 slaves die; the leaders are executed, Rigaud by torture.

1795**Defeated Maroons to Nova Scotia**

On Jamaica, Second Maroon War pits a few hundred Trelawny Town Maroons vs. 5,000 troops, white militia and rival Accompong Maroon group. Windward Maroon towns remain neutral. Plantations burned, many slaves freed and British forces suffer far more casualties than do Maroons. But Trelawny Town is laid to waste and they sign treaty.

The following year, a duplicitous governor (Alexander Lindsay, Earl of Balcarres) deports 581 rebel Maroons to Nova Scotia. Most go on to Sierra Leone in 1800; some descendants return to Jamaica after slavery is abolished.

1795**Grenada's Bloody Revolt**

On Grenada, free blacks, slaves and French whites revolt against British rule, March. Insurrection is led by Julian Fédon, a mulatto planter appointed a captain by French and inspired by France's abolition of slavery. Half of island's total slave population of 28,000 takes part; 7,000 die, including at least 40 white hostages. Rebels take over island except St. George's. British reinforcements prevail, June 1796. Leaders executed, many others deported; Fédon never found.

Sugar prices soar: Taken altogether, West Indies unrest slashes sugar production significantly.

1795**A Venezuelan Insurrection**

In Venezuela, slaves rise up in Santa Ana de Coro, May 10, led by José Leonardo Chirino, a free *zambo* (African and Indian) inspired by visit to Saint-Domingue and by ideals of the French Revolution. The rebels are suppressed, Chirino executed and his children sold into slavery.

1795**Mungo Park Explores Niger Valley**

Scottish explorer Mungo Park ventures up Gambia river and then begins descent of Niger, a first for Europeans who believe it may somehow connect with the Congo. Park encounters slave caravans bound for Gambia and later describes the gold-for-salt trade, as well as the slave trade among Islamic and "pagan" peoples, and between individuals. Returns to Gambia with black slave traders ("slatees") leading captives in a coffle. A packed American slaver takes him to Antigua; from there he sails back to England in 1797.

On a second, 1,000 mile-plus descent of the Niger in 1805, most of Park's party dies of disease before he drowns in a confrontation with locals at Bussa.

Richard Lander finally completes a descent to Niger's ocean delta in 1830.

1795**African King's Mission to Brazil**

Agonglo, king of Dahomey, sends emissaries to Salvador, asking that Brazil trade only with Whydah for Slave Coast captives. Agonglo is concerned about sudden fall-off in French demand for slaves thanks to Saint-Domingue uprising and France's abolition of slavery.

Mission is renewed in 1805 by Angonglo's son who complains of cheating in the count of slaves at the Portuguese factory in Whydah.

In 1811, the king sends four emissaries to Salvador and an enslaved girl as a gift for Prince Regent João of Portugal. But the latter is now ensconced in Rio de Janeiro and declines to receive the Dahomians.

1795**Britain Takes Cape Colony**

In September, Britain seizes the Cape Colony from the Netherlands, which had granted access to French warships threatening trade routes to India. Dutch regain colony briefly in 1802, but British return in 1806. Their possession is confirmed by the Treaty of Paris of 1815.

Population: 27,000 of European descent, a majority Dutch but also including German and Huguenot descendants; 30,000 African and Asian slaves; and perhaps 17,000 Khoikhoi and San people in the coastal strip between St. Helena Bay and Cape Recife (Port Elizabeth).

1796**Tennessee Joins Union**

Tennessee enters Union as the 16th state, slavery permitted.

1797**Cuffe's Integrated School**

Paul Cuffe builds a school on his new Westport, MA, farm and opens it to all children, possibly the nation's first integrated school. Cuffe is the free son of an Ashanti-born slave (freed by his Quaker master) and a Wampanoag mother.

Cuffe goes on to become a prosperous shipbuilder, merchant and, with his fellow Quakers, an abolitionist. He will sail to Sierra Leone in 1811 to explore business opportunities and possible settlement by American blacks.

1797**British Win Trinidad, Not Puerto Rico**

British under Gen. Abercromby land on Trinidad, where the Spanish governor capitulates without a fight, February. British possession is affirmed by Treaty of Amiens, 1802.

Abercromby has less luck with Puerto Rico. His assault on San Juan is turned back and he departs May 1.

1797**Louverture Compels British Departure**

Louverture, named commander in chief of French forces in Saint-Domingue, drives disease-weakened British from most of north; André Rigaud's army (mainly free people of color) does likewise in the south. British Gen. Thomas Maitland negotiates peace with Louverture and withdraws, Aug. 31, 1798.

Britain's Losses: Pitt's five-year West Indies campaign against, first, France's revolutionary regime, and then against Napoleon and Louverture's ex-slaves, fails to seize Saint-Domingue. It does manage to prop up slavery elsewhere at a cost of more than 80,000 men (most to disease). That's more than double British losses in American Revolution, and is a significant percentage of the British army and navy of the day.

Note: In 1800, Maitland will draw up a plan to capture Buenos Aires, cross the Andes and take control of Chile. British attempts to execute the plan are turned back in 1806 and 1807, and cease when Spain becomes an ally against Napoleon.

But the Maitland plan is revealed in 1811 to José de San Martín who will apply it 6 years later to liberate Chile.

1797**Madagascar Kingdom Established**

Imerina people unite island's central plateau under Andrianampoinimerina and expand control from the capital at Antananarivo to coasts. Imerina enslave many of those they subjugate, especially women and children. Arab traders on Madagascar coast buy East African slaves and sell them to planters on French Réunion and British Mauritius islands.

Andrianampoinimerina's son, Radama, invites missionaries, accepts Latin alphabet for Malagasy language and cooperates with British anti-slave trade

efforts. Successive rulers alternately suppress and encourage European contacts, education program and slave trading into the 1880s.

Tangena ordeal: In early 1800s, Queen Ranavalona expands administration of poison from the native tangena nut to determine innocence or guilt of accused persons. Perhaps 5% of the Imerina population, the majority of them slaves, will die by this process, widely accepted into the 1860s.

1798

Liverpool Slave Ship Explodes

Year-old *Parr*, out of Liverpool and the largest British slaver, explodes and sinks after boarding possibly 700 slaves at Bonny island (in the Niger delta), February. Only 300 slaves and 29 crew (but not the captain) are said to survive. Slaves placed on other ships to complete voyage to West Indies.

1799

New York's 'Gradual Emancipation'

New York state legislature passes gradual emancipation law, March 20. Children of slaves born after July 1799 to serve as "indentured servants" to age 28, males; age 25, females. Slaves born before are also redefined as indentured servants but required to continue unpaid labor. It's not until 1817 that state votes to fully free all new indentured servants born before July 4, 1799, effective in 1827.

Pushed through by Gov. John Jay who, with Alexander Hamilton and the Quaker community, founded the New York Manumission Society in 1785 (more than half of whose members own slaves). Jay continues to buy slaves, whom he eventually frees, through 1810.

New York's slave population totals about 33,000 in 1798.

The new law leaves New Jersey and New Hampshire as the only states north of Mason-Dixon line that have not acted to end slavery. New Jersey acts in 1804; New Hampshire (where census finds no slaves in 1850) acts in 1857.

School: In 1787, the Manumission Society founded the African Free School in New York City for 47 children of both slaves and free people of color, which will expand to seven buildings and more than 1,000 students over the next 30 years, and graduate early black leaders.

1799

Washington Dies; Slaves Freed

George Washington dies at 67, Dec. 14. His valet, William Lee, is freed immediately, as specified in Washington's will. His remaining 123 slaves are to be freed upon death of Martha (who actually frees them in 1801, a year before she dies), with the young to be educated and older people cared for by his estate. A

Another 153 slaves are held for Martha's benefit by the estate of her first husband. Those slaves are inherited by Custis family members upon Martha's death. The single slave that Martha could leave to a heir, she left to a grandson.

On bondage: Washington's views began to evolve during the Revolutionary War. In later years, he questioned slavery's morality and voiced support for gradual emancipation in conversations with close friends. But he never made any

public effort toward abolition and never responded to anti-slavery petitions brought to his attention. He considered the issue dangerous to the unity of the new nation.

Black praise: Two weeks later, Washington is eulogized by Richard Allen in the latter's 5-year-old Bethel African Methodist Episcopal Church in Philadelphia: "He dared do his duty, and wipe off the only stain with which man could ever reproach him..." in freeing slaves and providing for their financial support... "Deeds like these are not common."

1799

Napoleon Takes Control

Following initial military success in Egypt (and despite the ultimate failure of that adventure), Napoleon overthrows the Directory in Paris, and takes power in France as first consul, November. France's wars with Britain, Austria, Russia and other nations continue.

1799

Louverture Overcomes Rigaud

With British gone from Saint-Domingue, "War of Knives" breaks out in June between Louverture in the north (mainly ex-slaves) and André Rigaud in the south with Alexandre Pétion and Jean-Pierre Boyer (mainly free *gens de couleur*, the great majority of them mixed-race). Rigaud's forces massacre many whites and opposing blacks; Louverture's do likewise in north. USS *General Greene* (engaged in the brief "Quasi-War" with French privateers) bombards Rigaud forces at Jacmel in support of Louverture, February 1800. By July, Dessalines administers final defeat of Rigaud who sails for France, only to be captured by *USS Experiment* and detained on St. Kitts.

Louverture, reaffirmed by Napoleon as supreme commander of 20,000-man army in Saint-Domingue, imposes schools and other social reforms. But he also seeks to restore plantations (including several commandeered by him and his generals) to rebuild sugar economy. He calls for disciplining recalcitrant workers and bringing in more Africans. His ex-slave supporters massively object.

1800

1800

The New U.S. Grows

U.S. Census: total population, 5.31 million; slaves, 894,000 (16.8%); free blacks, 108,000 (2.0%).

1800

Forbidding Americans to Sail Slavers

Congress enacts stiff penalties for American citizens serving voluntarily on slave ships trading between two foreign countries. But enforcement is lax, convictions are very few.

1800**Virginia Revolt Betrayed**

Richmond, Petersburg and Norfolk are targets of insurrection as planned for Aug. 30 by enslaved blacksmith Gabriel Prosser. It fails when betrayed by other slaves; Virginia Gov. James Monroe (who was to be kidnapped under the plan) sends militia. Prosser, two brothers and 23 other slaves are hanged. Informing slaves are rewarded with freedom.

1800**Jefferson Elected over Adams**

Thomas Jefferson (Virginia) is elected president over incumbent John Adams (Massachusetts). The last state to vote (election days were staggered through the fall) is South Carolina, which breaks a tie in electoral votes with its 8 going to Jefferson and Aaron Burr, Democrat-Republicans.

Note: If slaves were not counted at all in calculating electoral votes, Adams, the Federalist, would have won re-election.

The House actually has to determine final presidential winner between Jefferson and Burr under provisions of the time. In the end, New York's support for Jefferson is decisive, determined by Alexander Hamilton's deep dislike of Burr, Feb. 17, 1801.

1800**Sugar Consumption Soars**

Average annual consumption of sugar per Briton is 18 pounds, up from four pounds in 1700.

1801**Stricter Fugitive Law Fails**

Attempt in Congress to pass stronger Fugitive Slave Act fails; similar effort in 1817 also fails.

1801**U.S. Fights Barbary Pirates**

Pres. Jefferson dispatches three frigates to Mediterranean, May 13, to end U.S. payments to Barbary states of Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli. Latter had long extorted tribute to hold back pirate attacks that previously resulted in seizure of American ships and cargo, and ransoming or enslavement of sailors.

Blockades, bombardments and raids (including destruction of USS *Philadelphia* after it fell into Tripolitan hands, Feb. 4, 1804) climax with capture of Derna in Cyrenaica, April 27, 1805 (by a mercenary army led by U.S. marines and Lt. William Eaton), and end with freedom for *Philadelphia* crew (at much-reduced ransom) and cancelation of further tribute.

1801**Louverture's Constitution Bans Slavery**

In Saint-Domingue, Louverture promulgates a constitution abolishing slavery

and naming himself governor for life (while still maintaining ties to France). He takes control of lightly populated eastern side of Hispaniola, July, which France gained in 1795 treaty. All individuals throughout island are to be "equal, free and citizens of France." This will be reversed by Napoleon.

1801

Ireland Joins Great Britain

Acts of Union draw Ireland into the new United Kingdom, bring 100 new Irish members into Parliament, Jan. 22. Most will support abolition of slave trade.

1802

Liverpool No. 1 for Cotton, Too

Liverpool imports of U.S. cotton (most from the Sea Islands) exceed those of West Indies for the first time. Liverpool, long the leader in the seaborne slave trade, is now also the leader in landing raw cotton for the textile factories of Lancashire and Manchester.

1802

A Year of Peace

Peace of Amiens ends France's Revolutionary Wars with Britain and others, March 27. In the Caribbean, Britain returns Martinique to France, but retains Trinidad (won from Spain). Treaty allows Napoleon to turn his attention to Saint-Domingue. Peace lasts only a year before Britain again declares war, May 18, 1803. Historians label conflicts to follow "the Napoleonic Wars."

1802

Napoleon Restores Caribbean Slavery

French plebiscite approves new constitution that makes Napoleon first consul for life, May 10. He quickly rescinds 1794 law abolishing slavery in French colonies, May 20. In Saint-Domingue (and on all of Hispaniola) this runs counter to Toussaint Louverture's year-old island constitution banning slavery.

Napoleon's edict also affects Guadeloupe and Guiana, the other French colonies where slavery had actually been lifted by revolutionary National Convention in 1794.

1802

Guadeloupe: Officer Leads Revolt

On Guadeloupe, Louis Delgrès (a free-born, mixed-race officer) vows to fight to death against returning French and resumption of slavery.

Cornered at Matouba, May 28, he and 400 followers detonate gunpowder stores as French troops close in, choosing to die and to kill as many of the latter as possible. A mixed-race *maron* woman, Solitude, survives bombing. Her hanging, Nov. 29, is delayed only until she gives birth. She remains a symbol of resistance to this day.

Slave imports are supposedly blocked by British occupation in 1810, by

Sweden which takes over for three years, and finally by France when restored to control in 1816. But slavery continues on Guadeloupe itself until 1848.

1802

Napoleon Targets Saint-Domingue

To restore French authority over sugar-wealthy Saint-Domingue, Napoleon sends four French and one Spanish fleet with 31,000 fresh troops across Atlantic, February. Led by Gen. Charles Leclerc (married to Napoleon's sister), they quickly occupy ports, towns and plantations on both ends of Hispaniola.

Louverture realizes he is Napoleon's target and retreats into rough hills with his soldiers. His lieutenants, Dessalines and Christophe, return to rebels, with Dessalines inflicting heavy losses on French in 20-day Battle of Crête-à-Pierrot, March 24.

But Dessalines and Christophe flip again to the French side, unaware that Napoleon intends to reinstitute slavery. Louverture agrees to lay down arms when promised light terms, restoration of his French rank and house arrest.

Then yellow fever tears through French forces, killing 15,000 in only two months. News of Napoleon's restoration of slavery on Guadeloupe reaches Saint-Domingue. At this betrayal, thousands of black ex-slaves and free *gens de couleur* leave French forces again, as do Dessalines and Christophe, for the final time, October. Pétion and Boyer, Rigaud's free *gens de couleur* lieutenants, will join Dessalines and Christophe.

Through trickery, Leclerc sends Louverture to France. He is imprisoned in the mountain Château de Joux where he dies April 7, 1803.

But French forces in Saint-Domingue dwindle down to 8,000 disease-weakened men as British naval blockade intercepts convoys of reinforcements, food and munitions. Each side engages in massacres, with Leclerc killing 1,000 black troops he suspects of mutiny by dumping them from ships. A still-loyal black general is drowned with his family.

Fearing yellow fever, Leclerc takes refuge on Tortuga only to die of the disease Nov. 1. His wife, Napoleon's sister Pauline, is by his side. Leclerc is replaced by Donatien-Marie-Joseph de Vimeur, vicomte de Rochambeau (and son of Washington's ally at Yorktown).

1803

Ohio Joins Union, Free

Ohio becomes the 17th state, March 1. The new state constitution continues Northwest Ordinance ban on slavery. However, it also denies blacks the vote, which will be the case in many of the new Northwest states.

In 1804, new state legislature passes "Black Laws" restricting rights of free blacks. Every "black and mulatto person" must produce legal certification of free status, which is then recorded by courts and presented to would-be employers.

Laws also impose fines on anyone harboring runaway slaves (many cross Ohio river from Virginia and Kentucky) and directs sheriffs to hold suspected

runaways for anyone proving himself their “lawful owner.” But kidnapping of suspected runaways without due process is punishable by larger, \$1,000 fines.

An 1807 law requires blacks entering the state to post \$500 bond to guarantee “good behavior.” Enforcement is said to be “episodic and arbitrary.”

1803

Britain Again at War

Britain declares war on Napoleon, May 18, after only a year of peace. This eliminates possibility that Napoleon will attempt to rescue beleaguered French army in Saint-Domingue, which is soon blockaded by Royal Navy.

1803

Dessalines Defeats French

Desperate to stave off defeat, Rochambeau seeks to terrorize Saint-Domingue rebels with 600 Cuban pit bulls trained to attack black people. French ultimately lose at Battle of Vertières, near Le Cap, at hand of Dessalines, Nov. 13.

Rochambeau, cut off from supplies, agrees to surrender his forces and naval ships to British fleet offshore. The remaining 7,000 French soldiers depart under British custody by mid-December, leaving behind their wounded, who are drowned by Dessalines’ men.

Rochambeau is taken aboard a British frigate and is interned in England for nine years. French are thus finally defeated in Saint-Domingue by combined forces of ex-slaves and free people of color, with assistance from the Royal Navy in the final year.

1803

Fever Spreads to Santo Domingo

The yellow fever that decimated French troops in Saint-Domingue spreads east to Spanish end of Hispaniola.

1803

Refugees Flee to Cuba

Ships carry refugees—whites, free people of color and some still-enslaved blacks—from carnage in Saint-Domingue to Santiago de Cuba, where mixed-race people are threatened with enslavement under Spanish law. But other refugees are welcomed for their sugar-plantation and refining knowledge.

1803

U.S. Buys Louisiana

Louisiana Purchase gives U.S. control of New Orleans, Mississippi and Missouri rivers, and vastly expands U.S. territorial claims (although actual control remains in hands of scores of Indian tribes), signed April 30. Pres. Jefferson’s envoys, Robert Livingston and James Monroe, negotiate \$15 million price with Napoleon, whose interest in America is fading, thanks to the bloody losses on Saint-Domingue and to his need for cash to support possible invasion of Britain.

Spain formally turns over upper Louisiana territory to France, March 9, 1804, in St. Louis. France turns it over to the U.S. March 10.

1803

Igbo Escapees Choose Death

Seventy-five Igbo slaves purchased in Savannah, GA, take control of coastal schooner carrying them to St. Simon's island plantations, May. They drown captors and submerge boat in creek. Seeing no possible escape as pursuers close in, they deliberately walk into swamp to drown rather than be re-enslaved; only a few are pulled out.

1803

Huge Nugget Sets Off Rush

First U.S. gold rush begins with reports of a 28-pound nugget found on North Carolina farm of John Reed, northwest of Charlotte. Stream mining superceded by lode mining on area's small farms. Mining here drops off even before larger Georgia gold rush erupts in 1828.

1803

Denmark Bans Slave Trade

Denmark is first European nation to ban slave imports to its Caribbean colonies and exports from its Gold Coast factories (when a 1792 royal decree finally takes effect). But slavery itself continues in Danish West Indies (St. Thomas, St. John and St. Croix).

1804

'Gradual Emancipation' in New Jersey

New Jersey adopts gradual emancipation (20% of Bergen County population is still enslaved), the last Northern state to do so. Many people are sold to Southern plantations. Sixteen persons are still indentured until freed by 13th Amendment in 1865.

1804

Lewis & Clark to Pacific

Lewis and Clark expedition departs May 14 to travel up Missouri, over Rockies and down Snake and Columbia rivers to survey Louisiana Purchase. Party of 40-plus includes Clark's black slave, York, and is assisted by Sacagawea, a 16-year-old Shoshone who translates and guides. Expedition returns to St. Louis, Sept. 23, 1806.

1804

Republic of Haiti Declared

Saint-Domingue is declared the Republic of Haiti (taking the Taíno name) Jan. 1 by Dessalines, who soon directs the massacre of most of the remaining whites and any others suspected of aiding the French and abetting

slavery. Between 3,000 and 5,000 whites and mixed-race people die; Dessalines declares Haiti an all-black nation. **Spared:** Polish soldiers who went over to rebels' side before fighting ended; also, white women who wed black men.

Haiti is second republic in Western Hemisphere, and first independent black state outside Africa. Not recognized as a nation by U.S. (due to opposition of Southern senators) until 1862.

Dessalines is declared Emperor Jacques I, Sept. 2. His attempt to oust French from neighboring Santo Domingo fails, 1805, and they permit return of slavery to eastern Hispaniola.

Even if plantations could be quickly rehabilitated, Haiti's major sugar markets are cut off by embargoes on the part of France and slave-holding U.S., and by long British blockade of Napoleonic Europe. Haiti is never able to compete with the new sugar leaders: Brazil and Cuba. The hated plantations fade in favor of small-farm peasant production of sugar cane.

Tension and conflict between descendants of black ex-slaves and descendants of mixed-race elite continue to this day.

Voluminous Death: (Estimated over 13 years of fighting, with a large percentage of deaths attributed to disease): British, 15,000; French, 75,000; white colonists, 25,000; blacks and free people of color, a staggering 200,000. Many thousands of whites and free people of color flee to U.S., to other Caribbean lands and to Europe.

Thus, population is reduced more than 40% from estimated 1789 total of 556,000 (500,000 black slaves, 32,000 white Europeans and 24,000 free people of color and free blacks). The cost of freedom is very great, much greater than that of the bloody American Revolution, in hard numbers and especially in percent of population. By that measure, Haiti's revolution far exceeds the bloodiness of even the American Civil War.

In the U.S. South, massacres in Haiti are frequently cited as a reason slaves cannot be freed. Abolitionists argue danger posed by trapped people is far greater than that posed by those legally free.

1804

Jefferson Withholds Recognition

Pres. Jefferson, who first supports French against Louverture (1801, when Louisiana negotiations began), then declares U.S. neutral in Saint-Domingue uprising (1802), now refuses to recognize the new republic.

The trade embargo imposed by Congress, which fears Haitian independence will inspire slave revolts in the U.S., is short-lived, however.

Note: Jefferson's predecessor, John Adams, and Alexander Hamilton both publicly supported Louverture.

1804

Napoleon, Emperor

Napoleon crowns himself Emperor of the French, then crowns Joséphine empress, as Pope Pius VII looks on at Notre Dame Cathedral, Dec. 2. This is

one month after French approve establishing the empire with Napoleon as its leader by a 99.9% referendum margin.

Note: His wife of eight years was born Marie Josèphe Rose Tascher de La Pagerie in 1763 on Martinique to a military family soon to lose its sugar-plantation wealth to a hurricane.

1804-1808

Sokoto Caliphate: 2 Million Slaves

Islamic jihad, mounted by Fulani people under Usman dan Fodio (who also claims Arab heritage), takes command of Hausa states and the remnants of the Bornu empire (both accused of insufficient devotion), and transforms them into the Sokoto Caliphate.

This loose confederation of 30 emirates boasts a population of 10 million and eventually extends from present-day Burkina Faso to Cameroon, including most of present-day southern Niger and northern Nigeria.

These intra-African wars generate large numbers of captives for the slave trade, most of whom are taken to Brazil. These include significant numbers of Muslims who create *madrasas* in Bahia to maintain Islam.

The caliphate is credited with substantial economic growth in 19th century, much of it on backs of perhaps 2 million mostly non-Muslim war captives who work on cotton, indigo, grain and rice plantations laid out around small *ribat* forts and larger cities. They include a high percentage of women, many taken as concubines.

Many of these slaves can work toward freedom by converting to Caliphate's brand of Islam. Slavery also mitigated by right to own and work property, rules against poor treatment and absence of racial connotations.

1805

1805

Trafalgar Seals Naval Domination

Adm. Horatio Nelson leads a smaller British fleet to a massive victory over 33 French and Spanish ships in Battle of Trafalgar off Spain, Oct. 21. Insures that Britain will dominate the seas through 10 more years of war, and largely severs France's connections with Caribbean colonies. Nelson dies of his wounds.

1805-1807

Pike Explorations

U.S. Lt. Zebulon Pike ascends Mississippi from St. Louis, and negotiates land purchase of future Fort Snelling (present-day Minneapolis) from Dakota people, Sept. 21, 1805. Ascending further, he determines present-day Leech Lake to be Mississippi's source.

Second expedition departs St. Louis July 15, 1806 (just weeks before return of Lewis and Clark) to find headwaters of Arkansas and Red rivers. He fails to summit present-day Pike's Peak in Rockies, then heads south, only to be seized by

Spanish authorities and taken to Santa Fe. Pike and his men are ultimately released into Louisiana at Natchitoches, July 1, 1807.

1800s

Vodou, Santería, Candomblé Arise

As new waves of enslaved arrive in Americas in the century's first half, syncretic African religions gain many adherents in Brazil's Bahia (Candomblé), on Cuba (Santería) and in many other Caribbean colonies.

Vodou, which helps unify rebelling slaves in Saint-Domingue, gains strength after Haitian independence is declared. Vodou reflects religious beliefs of Fon people in Benin; Santería is based on Yoruba beliefs; and Candomblé is split into *terreiros* (temples) respectively devoted to Nagô (Yoruba), Jeje (Fon and Ewe people) and Angola (Bantu peoples).

African *orixás* (the deities who interact with adherents) are echoed by the Catholic saints in the view of many followers.

Maroon communities on Jamaica practice Kumfu, related to Akan (Gold Coast) traditions.

1806

Europe Turns to Sugar Beets

Sugar-cane volume to Europe is sharply reduced by the British blockade of Napoleon and France, declared May 16.

Two results: Lower overall demand for West Indies sugar cane, and rapid development of sugar-beet industry in Europe, particularly in France (with the endorsement of Napoleon). A German chemist, Andreas Marggraf, discovered in 1747 that their roots hold sucrose.

1806

Royal Navy Seizes U.S. Sailors

British blockaders seize as many as 1,000 U.S. ships in European waters. Even when ships are not seized, the Royal Navy, constantly short of crewmen, impresses many American sailors at sea, approximately 10,000 between 1803 and 1812.

In retaliation, but hoping to avoid war, Congress in 1807 passes an embargo on all foreign trade, including via American ships. This is not successful; U.S. exports plunge from \$108 million to \$22 million, smugglers flourish and British impressment policies continue.

1806

Abolitionists Win Seats

Abolition of the slave trade becomes an election issue in Britain, bringing more abolitionists into House of Commons, including former soldiers and naval officers who bear witness to horrors of slavery and slave revolts in Saint-Domingue and elsewhere in the West Indies.

1806**Haiti Divided**

Dessalines (Emperor Jacques I) is assassinated near Port-au-Prince, Oct. 17, 1806 after many officers turn against him, disenchanted with his bloody but unsuccessful invasion of Santo Domingo.

The new nation soon divides. In the mostly black north, Henri Christophe is elected president, but eventually crowns himself king. In the south, where the mixed *gens de couleur* prevail, Alexandre Pétion is elected president, 1807, with the support of Jean-Pierre Boyer.

1807**Parliament Bans Slave Trade**

In Britain, William Grenville, the new prime minister, wins passage of Wilberforce's Abolition of the Slave Trade Act in the House of Lords, before it carries, 283-16, in the Commons, Feb. 23.

Thus the parliament of the leading slave-trading nation now forbids slaves to be carried in British ships, the result of years of activity by Wilberforce, the prime mover, and many other abolitionists, including key support from Pitt and Fox (both now dead) and finally Grenville. William IV's royal assent is received March 25. First enforcing warships are assigned to West Africa Squadron.

King of Bonny (in present-day Nigeria) writes Parliament to complain. He eventually makes due with new trade in palm-oil products.

But Wilberforce does not press for slavery's abolition, hoping that banning the trade will cause the institution to wither. It is much later, in the late 1820s, that he joins the call for total emancipation.

Slave master support? Opposition from big plantation owners is not so loud; some like the idea that new British colonies—Trinidad and Guiana—are now barred from importing more slaves and thus from producing more sugar to compete with Jamaica.

1807**U.S. Bans Slave Trade**

U.S. Congress passes Act Prohibiting Importation of Slaves. Most Southerners in Congress support it, March 2, as it increases value of present slave population in the still-permitted domestic slave trade. Pres. Jefferson signs it. It goes into effect Jan. 1, 1808, earliest date allowed for such a ban under Constitution (Article I, Section 9).

Records indicate that more than 1 million enslaved people will be transported within the U.S. over the next five decades, the great majority going from the Upper South states of Virginia and North Carolina to Lower South states of Mississippi, Alabama, Louisiana and Texas.

Such sales and transfers are dreaded because they frequently involve the permanent breakup of families, and because, for many, it is very psychologically disturbing to be moved from a plantation within a few miles of free states to one buried hundreds of miles deep in the system.

1807**Last Slaver to Jamaica**

Last legal British slave ship, *Kitty's Amelia*, departs Liverpool under Capt. Hugh Crow, July, for Bunce Island (Sierra Leone) where 277 slaves are boarded. Voyage to Jamaica via Barbados takes 12 weeks. Forty-four blacks die, as well as 23 of the crew of 43. Cargo on return leg to Liverpool: Beeswax, palm oil, elephant ivory, rum, sugar, coffee; with a stop at Madeira for wine.

1807**Slave Trade Shifts**

Basic Europe-Africa-Americas-Europe triangular trade, which peaked at around 4,700 voyages in 1763, is now exceeded by back-and-forth Americas-Africa-Americas slave traffic, which tops 3,000 voyages. The latter account for an ever-greater share into 1830s, although total slave voyages decline steadily from that point into 1860s.

This reflects impact of Haitian revolution and Napoleonic wars, enforcement of the slave-trade ban by the Royal Navy and slow, but steady, progress of abolition in the Americas.

1807**Royal Portuguese Flee to Brazil**

Napoleon, determined to stop Portugal's trade support of Britain, invades with French and Spanish forces which enter Lisbon Nov. 30.

They miss the royal family by less than a day. Queen Maria I, Prince Regent João and thousands of aristocrats and government officials are bound for Brazil in a large fleet escorted by the Royal Navy. They eventually converge on Rio de Janeiro.

In 1808, Napoleon also turns on his ally, Spain, forcing the abdication, May 6, of Charles IV and then of his son, Fernando VII, imprisoning both. Napoleon then installs his brother, Joseph Bonaparte, as king of Spain.

Spanish colonies maintain loyalty to Fernando, but grant more power and status to *criollos*, which will lead to independence movements.

The Peninsular War, which runs into 1814, distracts Spanish colonial administrators, aiding drive for reforms in American colonies, which eventually leads to independence of larger colonies and a new willingness to end slavery in Latin America.

1808**Many Smuggled Despite Ban**

The U.S. ban of slave trade goes into effect Jan. 1. Enforcement is spotty and periodic at first; some historians estimate that as many as 50,000 enslaved are smuggled into U.S. in the following decades, mostly through Florida and Texas before they become states.

Still, the great majority of slaves sold in the U.S. from this point on are indeed born in the U.S. and transported interstate, by sea or over land.

At the same time, there is considerable evidence that a large number of

slave-smuggling ships are built in New York and New England. Their voyages (mainly from Africa to the Caribbean and Brazil) are frequently financed through New York banks.

1808

Sierra Leone, Slave Refuge

Britain declares Sierra Leone a crown colony. Many Africans freed by Royal Navy from now-proscribed slave ships are brought here to start new lives. Population is already dominated by Jamaican Maroons who arrived in 1800 and snuffed out opposition of original Nova Scotian Black Loyalists.

1808

French Ousted from Santo Domingo

In Santo Domingo, Spanish landowners and residents led by Juan Sánchez Ramírez defeat French near El Seibo, Nov. 7. With help from a Royal Navy squadron, they overthrow French governor and restore Spanish control, July 9, 1809.

But this leads to a resurgence of slavery, soon to total about 30,000 in a population of 105,000, during a final 12 years as a Spanish colony. That will end when Haiti invades in 1822.

1809

Cuba Ejects Saint-Domingue Refugees

More than 9,000 refugees from Saint-Domingue, who had fled to Cuba early in the uprising, are expelled by Spanish authorities and sent to New Orleans. They include whites, free people of color and black slaves, in roughly equal numbers, and double the New Orleans population. The black portion of the population rises to 63%, greater than that of Charleston. A thousand more arrive from Cuba the following year.

Spanish authorities on Cuba acted against these French colonial refugees following Napoleon's invasion of Spain.

1809

British Take French, Dutch Islands

British fleet under Adm. Alexander Cochrane lands 10,000 men to take Martinique, February.

Cochrane repeats with capture of Guadeloupe, the last West Indies colony still in French hands, February 1810. The Dutch islands of Sint Maarten, Sint Eustatius and Saba also surrender to British.

Martinique and Guadeloupe are returned to France in 1814 after the abdication of Napoleon.

1809

Lincoln Born in Kentucky

Abraham Lincoln is born Feb. 12 on his father's Sinking Spring farm near

Hodgenville in central Kentucky. He will be the first president born outside of the original 13 colonies.

1810

1810

U.S. Enslaved Exceed 1 Million

U.S. Census: total population, 7.24 million; slaves, 1.19 million (16.5%) or double the estimated number in 1770. Free blacks, 186,000.

Free blacks make up more than 10% of Upper South's black population, compared to less than one percent in 1782. Delaware's black population is nearly three-quarters free. According to Peter Kolchin, *American Slavery: 1619–1877*.

1810

Portugal Bows to Slave-Trade Ban

Britain negotiates agreement with war-ally Portugal calling for gradual abolition of its slave trade in the South Atlantic. Allows Royal Navy's West Africa Squadron to police suspected Portuguese slavers as well as enemy French ships.

But it will be many decades before the Portuguese completely end their participation.

1810

Whydah's Brazilian 'Chacha'

As British crack down on slave trade, local merchants become more prominent. Soon famous on the Slave Coast is Francisco Felix de Sousa, born in Brazil's Bahia of Portuguese descent. Working with demanding Brazilian slavers, he moves into old Portuguese factory in Whydah and soon dominates slave-trading.

He helps King Ghezo gain the throne of Dahomey in 1818 and in return is named "Chacha" to oversee slave trade along entire coast. His customers gain access to thousands of captives annually, supplied by the constantly warring Ghezo.

De Sousa has several wives, including local princesses, many mistresses and more than 80 children before his death in 1849. His descendants play central roles in large, ongoing Afro-Brazilian communities, in the drive for independence and, to this day, in Benin politics.

1810

Mexico: Cry for Independence

Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla, a maverick *criollo* Catholic priest, rings church bell in Dolores, a small city northwest of Mexico City, and calls for independence and the freeing of prisoners, Sept. 16. Partly in response to 1808 ouster of a *criollo*-friendly viceroy by Spanish-born *peninsulares*. This is the beginning of 11 years of war ending in Mexico's liberation from Spain.

Despite Hidalgo's capture and execution, July 30, 1811, José María Morelos, a *mestizo* priest, rebuilds insurrection in the south before he is captured and

executed in 1815. Guerrilla warfare follows with most *mestizos* in revolt and criollos divided between the rebels and the peninsulares supporting the crown.

1811

Uprisings March on New Orleans

Insurrection sees as many as 125 slaves set out from German Coast sugar plantations on the Mississippi (including a number owned by Jean-Noël Destréhan and James Brown, both to become U.S. senators after statehood) to march on New Orleans, Jan. 8. The crowd swells to 500 by day's end. Several rebel leaders, including Charles Deslondes, are said to have been brought from Saint-Domingue by refugee white owners; but this is not confirmed. Two white men die (no more) and five plantation manors burn, as well as sugar mills and crops.

Confronted by militia, 45 blacks are killed, more are hunted down and shot, and another 44 are tried, and hanged or shot by firing squad, with heads displayed on pikes. Three-day slave revolt is possibly the largest in U.S. history.

1811

Indians Retreat from Tippecanoe

In Battle of Tippecanoe, Shawnee and other Indians led by Tecumseh's brother, Tenskwatawa (The Prophet), are fought off by soldiers under William Henry Harrison, governor of Indiana Territory, Nov. 7. Fewer than 70 killed on either side, but Indians retreat and troops burn their food stores and village, Prophetstown (near present-day Lafayette, IN).

British support for Tecumseh and his confederation of warriors is cited in U.S. declaration of war on Britain on June 18, 1812. It's the nation's first such declaration, voted by Congress and signed by Pres. James Madison.

1811

First Steamboat Descends Mississippi

New Orleans, the first Mississippi steamboat, is launched at Pittsburgh and departs for New Orleans, Oct. 20. Robert Fulton and Robert Livingston are the designers, and Nicholas Roosevelt is the builder, with most machinery hauled overland from New Jersey.

Enterprise is first steamboat to successfully run upriver from New Orleans to Louisville, 1815. *Zebulan M. Pike* is first to go upriver to St. Louis, 1817. *Independence* is first to navigate Missouri to Chariton river, 1819.

Steam power makes it possible to overcome current; previously, most cargo and passengers ran only downriver. Few flatboats ever return upstream for any distance, but their crews can now ride steamboats back. Hindrances include Ohio rapids near Louisville and Des Moines rapids on Mississippi near Keokuk. *Virginia* is the first steamboat to navigate the latter (at high water) to reach Fort Snelling (St. Paul, MN), 1823.

Development of river towns, including Cincinnati, Louisville and St. Louis accelerates. By the 1830s more than 1,200 riverboats are navigating the western rivers and carrying increasing volumes of cotton to New Orleans.

Drawbacks: Riverbank trees are quickly cut down for fuel, undermining

banks; floods and channel migration are thus more frequent. Also, poorly designed and overworked boilers often explode, killing an estimated 7,000 by 1853.

Slaves are brought from the Upper South to Mississippi plantations by steamboat. Many more are carried from the Chesapeake to New Orleans via the Gulf by ship, sold there and taken upriver on steamboats to plantations. Perhaps as many as 4,500 blacks will work on the river boats themselves, 1,500 of them free men.

1811-1812

Earthquakes Shake River Towns

New Madrid Earthquakes (estimated from M 7.0 to 8.6) and aftershocks shake up Mississippi Valley from north of St. Louis to Chickasaw Bluffs (present-day Memphis), Dec. 16, Jan. 23 and Feb. 7 with many St. Louis buildings collapsing and town of New Madrid destroyed.

Warriors in Tecumseh's confederation attribute quakes to powers of his brother, The Prophet.

1811

Rio's Infamous Wharf

Valongo Wharf opens in Rio de Janeiro. Over the next 20 years, it is the entry point for perhaps 900,000 enslaved Africans, most of them from Angola, Kongo and Mozambique. Also here are slave-auction blocks, a quarantine station, and the Cemetery of Pretos Novos, where many thousands who die of disease are buried.

1812

U.S. Gives Up Detroit

U.S. forces surrender Detroit to Tecumseh and British Gen. Isaac Brock, Aug. 16, and fail in attempted invasion of Ontario at Queenston Heights, Oct. 13, near the Niagara border. British aided there by Mohawk chiefs.

1812

Louisiana Joins Union, Slave

Louisiana joins Union as the 18th state, with slavery permitted to continue.

1812

Cuba: Sugar and Insurrection

Slave revolts, led by José Antonio Aponte (a free black militia corporal of Yoruba descent), erupt on plantations near Havana. Militia suppresses rebels, arresting hundreds of enslaved people; Aponte and other leaders are executed.

Background: From 1790 to 1805, Cuba welcomed many refugee whites from Saint-Domingue (with their expertise in sugar refining and their slaves) but is less generous toward free refugees of color.

More land is dedicated to sugar cane, tens of thousands more slaves are brought in from Africa, and Cuba is soon outproducing declining Haiti. Even

after Spain signs treaty with Britain banning slave trade as of 1820, Cuba slave population continues to expand, from 39,000 in the 1770s to 600,000 in the 1840s.

1812

New York Establishes Schools

New York State establishes permanent system of public schools organized by district with some support from taxes and state land sales, but most from parent-paid fees.

1812

St. Vincent Eruption

La Soufrière erupts on St. Vincent, killing 34 slaves on several north-end plantations, April 27-29.

1812

Napoleon's Russian Disaster

Napoleon invades Russia with 500,000-man Grand Armée, June 24, fights Battle of Borodino (the bloodiest of his career), Sept. 7, and enters Moscow a week later. City is set ablaze by Russians that night. Only 10,000 of Napoleon's army get back to their Nieman river (Lithuania) starting point, December, and many of these die before spring.

Fifteen months and several defeats later (particularly at October 1813 Battle of Leipzig), Napoleon abdicates.

1813

Americans Burn York

American army and naval force attacks capital of Upper Canada (present-day Toronto), taking town and fort, April 27. But commander Zebulon Pike and 37 others die when departing British and Ojibwe allies blow up magazine.

Americans destroy the fort, loot some homes, set fire to the Government House and legislative assembly building, and withdraw 2 weeks later with captured artillery.

British cite destruction of York (and 1814 U.S. burning of Port Dover on Lake Erie) when they burn the Capitol in Washington 16 months later.

1813

Tecumseh Coalition Defeated

Battle of the Thames sees Harrison's U.S. forces defeat Tecumseh's Indian confederacy in Ontario, 75 miles east of Detroit, Oct. 5. Tecumseh and his war leader, Roundhead, are killed.

1813

Mexican Declaration of Independence

Revolutionary Congress of Chilpancingo, organized by José María Morelos, declares independence from Spain and primacy of Catholic religion, and asserts

that "slavery is proscribed forever as well as distinctions of caste," Nov. 6.

But reinforced royal forces capture, try and execute Morelos two years later. A new leader, Vicente Guerrero, who has African ancestry, turns to guerrilla warfare to continue the insurgency.

1813

Slave Factory Shut Down

British Gov. Charles William Maxwell of Sierra Leone sends force to shut down slave factory at Cape Mesurado (future site of Monrovia in Liberia). Ships seized, slaves freed and British factory owners Robert Bostock and John McQueen sentenced to 14 years in New South Wales by vice-admiralty court in Freetown.

1814

Creek War Ends

After many sharp skirmishes, Creek War between Red Stick Creek (allied with British) and Lower Creek (allied with U.S.) ends with Gen. Andrew Jackson leading victory over Red Stick at Horseshoe Bend on Alabama's Tallapoosa river, March 27. Allied Creek still forced to cede 22 million acres in Georgia and Alabama (Treaty of Fort Jackson, Aug. 9). Red Stick leaders flee into Florida.

1814

Napoleon to Elba

Surrounded by enemies, and with the French disillusioned and exhausted, Napoleon, 45, is forced to abdicate at Fontainebleau, April 6. He is given the island of Elba, a guard and a pension.

A large contingent of British ships and troops soon deploys to Canada and to the new North American base at Bermuda, as plans to attack the U.S. via Lake Champlain, Chesapeake Bay and New Orleans develop.

1814

Ex-Slaves Help Torch Washington

British Adm. Alexander Cochrane offers freedom to slaves escaping U.S. masters, April. More than 4,000 gain Cochrane's Tangier Island base in Chesapeake Bay, in largest U.S. slave emancipation before Civil War.

Two hundred ex-slave Colonial Marines help rout American defenders and burn Washington, including Capitol and 14-year-old Executive Mansion, Aug. 24-25. They also take part in attack on Fort McHenry, September. At war's end, 2,600 of these ex-slaves resettle in Nova Scotia; 700 others go to Bermuda, and later to Trinidad.

Francis Scott Key's "Star-Spangled Banner," inspired by the defense of McHenry, asserts that "No refuge could save the hireling and slave/ From the terror of flight, or the gloom of the grave," referring to Britain's mercenary troops and black marines. The line is in the third stanza, rarely sung.

1814

Lake Champlain: British Defeat

A small American squadron built on the Vermon shore and led by Thomas Macdonough defeats British ships off Plattsburgh, NY, Sept. 11, ending the threat of invasion down the lake toward Albany. This vastly improves position of American peace negotiators in Ghent.

1815

1815

Anti-War Federalists Fall

New England Federalists who oppose “Mr. Madison’s War” meet in Hartford, CT, and call for amendments to U.S. Constitution to remove three-fifths count of slaves (which would reduce slave-state political power) and to require two-thirds majority of Congress for declarations of war and admission of new states, Jan. 5.

Instead, the anti-war tone discredits Federalists, leading to their demise as a political force.

1815

Jackson Defends New Orleans

Battle of New Orleans, Jan. 8, 18 days after Treaty of Ghent is signed, which returns the two nations to status quo before war. This includes return of captured section of Maine to the U.S.

Gen. Jackson leads outnumbered U.S. forces (including 462 free black volunteers) to lopsided victory over British Gen. Pakenham and Adm. Cochrane.

Americans are generally happy with the end of the war, demonstrated in the lopsided victory of James Monroe (Virginia), Madison’s heir apparent, in the presidential election of 1816 in which he wins 16 of the 19 states.

1815

Napoleon’s Last Stand

Battle of Waterloo ends Napoleon’s 100-day comeback bid, June 18. Combined casualties of British, Prussian, allied and defeated French are 50,000 killed, wounded and missing. King Louis XVIII is returned to French throne and wars that have convulsed Europe for most of the past 100 years finally end. But ideals of French Revolution will surge again.

1815

U.S. Wins Algiers’ Agreement

Large U.S. squadron under Stephen Decatur threatens bombardment of Algiers which, with other Barbary states, had returned to seizure of U.S. ships and sailors during War of 1812. Dey of Algiers agrees to release 10 captive Americans, pay \$10,000 and end all tribute demands, June 30.

In 1816, a British-Dutch fleet bombards Algiers, Aug. 27, to enforce a new treaty, win freedom for 1,083 enslaved Christians and end, finally, Barbary piracy. In 1830, Algiers is seized by France, the beginning of colonization.

1815**Vienna: Abolish Pact Sought**

At Congress of Vienna, British pressure Spain, Portugal, France and the Netherlands to abolish slave trade, although Spain and Portugal, British allies in the war, are permitted several years of continued slaving south of equator to “replenish” labor supplies.

Agreement broadens mandate of Royal Navy anti-slavery patrols. But new Mixed Commission Courts are rarely tough on slavers and “equipment clause” is not applied until 1830s. U.S. continues to refuse British anti-slaver patrols permission to board U.S.-flagged ships.

1815**Puerto Rican Planters Avoid Ban**

Spanish crown grants Puerto Rican planters right to import slaves from non-Hispanic Caribbean islands (but not directly from Africa) despite anti-slaver promises to Britain. This rewards Puerto Rican Creoles for their loyalty during colonial revolutions in New Spain and South America.

Between 1790 and 1815, island’s slave population more than doubles to 20,000.

But slaves here have right to buy their freedom, and the free African population is consistently estimated to be greater than the enslaved.

1815**Captain Writes of His Enslavement**

Capt. James Riley and the crew of *Commerce*, an American brig, are shipwrecked on Moroccan coast, August. They are taken captive by Saharawi hunters who reduce them to slaves, beat and starve them. They endure a harrowing desert march of hundreds of miles to Mogador. The British consul there, William Willshire, pays their ransom from a special fund.

Back in Connecticut, Riley writes a book very much from the enslaved’s point of view, and works for the abolition of black slavery.

Years later, Abraham Lincoln says Riley’s 1817 book, best-known as *Sufferings in Africa*, is one of three works that most shaped his political views, especially on slavery. The others are the Bible and *Pilgrim’s Progress*.

1815**550 Slaves Freed**

HMS *Comus* captures seven Spanish and Portuguese slave ships at Duke Town (Calabar, present-day Nigeria), March. Most of the 550 slaves freed are Igbo.

1816**Harsh Weather Follows Eruption**

Year Without a Summer. The April 1815 eruption of Mount Tambora (Indonesia)—world’s greatest in recorded history—leads to vast amounts of atmospheric dust interrupting sunlight and the coldest temperatures recorded in Europe between

1766 and today. Food shortages in Europe and Asia result in famine, disease, protest marches, riots.

North America experiences crop failures in colder regions, freezing temperatures into the summer and high food prices. Many hard-pressed New Englanders migrate into relatively open western New York, including Joseph Smith, who will become the Mormon prophet.

1816

Cuffe Brings Blacks to Freetown

Paul Cuffe, free, mixed-race (African father, Wampanoag mother) shipbuilder and captain from Westport, MA, arrives at Freetown, Sierra Leone, Feb. 3, with nine families of free American blacks (including 20 children) and considerable supplies, in hopes of supporting British colony's black population with trade.

On Cuffe: He first visited Sierra Leone in 1810, and had been working closely with fellow-Quaker abolitionists in U.S. and England ever since. He was perhaps the first African-American received as a guest to White House—May 2, 1812—convincing Pres. Madison to release his ship and cargo (seized in Newport, RI for violating embargo on eve of war with Britain). Madison expressed great interest in the colony of ex-slaves in Sierra Leone.

1816

Indiana Joins Union, Free

Indiana becomes the 19th state, free under the Northwest Ordinance. The Shawnee, Delaware, Wyandot and four other tribes agree to leave traditional homelands for small reservations in Ohio and Indiana, in 1817 Treaty of Fort Meigs. Most will be moved again, to the Indian Territory, in 1830s.

1816

Colonization Society Founded

American Colonization Society founded by Robert Finley, Presbyterian minister from New Jersey, supported by both Quakers and prominent Virginia slave masters (who worry that free blacks are instigating slave escapes), in Washington, Dec. 21. Dedicated to manumission of slaves and settlement of freed blacks in West Africa.

Society does not believe the expanding population of freed blacks can be integrated into U.S. society. Liberia ultimately created adjoining Sierra Leone, with Cape Mesaduro to be the eventual site of Monrovia. But ACS effort comes to be opposed by most U.S. blacks and eventually by most abolitionists.

Free people of color in U.S.: Rise from 60,000 in 1790 to 320,000 by 1830.

1816

Florida's Negro Fort Destroyed

Some 200 escaped slaves, led by three former Colonial Marines who had fought with British, plus 30 or more Seminole and Choctaw defend the British-built "Negro

Fort" on northern Florida's Apalachicola river against larger U.S. army force, July 27.

Hot shot from a U.S. gunboat ignites the fort's magazine. Explosion kills or wounds most of those inside, including women and children. Survivors are enslaved.

Georgia had urged Gen. Jackson to send U.S. force and Creek allies into Florida, Spanish again, to pursue and punish Seminoles and runaway blacks. Fort's destruction paves way for final withdrawal of Spain from Florida and to the Seminole Wars.

1816

Senegal-Bound Frigate Wrecked

The *Méduse*, carrying a new French governor (Julien-Désiré Schmalz) who will accept return of Île Saint-Louis from the British, runs aground well off Bay of Arguin, July 2. Schmalz and 250 others take to boats, but another 146 men and one woman are piled onto a rough raft with little food and water, and drift for 13 days. A rescue ship finds only 15 men alive, the rest starved to death, or cannibalized and thrown overboard.

"The Raft of the Medusa," painted by Théodore Géricault, 1819, is a pioneering work of the Romantic Movement.

Slave Trade: After seizing Senegal in 1809, the British suppressed the long-vigorous outbound slave trade, particularly that organized by the *Métis* families of Île Saint-Louis. This ban continues under the French who had so agreed in the Treaty of Versailles.

But slavery remains legal within Senegal itself with the Muslim emirate of Trarza raiding the black Waalo kingdom for captives to collect gum arabic.

1816

Ex-Slaves Settle in Trinidad

More than 570 former U.S. slaves who fought in British Adm. Cochrane's Corps of Colonial Marines during War of 1812 accept Britain's offer of transfer from Bermuda and settlement of their families in Trinidad (16 acres per family). Here, as "the Merikens," they introduce rice cultivation and establish towns (including present-day Fifth and Sixth Companies) initially headed by their old sergeants.

1816

Barbados Uprising Impacts Parliament

A slave, Bussa, leads three-day Easter uprising of many hundreds on Barbados. Seventy plantations overrun, fields and mills burn, April 14-16. Rebels are otherwise restrained; only two whites are killed. But more than 120 slaves die in fighting against mounted militia, including Bussa. Later, another 144 executed.

This is first of three significant slave rebellions in British West Indies that abolitionists cite in Parliament with effect. The others, in which rebels also forbear from widespread killing, are in Demerara (Guyana), 1823, and on Jamaica, 1831 (see below).

1817**Mississippi joins Union, Slave**

Mississippi joins Union as the 20th state; slavery permitted.

1817**Seminole War Breaks Out**

U.S. attack on a Red Stick Creek village draws Creek retaliation on an army supply boat on Apalachicola river (with more than 40 soldiers and family members killed) setting off First Seminole War, November.

Gen. Jackson targets Creek, who become known as Seminole and escaped black slaves (later called Black Seminoles) in seizing Pensacola and San Marcos, and attacking Suwanee river villages. But most flee to region south of Tampa Bay. Jackson executes two British traders accused of aiding Seminole, 1818. Spain and Britain protest; fighting fizzles.

'**Seminole,**' like "marron" and "maroon," may have evolved from Spanish *cimarrón* for "runaway."

1817**Erie Canal Dig Begins**

New York State begins work on Erie Canal, July 4, to connect Lake Erie at Buffalo, to Hudson River at Albany. It runs 363 miles long, 40 feet wide and 4 feet deep when opened in 1825.

1817**Doctor Describes Kidnappings**

Jesse Torrey, white Philadelphia physician, publishes *A Portrait of Domestic Slavery, in the United States*. He focuses new attention on gangs who kidnap free black families.

1817**Portugal, Spain, Netherlands Bans**

Britain wins Portugal's agreement to end its slave trade north of equator (but permits Angola-Brazil trade to continue) with punishments to be established and enforcement guaranteed by Royal Navy, July 28, 2017.

Similar treaties are signed by Spain, Sept. 23, and by the Netherlands, May 4, 1818, with only a three-year extension on South Atlantic trade for Spain, and no extension for Netherlands.

These fulfill promises made at the Congress of Vienna. Jurisdiction over captured ships is assigned to Mixed Commission Courts established at Freetown, Sierra Leone; Rio de Janeiro, Havana and Surinam.

Stats: Some 80,000 shipborne captives are ultimately freed under these treaties. But many of the 600 ships adjudicated by 1846 are judged to have been seized illegally and are returned to owners. And hundreds of thousands of enslaved are still delivered, under false flags or through outright smuggling, with Brazil and Cuba being the main destinations.

1817**Navy Seizures Restricted**

Le Louis case establishes that British naval vessels cannot search foreign vessels suspected of slaving unless permitted to do so by their respective countries, hampering British efforts to suppress trade. The French slave ship bound from Martinique, was seized the previous year by HMS *Queen Charlotte* of the West Africa Squadron, now expanded to six ships and based at Freetown. Case decided after High Admiralty trial in London, December.

1818**Illinois Joins Union, Free**

Illinois joins the Union as the 21st state, free under the Northwest Ordinance.

1818**Cuban Sugar to U.S. Market**

Cuba continues to expand sugar plantations and slave population, as Spain finally allows it to trade freely with the U.S. and other major sugar markets. Production, at 14,000 tons in 1790, rises to 55,000 tons by 1820.

1818**Chile Wins Independence**

Chile (under Bernardo O'Higgins) and Argentina (led by José de San Martín) defeat Spanish forces at Battle of Maipú, April 5, near Santiago. Seals liberation of Argentina and large parts of Peru as well.

1819**Alabama Joins Union, Slave**

Alabama joins Union as the 22nd state, slavery permitted.

1819**Congress Tightens Restrictions**

U.S. Congress passes legislation stiffening provisions against American participation in the slave trade. U.S. navy sends out ships to patrol U.S. coast and mid-ocean.

1819**Economic Downturn in U.S.**

Financial panic in U.S. is ignited when news arrives from London that cotton prices have fallen 25% (cheaper cotton from India is blamed). Southern plantations suffer first, and then state banks holding their mortgages and then the Second U.S. Bank. Widespread foreclosures, collapsing banks and a sharp increase in poverty in first major U.S. depression. Economic pain is widespread for more than two years.

1819**Florida Sold to U.S.**

Spain, exhausted from war with Napoleon and under great pressure from Latin America independence movements, agrees to cede Florida to the U.S. (which has already taken Mobile and Pensacola in the First Seminole War). The Adams-Onís Treaty, signed Feb. 22, requires U.S. to pay resident claims against Spain up to \$5 million, and to drop claims to parts of Spanish Texas.

A group of Seminole, most of them free blacks now vulnerable to enslavement, flee Cape Florida in 1821 and establish Red Bays community on north end of Bahamas' Andros Island. By 1837, more than 150 sail the 160-mile escape route.

1819

No Trade North of Equator

Portugal bans slave trading north of the equator, but protects trade to Brazil. Britain further expands naval squadron off the West African coast to patrol against slavers.

1819

Blindness on the Middle Passage

Le Rôdeur (The Prowler) of Le Havre boards 160 captives at Bonny, April, and sets course for Guadeloupe (although France officially bans the slave trade). A blinding eye affliction breaks out among the slaves, 36 of whom are sent overboard in a vain attempt to stop the spread.

As the ship nears Guadeloupe, only one of the crew retains sight. They encounter a Spanish slaver, *Leon*. She can offer no help, for her crew and slaves are *all* blind, and the ship lurches along unguided. *Le Rodeur* makes it to Guadeloupe, June 21, her single sighted sailor contracting blindness three days later. *Leon* is never again heard from.

1819

Massina Empire Rises

Djenné falls to a *jihad* led by Seku Amadu, a Fulani, who establishes the Massina empire in the Niger's inland delta region. He is inspired by Sufism and by the Sokoto Caliphate to the east, and is supported by Muslim slaves of previous traditionalist Bambara rulers. Amadu abandons 500-year-old Grand Mosque in favor of less ostentatious structures and establishes a new capital, at Hamdullahi, as well as 600 *madrassas*.

Alcohol, tobacco, music, dancing forbidden under strict Islamic law. Leading a 10,000-man army, Amadu takes Timbuktu in 1825 and is welcomed by scholars there. Massina empire dominates the inland delta and the Niger Bend under Amadu's son and grandson through 1860.

1820

1820

Slave Numbers Jump Despite Ban

U.S. Census: total population, 9.64 million; slaves, 1.54 million (15.6%); free black, 234,000 (2.4%).

Overall U.S. population increased 33%, which includes immigrants. The slave population increased more than 29%, despite a full decade of the U.S. ban on international slave imports.

1820

U.S. Cotton Takes Lead

U.S. surpasses India to become world's leading cotton producer. This is still mostly long-staple cotton grown in Carolina Low Country estuaries.

But a Mexican-seed hybrid of short-staple cotton is developed in the 1820s, which proves considerably more productive per plant, per acre and per enslaved picker, and can be grown inland.

In 1833, Dr. Rush Nutt develops the still more-productive Petit Gulf hybrid, combining Mexican seed with an earlier Tennessee green. The new hybrid, named for the Mississippi river bend at Nutt's Rodney, MS, plantation, is soon generating huge new volumes fed through Mississippi and Alabama cotton gins.

1820

Missouri Compromise Limits Slavery

Missouri Compromise passes Congress, signed by Pres. Monroe, March 6. Maine to enter union free, Missouri slave, with slavery prohibited north of 36° 30" (except Missouri, which will also forbid free blacks and mixed-race people from entry). That appears to ban slavery in the majority of states that could be created from the Louisiana Purchase.

Negotiated by Henry Clay of Kentucky, the House speaker, it turns down the heat on slavery debates until its repeal in the 1850s.

1820

Maine Joins Union, Free

Maine enters Union, March 15, as 23rd state of which 12, including Maine, are free.

1820

Monroe Easily Re-elected

Pres. Monroe is re-elected with no real opposition, thus no campaign required. He takes 81% of the popular vote, and 231 of 232 electoral votes, November. He is last of the line of slave-holding Virginian presidents, beginning with Washington and interrupted only by John Adams's single term.

1820

Slave Trade = Piracy

U.S. law equates slave trading with piracy, punishable by death, May 15. Only one slaver captain is actually ever tried, convicted and executed under the law: Nathaniel Gordon, hanged Feb. 21, 1862, in New York during Civil War.

His ship, the *Erie*, was captured in 1860 off mouth of the Congo river by

USS *Mohican*, with 897 slaves aboard. Slaves, originally bound for Cuba, were freed in Liberia.

1820

A Brief Anti-Slave Patrol

U.S. navy dispatches four vessels to patrol the Caribbean and U.S. coast for slavers. This campaign lasts through the end of the Monroe administration before co-operation with British is broken off and the American squadron recalled.

1820

Haiti Reunited under Boyer

King Henri I (Henri Christophe), unpopular because of his forced-labor policies to maintain sugar production, dies by his own hand with a pistol, Oct. 8, and is buried in his newly completed fortress, Citadelle Laferrière.

Jean-Pierre Boyer presides in separate, southern Republique de Haiti, having succeeded Alexandre Pétion, who died of yellow fever in 1818. Boyer, who will end forced labor in favor of freer but less-productive individual farming, reunites the two Haitian states without any battles.

Boyer benefits from the counsel of his mistress, Marie-Madeleine Lachenais, who previously advised Pétion. All three are *gens de couleur*.

1821

Missouri Enters Union, Slave

Missouri joins Union as 12th slave state, compared to 12 free states, Aug. 10.

Also, U.S. takes control of Florida from Spain under terms of Adams-Onís Treaty of 1819, which requires U.S. to assume \$5 million in claims of U.S. citizens against Spain.

1821

Mexico's Independence Established

Disgruntled, demoralized royalists (soldiers have not been paid), led by Agustín de Iturbide, join with insurgents under Vicente Guerrero. (Re-imposition of a more liberal constitution in Spain helps.) They force Spain's viceroy to capitulate and enter Mexico City unopposed, Sept. 27. Independence of the "Mexican Empire" is declared the next day with a new green-white-red tricolor.

Iturbide is named emperor, but is forced to abdicate in favor of a republic in 1823. Spain seeks to restore authority, but ultimately recognizes Mexican sovereignty by treaty, Dec. 28, 1836. With this, Mexico is the first former colony so recognized by Spain.

1821

Monrovia Refuge Purchased

American Colonization Society, supported by U.S. navy's Robert Stockton, negotiates purchase of Cape Mesurado and adjoining land from Dei and Bassa peoples. This will be site of Monrovia (Pres. Monroe is a member of the ACS) and the beginning of Liberia. ACS transports 4,571 migrants between 1820 and 1843,

but only 1,819 of them are alive in that latter year (thanks to disease and conflicts with local peoples). By 1867, ACS has assisted in 13,000 arrivals.

1821

Cherokee Seek Harmony

Sequoyah introduces a written, syllabic Cherokee language. Cherokees develop judicial system and police force. They and other Southeast tribes acquire black slaves for farms (pre-European contact, these tribes enslaved war captives) and work to harmonize with the white culture. They found New Echota in northwest corner of Georgia, which becomes their capital until their forced removal, 1838.

1821

Lonely Death of Napoleon

Napoleon dies, May 5, on St. Helena Island in the South Atlantic, where he has been held since October 1815. He was 51.

1822

Vesey Revolt Betrayed

Slave insurrection in Charleston is planned by Denmark Vesey, an ex-slave carpenter active in the large AME African Church. Plot is betrayed by two slaves. No whites are hurt. Militia sweeps streets, arresting Vesey and other leaders. Closed-door courts sentence him and 34 others to hanging, and another 31 to deportation; 27 men are acquitted.

Charleston population: 24,780, of which only 10,653 are white. Majority of blacks are slaves, but a sizeable number are freed, like Vesey.

State legislature amends its Negro Seaman Act to jail visiting black sailors until their ships depart port. If captains fail to pay "lodging fees," sailors are to be sold into slavery.

1822

Haiti Absorbs Santo Domingo

Haitian Pres. Jean-Pierre Boyer sends an army of 12,000 to bring all of Hispaniola under his government, February. Boyer fears plans of the Dominicans, who asserted final independence from Spain only two months earlier, to join Gran Columbia; frontier Dominican governors help Boyer's forces.

Haiti (population \pm 800,000, mostly ex-slaves and their descendants) dominates the Spanish side (population 100,000, including perhaps 10,000 slaves who are now emancipated).

This unified government continues to 1844, when Dominican Republic declares independence and successfully defends itself against Haitian armies.

1822

Independence of Brazil

Independence of Brazil is declared by Pedro, eldest son of Portugal's King João VI, who previously returned to Lisbon in the wake of Napoleon's defeat.

The U.S. becomes the first nation to recognize Brazilian independence,

May 26, 1824. After a brief war, Portugal recognizes Empire of Brazil, Aug. 29, 1825, with Britain mediating in favor of Brazil's independence.

In return, Britain wins Brazil's agreement to end importation of slaves and to allow Royal Navy ships to stop suspected slavers, effective 1830. Despite support of Emperor Pedro I, the Brazilian government fails to enforce its new law, and slavers continue to deliver thousands of captives, leading to Britain's Aberdeen Act of 1845.

1823

Court Denies Indian Land Rights

Supreme Court rules against any Indian rights to U.S. land after its "discovery" by European explorers, determining that Spain and Britain took possession upon discovering and claiming land. In *Johnson vs. M'Intosh*, court favors claim to a tract in Indiana bought from the U.S. (which "received" land from Britain), over claim to same land bought from Piankeshaw Indians.

Unanimous decision, written by Chief Justice John Marshall, traces "Doctrine of Discovery" back to Pope Alexander VI's bull of 1493 (see above).

1823

Central America Bans Slavery

Two years after bloodlessly declaring independence from Spain (Sept. 15, 1821), Central American provinces band together into Federal Republic of Central America, which declares an end to slavery. There are relatively few slaves to free; the population is heavily *mestizo*.

Conflicts between liberal *criollos* and conservatives (with the church supporting the latter) lead to civil war (1838-1840) and breakup into present-day Guatemala, Nicaragua, Honduras, Costa Rica and El Salvador.

1823

Slavery Ends in Chile

Slavery abolished in Chile at the direction of Ramón Freire Serrano, supreme director of the revolutionary junta. Chile's enslaved black population never reached more than 2% of the overall population. Indian peoples had been the main source of forced labor under the *encomienda* system.

Also important was that black Argentine freedmen had played a central fighting role in Gen. José de San Martín's Army of the Andes to liberate Chile.

1823

Amelioration Drive Launched

Wilberforce, Clarkson and others launch Anti-Slavery Society (Society for the Mitigation and Gradual Abolition of Slavery Throughout the British Dominions), aimed initially at "amelioration" of worst abuses rather than immediate emancipation, Jan. 31. The hope is that this will reduce conflict and encourage compliance.

More than 70 "ladies associations" play vital role.

1823**Demerara Revolt Stuns British**

As many as 13,000 slaves from 87 coastal sugar plantations take part in uprising in the British colony of Demerara-Essequibo (now Guyana), Aug. 18-20. Rebels are reacting to rumor that colony's governor is suppressing news of emancipation adopted in London. (In fact, proposed new rules limiting slave work hours, prohibiting flogging of female slaves and breaking up of families had been sent to colonies. They were announced in adjoining Berbice, but not in Demerara.)

Population breakdown: 2,500 whites, 2,500 freed blacks, 34,500 African-born slaves, 40,000 locally born slaves, and very few of mixed race. Sir John Gladstone of Liverpool is absentee owner of Success, one of the largest plantations (he acquires three more after rebellion).

Jack Gladstone (given the name of his faraway master) and his father, Quamina, skilled slaves, urge a peaceful strike. While manors are ransacked and some weapons taken, very few whites are killed or hurt. Sizeable military force quickly suppresses outbreak, killing perhaps 100 slaves. The great majority lay down arms. Twenty-seven executed by firing squad, including Quamina; their bodies are hung in chains.

Popular white missionary John Smith, also to be executed for "promoting discontent," dies in jail before reprieve arrives from London. Jack Gladstone sold and deported to Saint Lucia (Sir John may have requested clemency).

Impact: This is the second of three West Indies uprisings that will help persuade Parliament to move toward abolition. The first was on Barbados, 1816 (see above); the third will be on Jamaica, 1831 (see below).

Also, Sir John's teenaged son, William Gladstone, will grow up to serve as Britain's prime minister through four terms.

1824**British Boycott Sugar**

Wilberforce and other abolitionists declare John Smith to be the "Demerara Martyr" and generate a great outcry in Britain as people learn of the rebellion's dimensions and brutal suppression. A mass boycott of sugar consumption follows.

1824**U.S.-Britain Treaty Fails**

Britain and U.S. negotiate treaty, supported by Pres. Monroe, condemning slave trade as piracy and establishing joint procedures for its suppression. U.S. Senate, however, makes a series of amendments and British refuse to sign.

1824**U.S. Blacks Migrate to Haiti**

Several hundred free blacks sail for Haiti from New York, Philadelphia and Baltimore at invitation of its president, Jean-Pierre Boyer, September. The venture is supported by the American Colonization Society. Nearly 6,000 more blacks migrate over the next two years, but find few resources. Perhaps 2,000 eventually move back to the U.S.

Largest group of Americans settle the Samaná peninsula (on the Dominican side), establishing a community which survives into 21st century.

1824

Trinidad: Testing Amelioration

Main elements of British Amelioration program are ordered at first only on Trinidad, a Crown colony with no planter-dominated assembly and a presumably more humane experience under Spain's Código Negro, June.

But hopes that more slaves will be able to marry, buy manumission and testify in court are frustrated year after year. So are Colonial Office directives that corporal punishment of women be eased and Sunday work ended. Plantation masters are totally opposed and the Order in Council lacks means of enforcement.

Attempts to extend amelioration to other Crown colonies and to the even more resistant Assembly colonies (particularly Jamaica and Barbados) fail, leading more in Parliament to accept that speedy emancipation is the only way forward.

1824

British Indies: Sanctuary

British Parliament consolidates and expands laws abolishing slave trade, June 24, closing many loopholes. One new impact: Slaves escaping by boat from non-British possessions to British islands are deemed free and not returned.

Beginning in 1825, dozens of slaves annually flee Dutch Sint Eustatius and Sint Maarten, and Danish Virgin Islands to freedom in nearby Saint Kitts, Anguilla and Tortola.

1824

South American Independence Spreads

Independence of Peru, Venezuela, Colombia and Ecuador insured by Simón Bolívar's victory at Ayacucho in Peru.

1824

Another Gain for Emancipation

Slavery abolished in Central America.

1824

Ashanti Erase British Expedition

On Gold Coast, British force of 500 (including 240 Fante allies) sets out from Cape Coast Castle to punish Ashanti (for a previous clash with Fante and British) and runs into army of 10,000, Jan. 21. British are all but wiped out. Dead include Gov. Charles MacCarthy; his skull ends up as a drinking mug lined with gold.

Two years later, British gather an army of 11,000, including Denkyira and other enemies of the Ashanti, to defend Accra. They repel Ashanti attack in bloody hand-to-hand fighting. An 1831 treaty ends this First Anglo-Ashanti war by declaring the Pra river to be the border.

1825

1825

Second Adams Elected by House

John Quincy Adams (Massachusetts) elected U.S. president by the House after Henry Clay swings support, February. The 1824 election ended with none of the four candidates winning the necessary majority 131 electoral votes: Andrew Jackson, 99 electoral votes (and 153,544 popular votes); Adams, 84 (and 108,740); William Crawford of Georgia was third and Clay was fourth. Adams rewards Clay with appointment to be secretary of state.

Adams, the sixth U.S president, is the second of only two of the first 12 presidents never to have owned slaves; his father was the first.

1825

Antelope Court Frees Most

The *Antelope* case: In 1820, a U.S. revenue cutter seizes *Antelope*, sailing under Venezuelan flag with 281 Africans, most taken earlier from other ships flying the Spanish, Portuguese and U.S. flags. Supreme Court issues unanimous opinion, March 15, freeing most of the surviving slaves.

Result: Of freed slaves, 127 are settled in Liberia in 1827. The ship is restored to owners, along with 30 Africans—chosen by lot—deemed to be Spanish property and destined for slavery in Cuba.

1825

Slave Narrative Hails Constitution

William Grimes, the Runaway Slave, Written by Himself is published in New York. Praises Constitution as “that charter of American liberty.”

1825

Haiti Forced to Pay Ex-Slave Masters

France’s Charles X formally recognizes independence of Haiti, but only after Pres. Jean-Pierre Boyer and Haitians agree to huge 150 million-franc compensation to families of slaveholders killed in the revolution—\$21 billion in 2023 dollars—as a French fleet threatens Port-au-Prince. Haiti also promises to discount sugar shipments to France by 50%. Boyer passes a serf-like *Code Rural* to control agricultural workers and increase production to fund the reparation.

Debt cut back to 90 million francs in 1838, but Haiti’s economy struggles despite Code Rural struggling, is undermined for decades. Last of related loans is paid off in 1947.

1825

Insurrection of Cuban Slaves

On Cuba, an uprising outside of Matanzas ends after plantations burned. The slave population has exploded thanks to vast expansion of sugar and coffee plantations, and to foreign slavers defying British naval patrols.

1825**Humboldt's Cuba, Mexico Essays**

Alexander von Humboldt publishes lengthy, detailed and influential profiles of Cuba and New Spain, laying out history, politics, culture and condemning slavery on Cuba. Based on his tours of 1799-1804.

1825**French Move on Senegal**

Emir of Trarza, north of Senegal river, joins Waalo, a Wolof kingdom to south in besieging French fort at Île Saint-Louis. Emir Muhammad al Habib previously agreed to end raids on Waalo and to marry a Waalo princess to block French.

The emir is beaten back, but French send a large force to enforce security on both sides of the Senegal river. It's a first step toward enlarging the colony from the coast.

1825**Steam Railway Opens**

World's first public railway with steam locomotives begins operating on 25 miles of track between County Durham coalfields and Stockton-on-Tees via Darlington, Sept. 27. George and Robert Stephenson's Locomotion No. 1 pulls 31 wagons of coal and 550 passengers.

Edward Pease, a prominent woolens manufacturer and a Quaker, is the main backer. His brother and son play leading roles in the abolitionist movement, the son, Joseph, becoming the first Quaker to be elected to and seated in Parliament, 1832, and voting for emancipation in 1833. Joseph's daughter, Elizabeth, is a delegate to the World Anti-Slavery Conference, 1840.

1826**Pennsylvania Requires More Proof**

Pennsylvania passes law requiring slave masters and slave hunters to present documents and witnesses to support their claims in fugitive-slave cases (many are bogus), slowing enforcement of federal fugitive-slave laws.

1826**Coffin Family's 'Stations'**

Levi and Catherine Coffin, Quakers from North Carolina, open their new home in Wayne County, IN, to runaway slaves from Kentucky and Virginia. As the system of similar safe houses and secret routes expands throughout the North in the 1840s, it becomes known as the Underground Railroad.

In 1847 the Coffins move to Cincinnati and develop new "stations" there. Their neighbor, Harriet Beecher Stowe, includes a Coffin-like couple in *Uncle Tom's Cabin* (1852). They are believed to have aided more than 3,300 escaping slaves over 20 years in Indiana and Cincinnati.

How many got away? Historians' best guess is between 25,000 and 50,000 escaped to the North, to Canada, or to Mexico and Florida (while the latter

was still Spanish) between 1800 and 1860, according to Henry Louis Gates, Jr. The most optimistic estimate is 100,000.

How many didn't? In the 10 years leading up to the Civil War, as many as 50,000 blacks run for freedom *each year* in the South. Most are young men striking out on their own, not families. Obviously, great majority don't make it.

1826

'Universal Suffrage' in New York

All white male adults granted vote (and no longer required to be taxpayers). Free male blacks also can vote IF they are state residents of at least three years, free of debt and hold at least \$250 in property.

1827

New York: Free Blacks Parade

Blacks celebrate final emancipation in New York State with a parade through New York City, July 5. *Freedom's Journal*, nation's first black newspaper, launched in New York by Samuel Cornish and John Russwurm.

1827

Congress: Pay for Your Jail

Congress declares that black persons suspected of being fugitive slaves are liable to be sold into slavery if they cannot cover cost of their own detention and other legal fees.

1828

Profiting from Domestic Slave Trade

Firm of Franklin and Armfield organized. It becomes largest slave-trading enterprise in the South, operating out of Alexandria, VA, and Natchez, MS. They move an estimated 1,000 slaves annually by foot or ship over their 10 years of business. Each partner accumulates a fortune in excess of a half-million dollars.

Over the next 30 years leading up to the Civil War, Virginia "exports" more than 300,000 slaves, and North Carolina about 100,000, most going to plantations opening in new Lower South and western states.

1828

Jackson Elected President

In a rematch, Andrew Jackson (Tennessee) defeats Pres. Adams in a landslide, Dec. 2. John C. Calhoun (South Carolina) is elected vice president, but will soon be at odds with Jackson. Election marks the wide expansion of the vote to most white men, with many states dropping property requirements.

1828

Savannah Relies on Black Firefighters

Eight years after suffering the worst fire in U.S. history to that date (463 buildings destroyed), Savannah expands its volunteer fire department to 178 enslaved men, 96 free men of color, 17 whites, eight fire engines and 2,000 feet

of hose. Enslaved men receive 12½ cents an hour plus a dollar to the first man reporting to the engine house upon an alarm.

1828

Black Joke Hunts Slavers

HMS *Black Joke* embarks, Jan. 5, on first series of patrols in which she captures a large pirate vessel and runs down 11 slave ships, resulting in freedom for perhaps 2,700 African men, women and children.

Ship was built in Maryland as a two-masted Baltimore clipper, favored by slavers seeking to outrun naval patrols. In 1825, new Brazilian owners named her *Henriquetta* and ran 3,040 slaves to Bahia in six voyages before her capture by HMS *Sybille*, with 569 slaves, Sept. 6, 1827.

Royal Navy renamed her *Black Joke* and assigned her to anti-slave patrol, mainly in Bight of Benin. Largest captures: *Vengador* with 645 slaves, most ever captured by British on a single ship, May 16, 1828; *El Almirante* with 466, Feb. 1, 1829; *Marinerito* with 496 off Fernando Po, April 25, 1831. Most captives were taken to freedom in Sierra Leone.

When decommissioned in 1832, *Black Joke* is praised as the ship "which has done more towards putting an end to the vile traffic in slaves" than any other of the station.

1829

Cincinnati Riots Target Blacks

Alarmed by a surge in its black population, Cincinnati officials say they will enforce Ohio's 1804 Black Laws requiring blacks entering the state to post \$500 "good-behavior" bonds and proof of free status. Those failing to comply would be ordered to leave.

Cincinnati is on the free side of the Ohio river, opposite slave-state Kentucky.

When blacks appeal for delay, a white mob of 200-300 (mostly early Irish immigrants) descends on a river ward, Aug. 15, beating black residents and burning houses over the next six days. Perhaps half of city's 2,250 blacks (who tota no more than 10% of population) eventually leave, many moving to Wilberforce Colony near London, Upper Canada.

Rioting breaks out again in 1836 (abolitionist editor James G. Birney a target; black neighborhood burns, several die). Third Cincinnati riot erupts in 1841 when blacks seek to celebrate anniversary of Britain's Slavery Abolition Act of 1833.

1829

Gold Rushers Invade Cherokee Land

Reports of gold draw thousands of miners to North Georgia ancestral lands of the Cherokee who resent "Great Intrusion." This latest illegal transgression leads, in part, to Indian Removal Act, forced migration of Cherokee and sale of their land by state of Georgia in 40-acre lots to gold prospectors.

More than a million dollars' worth of gold is delivered to Philadelphia

mint through 1838 when a branch mint opens in new town of Dahlonega, GA (the Cherokee word for "yellow").

One of the most productive mines is developed on land bought by Sen. Calhoun of South Carolina and managed by his son-in-law, Thomas Green Clemson (whose will establishes Clemson Agricultural College in 1889 on Calhoun's old South Carolina cotton plantation).

1829

Case for Violence, if Necessary

David Walker, a free black (born to a slave father and free mother in Wilmington, NC) and the Boston contributor to *Freedom's Journal*, publishes "An Appeal to the Coloured People of the World," which advocates an immediate and, if necessary, violent end to slavery. Passionate essay inspires and radicalizes abolitionists.

1829

Mexico's President Ends Slavery

Vicente Guerrero, a hero of war to liberate Mexico, becomes its second president, April 1, thanks to armed support of Antonio López de Santa Anna. He is a son of an Afro-mestizo father (who supported the viceroyalty) and an Indian mother.

During presidency, Mexican forces under Santa Anna defeat the Barrada Expedition at Tampico, the last Spanish attempt at reconquest, July 26-Sept. 10.

Guerrero follows up with decree abolishing slavery throughout Mexico, Sept. 16. Because slavery in most provinces has faded away over decades of intermarriage, the main impact is on American slaveholders settling in Texas. Uncertain of their loyalty, Guerrero exempts Texas from the new ban.

Guerrero is challenged by rebels (supported by establishment landowners) in December and after months of fighting is betrayed to them by an Italian sea captain who kidnaps him in Acapulco. Executed by firing squad, Feb. 13, 1831.

1830

1830

Immigrant Tide Surges

U.S. Census: total population, 12.87 million; slaves, 2.01 million (15.6%); free black, 320,000 (2.5%).

In Louisiana, 51% of population is slave and 13% is free black (attributed to history under French Code Noir). In Mississippi, 48% of population is slave, and less than 1% is free black. South Carolina population is 54% slave, and it will lead in percentage slave through 1860 (when it is 57%).

Immigration in 1820s, 143,000, up more than 100% over 1810s, with increasing numbers from Germany and Ireland. Overall population, including immigrants, is up more than 33% for decade; enslaved population, despite continued ban on imports, is up more than 30%.

1830**Indian Removal Voted**

Pres. Jackson signs Indian Removal Act, May 28 (which passed House by only four votes). Transfers Indian land to Southern states to sell for new white plantations. The Cherokee (northern Georgia), Muscogee/Creek (eastern Alabama), Choctaw (central-east Mississippi), Chickasaw (northern Mississippi) and Seminole (central Florida) will be forced to settle land west of the Mississippi in "exchange."

Besides these "Five Civilized Tribes," Wyandot, Kickapoo, Potawatamie, Shawnee and Lenape (the latter originally from lower Hudson and Delaware river areas) are also affected.

Congressman Davy Crockett (Tennessee) says his vote against the Removal Act, "will not make me ashamed in the Day of Judgment."

1830**Slave-Built Railroads Move Cotton**

South Carolina Canal and Rail Road opens its first six miles of track, from Charleston west toward Hamburg. While Baltimore and Ohio opened a few months earlier with horse-drawn cars, the Carolina line is the nation's first to assign steam locomotives to revenue service with the Best Friend of Charleston, December.

Slaves are leased to lay track through swamps where white workers won't go. But black workers also die at a high rate.

Southern railroads develop quickly to move cotton from inland counties to Charleston, Savannah, Mobile, New Orleans and to Mississippi river ports as well. By 1840 railroads are buying thousands of slaves and leasing thousands more. Blacks will make up much of the rail work force well into the 20th century.

Note: The John Henry legend is believed to be based on a crew working in the 1870s on a Chesapeake & Ohio tunnel in West Virginia.

1830**Wilberforce Colony Established**

First refugee families from 1829 Cincinnati riots reach what will become the Wilberforce Colony near London, ON. Stephen Duncan, the Mississippi cotton king, and James Brown, a former slave master and U.S. senator from Louisiana, purchase and donate 400-acre tract, Sept. 30. Quakers of Oberlin, OH, also help.

Named for the champion of abolition in Britain's Parliament, the community establishes schools, various mills and draws more black Americans from Northern cities. Eventually grows to as many as 200 families, but conflicts lead to decline of black population over following 20 years.

1830**Brazil Moves on Slavery**

Brazil decrees that all captives entering country are to be considered free, fulfilling treaty with British. The number of slave arrivals initially declines, but within a year is rising again, frustrating British.

1830s**Comanche Raids Roil Southwest**

Apache and, especially, the Comanche raid Texas and Mexico from the vast Comanchería (West Texas and eastern New Mexico). After Comanche reach truce with Texas in 1844, Mexicans south of the Rio Grande are particularly hard-pressed to fend off raiding parties that drive deeply into states of Jalisco, Zacatecas and Querétaro.

1831**Garrison Launches *Liberator***

William Lloyd Garrison launches *The Liberator* in Boston, Jan. 1, to lead fight for immediate, uncompensated freedom of slaves through moral and spiritual revolution, not through political movements or war. Noted for his unrelenting attacks on Southern churches for supporting slavery.

The first issue leads with an attack on slavery in Washington, DC, demanding that Congress end it forthwith.

Garrison credits John Rankin's *Letters on Slavery* (1826) as "the cause of my entering the anti-slavery conflict." Rankin is a Presbyterian minister in Ohio, active in the Underground Railroad.

1831**Ohio Upholds Mulatto Rights**

Reaffirming earlier judgments, Ohio Supreme Court rules that mixed-race persons who are more white than black are entitled to rights enjoyed by whites. Thus, Ohio departs from the "single-drop" rule prevailing in the slave-holding South.

In practice, it is left to local officials to determine if a man is sufficiently white to vote under these conditions; the issue will be frequently litigated through to the Civil War.

1831**Slave Masters Support Emigration**

Stephen Duncan, nation's leading cotton slave master, forms the Mississippi Colonization Society with other major planters (including Isaac Ross and Edward McGehee), June. They support a policy of gradual emancipation and quick emigration to Mississippi-in-Africa, purchased near Liberia.

Ross's will frees 300 slaves on his death in 1836, and orders sale of land to pay for their transport to Mississippi-in-Africa.

The Mississippi group joins forces with the American Colonization Society, and Liberia annexes Mississippi-in-Africa in 1847.

1831**Nat Turner's Bloody Uprising**

Nat Turner, slave preacher, leads four-day rebellion in Southampton County, VA, Aug. 21-24. He and followers, slave and free, travel from house to house, freeing slaves, and killing white men and several women (about 60 persons).

Militia and fearful mobs kill many blacks (perhaps most of whom are not involved) while hunting participants; Turner found six weeks later with Nottoway Indians. Turner and 55 others tried and hanged; Turner's body drawn and quartered. A number of blacks acquitted.

The following year, in response, gradual emancipation is proposed in Virginia General Assembly by Thomas Jefferson Randolph, grandson of the former president. It is supported by many members west of Blue Ridge, where slave plantations are few. But Tidewater landowners stop any vote.

Legislature instead passes laws forbidding teaching slaves to read and write, and forbidding religious meetings of blacks without a white minister.

1831

Narrative of a Carolina Muslim

Omar ibn Said, enslaved in North Carolina, writes his autobiography in the Arabic he learned growing up in Futa Toro region of Senegal. He reports he was born in 1770 to a wealthy family, and became a merchant and Koranic teacher. He was captured by a neighboring people seeking to depose Abdul Kader Kane, the Futa Toro leader, and transported to Charleston in late 1807. He ran away only to be recaptured in North Carolina.

1831

Jamaica: Harsh Suppression

Baptist War slave revolt, led by Sam Sharpe, an enslaved deacon, breaks out Dec. 27 on Jamaica, involving perhaps 60,000 of island's 300,000 slaves. Launched as a largely non-violent work strike (after hopes of an emancipation announcement from England are dashed). Then manor houses and sugar works are set afire. Yet only 14 whites die.

Maroons brought in by British military are key to suppression of insurrection, Dec. 31. At least 207 slaves die during revolt; another 300-plus executed later.

Britain reacts: The brutal suppression of this third major revolt in British West Indies in 15 years accelerates drive in Britain to emancipate slaves in the colonies. The others were on Barbados, 1816, and Demerara, 1823.

1831

Young Abolitionists Speak Out

Younger members of Anti-Slavery Society in Britain devote themselves to "immediate, not gradual abolition," first championed by pamphleteer Elizabeth Heyrick of the Female Society of Birmingham.

1831

Cholera Crosses Atlantic

World's second cholera pandemic (believed to have originated in India in 1829) reaches London in September, then crosses Atlantic in June via immigrant ships to Montreal (where 1,900 die), New York (3,500) and in 1832, Philadelphia (whose low death rate is attributed to clean reservoir water).

Mass deaths of newly arrived slaves are reported in 1833 in Havana and Matanzas.

1832

Defeated Black Hawk Celebrated

All but 200 of the "British Band" of 1,500 Fox and Sauk die at hands of U.S. troops and Dakota warriors at Battle of Bad Axe River (WI), ending year-long Black Hawk War, Aug. 2. Conflict began when Black Hawk led band across Mississippi to plant corn on historic tribal land in Illinois. Jefferson Davis and Abraham Lincoln serve as officers; only Davis sees action.

Black Hawk and five lieutenants are held for a few weeks at Fort Monroe, VA. They meet with Pres. Jackson, attend dinners and plays, and find themselves accepted as celebrities.

But their defeat leads to removal of most Indians from Old Northwest to lands west of Mississippi.

1832

Professor Argues Need for Slavery

Thomas R. Dew of William & Mary College publishes *Professor Dew on Slavery*, describing economic and moral "necessity" of slavery. His writings play a role in turning the Virginia legislature away from gradual emancipation and toward eventual support of secession and, afterward, opposition to Reconstruction.

He focuses on Virginia's economic dependence on slavery while conceding that slavery violates the "spirit of Christianity."

Among Dew's assertions: White Americans are "unpolluted with the original sin" of slavery, having had the institution "forced" upon them early in colonial days; despite horrors of Middle Passage, Africans ultimately benefit from tutelage of civilized whites; also, slavery is "morally superior" to other labor systems, because it creates an incentive for masters to care for workers.

1832

Blackface Origin of 'Jim Crow'

"Jump Jim Crow," a song ridiculing black people performed by whites in blackface at the Bowery Theatre in New York by its white originator, Thomas Dartmouth Rice. Following the Civil War, Southern states pass repressive Black Codes, which come to be known as "Jim Crow" laws. The term is later extended to *all* discriminatory laws.

Minstrel era: Blackface shows take off, touring Northern cities (Southern towns are less receptive). They are burlesques with songs, mocking black characters ("the dandy," the plantation "mammy" and—after the book comes out—slapstick "Uncle Toms") usually with songs. The Virginia Minstrels and others popularize the banjo (an import to plantations from West Africa). A few shows with real blacks also tour.

"Minstrely" fades with the war and is overlapped by vaudeville in the late 1800s.

1832**Jackson Opposes Calhoun 'Nullification'**

South Carolina declares stiff federal tariff increases, which favor Northern industry over Southern plantation interests, "null, void and no law" in the state, based on the doctrine put forth by John C. Calhoun (who happens to be Jackson's vice president). This raises question of whether a future federal anti-slavery law could be nullified by a state.

Jackson asserts that federal law is supreme and warns that "disunion by armed force is treason," Dec. 10.

Failing to win support from other Southern states, South Carolina backs down March 15 after Congress authorizes Jackson to use the military to enforce tariffs. Defeat of the nullification concept eventually leads Calhoun and other Southern leaders to threaten secession.

1832**Reformers Eliminate 'Rotten Boroughs'**

New Whig majority in House of Commons, led by Earl (Charles) Grey, passes major reform of Britain's electoral system, abolishing "rotten boroughs" (which provided wealthy pro-slavery forces votes), bringing cities and countryside into better balance and nearly doubling the electorate (still male only). Lords reluctantly agree after Grey and King William IV threaten to expand peerage. Royal assent received June 7.

Leads to yet another election in which Whigs capture two-thirds of Commons, paving the way for Abolition of Slavery Act.

1833**New Society Preaches Emancipation**

American Anti-Slavery Society formed in Philadelphia to preach case for immediate, uncompensated emancipation, December. Lead founders are William Lloyd Garrison, Arthur Tappan and Gerrit Smith (largest landowner in New York State); a third of the delegates are Quakers. Also important are Lewis Tappan, Theodore D. Weld, Theodore S. Wright (a black minister from New York), Susan B. Anthony, Lucretia Mott and Beriah Green (of the Oneida Institute).

1833**£20 Million for 'Paid' Emancipation**

Young William Gladstone lobbies Britain's Whig government on behalf of West Indies plantation owners for compensation (including his father) if slaves are to be emancipated.

Outcome: A £20 million fund, judged to be about half the total value of all slaves in British colonies (and 40% of total government expenditure in 1834). Also proposed is that adult ex-slaves continue as apprentices for 12 years, but that period is much reduced in final legislation.

1833**Britain: Abolition Finally Passes**

Abolition of Slavery Act is passed by a progressive Whig Parliament, ending slavery in all British territories, pushed by Henry Peter Brougham, the lord chancellor, and Earl Grey, the prime minister.

Greatest impact is on Britain's Caribbean holdings, with Jamaica alone accounting for more than a third of the 800,000-plus enslaved. Following their emancipation, a six-year period of apprenticeship is permitted for former slaves (later reduced to four years). Slave masters receive compensation. To take effect Aug. 1, 1834.

Wilberforce, who began the long abolitionist campaign in Parliament, dies July 29 at age 73, seven days after it passes the Commons.

Sir John Gladstone receives the largest single compensation, more than £90,000 of the £20 million total (or 4.3 billion U.S. dollars today).

Parliament's action tremendously energizes abolitionists in the U.S.

1833

Anticipating Emancipation on Jamaica

Richard Robert Madden named a magistrate to oversee liberation of Jamaica's slaves in the coming year. He goes on to defend free blacks in Cuba (which is evading treaty on slave-trade ban), to testify in the *Armistad* case and to unmask British merchants illegally supporting slave trade out of West Africa factories, 1840. He writes extensively on slavery and on the United Irishmen.

Madden's wife, Harriet, is a daughter of the late John Elmslie, a leading Jamaican slave master.

1833

Whittier Writes for Abolition

A young Quaker editor and poet, John Greenleaf Whittier, publishes *Justice and Expediency* to promote the cause of abolition. He works closely with William Lloyd Garrison, Gamaliel Bailey, Charles Sumner and many others. A collection of his abolition poetry, *Voices of Freedom*, is published in 1846.

1833-1835

Indian Land Converted into Plantations

Federal government sells more than 4 million acres of land in Mississippi, most of it formerly held by the Choctaw and Chickasaw removed by end of 1832. New plantation owners purchase thousands of slaves in Virginia and Tennessee. By 1836, Mississippi alone is producing 125 million pounds of cotton (up 47% over 1834) and nearly 200 million pounds by 1839, almost a quarter of U.S. total.

1834

Seminary's Debates Stir Cincinnati

Students who will go on to lead abolitionists hear anti-slavery speakers gathered at the new Lane Theological Seminary (Presbyterian) outside Cincinnati, February. Virtually all support abolition over colonization.

Participants include Theodore Weld; Lyman Beecher, Lane's president; his son and daughter, Henry Ward Beecher and Harriet Elizabeth Beecher; and

disenchanted former members of the American Colonization Society. Also, former slave James Bradley, the only black to speak, and John Rankin, already an Underground Railroad leader. **Note:** Arthur and Lewis Tappan are financial supporters of Lane.

Results: Students move to create schools for black people in Cincinnati, while pro-slavery whites threaten violence. When fearful Lane trustees disavow slavery discussions, rebel students turn to just-opening Oberlin Collegiate Institute, near Cleveland, which agrees not only to unlimited discourse, but to enrollment of African-American students. Oberlin soon becomes a "hot-bed of Abolitionism."

Oberlin also becomes the nation's first coeducational college in 1844 when it admits four women.

1834

New York: Anti-Abolition Riots

In New York, anti-abolitionist riots break out July 9, with rising Irish immigrants a factor. Incendiary reports in *Courier and Enquirer* (which supports American Colonization Society) claim abolitionists like Arthur and Lewis Tappan encourage daughters to marry black men.

Considerable damage to Bowery Theater, homes of abolitionists (including Lewis Tappan), ransacked black neighborhoods (especially Five Points) and at least seven churches, before New York 1st Division patrols streets. Many are beaten, but there is no report of deaths on either side.

1834

Emancipation Comes to the Empire

Emancipation Day arrives throughout the British empire as the Abolition of Slavery Act takes effect, Aug. 1. But from Jamaica to Guiana, the newly freed people are still obligated to work as indentured servants for six years.

Importantly for those fleeing slavery in the U.S., all of British North America is included under the Abolition Act, establishing it as a safe haven for fugitive U.S. slaves not only in Upper Canada, but also in Québec and all the maritime provinces.

1835

1835

Abolitionists Mount Postal War

American Anti-Slavery Society launches a postal campaign by printing, in New York, more than a million pamphlets illustrating horrors of slavery and urging immediate emancipation, July. They mail 175,000 to politicians and community leaders throughout the nation, especially to Southerners, who are infuriated. The Tappan brothers are main movers.

Southerners respond with mailbag bonfires (especially in Charleston), and searches of ships and stages. Pres. Jackson finally approves embargo on such

materials by the New York postmaster, as well as by Southern postmasters.

The postal campaign—including pamphlets written for children—vastly raises the volume and passion on both sides.

1835

Inciting Riot in District?

Dr. Reuben Crandall is arrested in Georgetown, Aug. 10, and charged with distributing Anti-Slavery Society pamphlets with the intent of inciting a revolt among slaves in the District of Columbia. Prosecuting U.S. attorney is Francis Scott Key (author of 1814 lyrics to “The Star-Spangled Banner”).

The arrest helps feed a riot by white mechanics striking at the Navy Yard who surround the City Hall jail until the militia is called, and then ransack a restaurant owned by Beverly Snow, a free black man. Black churches, businesses and homes are vandalized through the week.

At his trial the following April, Crandall asserts he is no abolitionist (although his sister, Prudence, is well known for schooling black girls in Connecticut). Witnesses say the incendiary pamphlets were used only as packing material for Crandall’s medical gear. The jury acquits Crandall after deliberating three hours. Crandall eventually moves to Kingston, Jamaica, hoping for relief from tuberculosis contracted during his eight months in jail. He dies there in 1838.

Key, a slave owner and a leader of the American Colonization Society, has, over the years, represented both slave owners and slaves seeking freedom. His political ambitions are much diminished after the trial.

1835

Second Seminole War Erupts

Although northern Seminole migrate to Indian Territory in 1834, Seminole in central Florida oppose U.S. attempt to force their removal after treaty creating a large reservation collapses. Second Seminole War opens with Indians and blacks ambushing a 110-man U.S. army contingent near Fort King (present-day Ocala), killing Maj. Francis Dade and all but two of his men, Dec. 28.

In 1836, Seminole and allied blacks attack isolated forts and 21 plantations despite large U.S. forces, and burn the Cape Florida lighthouse. Seminole force of 600, led by Osceola, holds off 2,500 militia and Creek at Wahoo Swamp, December.

Osceola is seized at a duplicitous truce conference, 1837, and dies in Fort Moultrie prison, SC. A battle on north shore of Lake Okeechobee is deemed a tie, Christmas Day, 1837.

1835

Tocqueville on America

Alexis de Tocqueville publishes, in Paris, first volume of *De La Démocratie en Amérique* (“Democracy in America”), a lively, detailed portrait of the nation he toured in 1831 to study U.S. prisons. He reports on religious, political and economic aspects that seem to affirm and support American democracy. He writes of vast bondage in the South, of great repression of newly freed blacks in

the North, and the likelihood that tension over slavery will lead to conflict. A second volume comes out in 1840.

Tocqueville's companion on the nine-month adventure, Gustave de Beaumont, publishes a two-volume novel and social critique—*Marie ou l'Esclavage aux États-Unis*—focused entirely on slavery and racial separation.

1835

'Amazing Grace' As We Know It

"Amazing Grace" is set to tune of "New Britain" by Baptist song leader William Wyler of Spartanburg, SC, from his book, *Southern Harmony*. Latter music was long favored (with other lyrics) at camp meetings and other Second Great Awakening events.

1835

Tougher Enforcement for Slavers

Britain and Spain tighten enforcement of slave-trade agreement. British warships authorized to stop Spanish slavers and bring them before "Mixed Commissions" in Sierra Leone and Havana. Vessels carrying extra mess gear, foodstuffs, water tanks and lumber to build slave holds are declared to be slavers under "equipment clause," even if no captives are present.

1835

Muslim Slaves Rise in Brazil

Several hundred Malê, African-born Muslims, rise up in Salvador, Brazil, during Ramadan. Blocked from joining plantation slaves outside the city, they are finally cut down by cavalry. Leaders include a Nupe slave, two Nagô (Yoruba) slaves, a Nagô freedman and a Hausa freedman. Leaders who survive the fighting are executed, 16 others are imprisoned and 45 flogged.

An additional 200 slaves and freedmen are deported to the Portuguese post at Porto-Novo, Benin, where they found a Muslim Afro-Brazilian community that ultimately builds a grand mosque.

The Malê Revolt, although suppressed, is considered a vital step toward emancipation in Brazil.

1835

Cape Colony: Great Trek Begins

First wave of what will be the Great Trek of Dutch-speaking Boers departs Cape Colony in wagons, September. First party is massacred by Manukosi warriors; second party reaches Delagoa Bay where majority perish from fever.

But *Voortrekkers* keep moving east in ever-larger parties. By early 1837, five colonies are established between the Vaal and Orange rivers, totaling around 2,000 people.

Emancipation backlash: Boer anger with British administration has been percolating since 1815, with Parliament's 1834 emancipation of their 35,000 slaves seen as another blow. Individual farmers held only a few slaves each, for

which the promised compensation would hardly pay for the long voyage to London where they were required to appear to collect payment.

Weenan massacre: More than 280 Voortrekkers (including 56 women and 185 children) and 250 accompanying Khoikhoi and Basuto are killed by large Zulu force, Feb. 17, 1838; more killings follow. The Voortrekkers strike back, Dec. 16, 1838, at Battle of Blood River, with force of 464 defeating an estimated 25,000 Zulu. This leads to bitter infighting among the Zulu and decline of their empire.

1836

Arkansas Enters Union, Slave

Arkansas joins Union as 13th slave state compared to 12 free.

1836

Lone Star Republic Declared

Texas declares itself a republic, independent of Mexico. Major factor: Texans want to continue slavery, which Mexico has abolished (although ban is suspended for Texan planters).

Alamo defenders die, March; Mexican army under Santa Anna routed at San Jacinto, April. Intermittent conflict continues until Texas is annexed as a state in 1845, leading to war between Mexico and U.S.

1836

Slavery Debates Curtailed

Congress's new "gag rule" tables all petitions regarding slavery, without debate.

1836

Girl Freed, But Not Fugitives

Massachusetts Chief Justice Lemuel Shaw rules that six-year-old Med, a slave girl brought to Boston by a New Orleans woman, is automatically free upon entering Massachusetts, a free state. Cites Britain's "Somerset" principle.

This becomes the guiding precedent in many Northern states. But Shaw makes clear this does not apply to fugitive slaves, because the U.S. Constitution requires they be held for their masters.

1836

Vermont Elects African Lawmaker

Alexander Twilight is first African-American elected as a state legislator, in Vermont, and the only one before the Civil War. The son of mixed-race parents, he is also first African-American to graduate from college (with a BA from Middlebury), going on to become a school principal and minister.

1836

Caliphate Suppresses Gobir Revolt

Old Hausa state of Gobir rebels against Sokoto Caliphate, with Taureg and Maradi as allies. Gobir's Sultan Ali leads massacre of residents of Karatu. Sokoto is now one of Africa's largest states with 30 internally independent emirates and a total

population of perhaps 10 million, a quarter of them slaves but with specific rights under Islam.

Emirs are not hereditary, but appointed by sultan. A council of emirs selects new sultans, with Islamic scholarship highly valued.

Current Sultan Bello strikes back at Battle of Gawakuke, overwhelming rebels, who are said to suffer more than 20,000 killed.

Bello's army rampages through Gobir to avenge Karatu. A new *ribat* fort and plantation is established to enforce peace.

1837

Cotton Collapse Accelerates Panic

Skidding cotton prices (cotton production has nearly doubled since 1830) play large role in the Panic of 1837. Over-leveraged plantation owners (especially in newly booming Mississippi) can't meet payments on massive loans from London and New York banks. Banks cut back on all other lending; bank runs force more than 340 to close. Low cotton prices hurt federal, state revenues as well. Prices for slaves, which banks accept as collateral, also drop, from recent highs near \$2,000, to as little as \$1,000.

Wheat crops are depressed by hard winter and a Hessian fly infestation, pushing the price of flour up; in New York it doubles to \$12 a barrel, which sets off a 5,000-person riot. Working people squeezed by prices and sudden loss of jobs. Hard times continue, especially in Lower South, through 1842.

1837

Calhoun: Emancipation Would be Aggression

South Carolina's Sen. John Calhoun rallies Southerners in Senate chamber with Feb. 6 speech responding to abolition ferment. He advocates slavery as "a positive good" thanks to "kind care" of masters, especially compared to Northern laborers forced into poorhouses.

He later asserts that a ban on slavery's extension would lead to forced emancipation upon the South. That, he warns, would be an act of aggression, provoking secession and war.

1837

Mob Kills Abolition Editor

Elijah Lovejoy, a Presbyterian minister and editor of fiercely abolitionist *St. Louis Observer*, is shot and killed Nov. 7 as a pro-slavery mob besieges a warehouse in Alton, IL, where he had hidden a new printing press.

Lovejoy becomes a martyr to the abolition cause, cited by Lincoln and by John Brown when the latter declared in his own church weeks later, "Here, before God, ... from this time, I consecrate my life to the destruction of slavery."

1837

Michigan Joins Union, Free

Michigan joins Union as 13th free state, compared to 13 slave. Balance doesn't change until Florida and Texas enter as slave states in 1845.

1837**Mann Redesigns Public Education**

Horace Mann named secretary of the new Massachusetts Board of Education. Pushes for free schools for all classes (white), for professional trained teachers (women preferred), for statewide curriculums and for reliable school financing through local property taxes.

A few months earlier, William Holmes McGuffey, a former teacher, brings out the first two *Eclectic Readers*, which become famous as *McGuffey's Readers*. They quickly replace Webster's *Blue-Backed Primer* as the most widely used U.S. schoolbooks. Eventually six *Readers*, more complex by grade, take children from phonics and letters, to reading sentences, to simple stories, to essays, poems and speeches by well-known writers.

1837**Presbyterians Split**

Presbyterians split, with New School comprising pro-revivalist, reform-minded, mainly Northern members, led by Lyman Beecher (father of Henry Ward Beecher and Harriet Beecher Stowe) among others. Conservative Old School includes most of the largely Scots-Irish Presbyterians in the South, but retains Northern adherents as well.

1837**Morse's Telegraph and Code**

Samuel Morse receives patent for improvements on telegraph and for the Morse Code. John Deere invents one-piece steel plow.

1837**Smallpox Devastates Plains**

Smallpox epidemic sweeps through many Plains Indian tribes, spread in part by a steamboat of the American Fur Company, the *St. Peter*, as it ascended the Missouri from St. Louis to Fort Union, ND. Mandan people are reduced from 2,000 to no more than 138. Through 1840, 6,000 of approximately 9,000 Blackfeet die of "rotting face," along with half of the Assiniboine and Arikara, a third of the Crow and quarter of the Pawnee.

U.S. efforts to vaccinate Native Americans under Indian Vaccination Act of 1832 are weak and ineffective. In contrast, Canada's Hudson Bay Company brought in vaccine supplies and distributed them quickly via traders.

1837**Cuba Leads World in Sugar**

First rail line opens on Cuba. Connecting sprawling slave-plantations to expanded, steam-powered sugar mills, trains help boost sugar production to new heights. By 1840s, after low coffee prices force planters to switch more land to sugar, Cuba is world's leading sugar producer. By 1885, it is producing nearly 1 million tons a year, 14% of world's total.

Free trade with U.S. (permitted by Spain since 1818) provides a huge market.

1837

Victoria Ascends British Throne

A month after turning 18, Alexandrina Victoria becomes queen at the death of William IV, her uncle, June 20. Victoria's support of the anti-slavery cause is made known through her husband, Albert, after their wedding in 1839.

1837

Britain Seeks Slave Patrol Partners

Britain invites U.S. and France to create a joint international patrol to stop slaving. U.S. declines to participate.

1837

Ahanta King Challenges Dutch

Small personal altercations lead Ahanta King Badu Bonsu II to turn on Dutch on the Gold Coast. He ambushes an expeditionary force seeking to arrest him, killing 45 including Hendrikus Jacobus Tonneboeijer, the 23-year-old acting Elmina governor, Oct. 23.

More than 200 troops are sent from Amsterdam the following spring. They find allies in rivals to Ahanta, who then give up Bonsu. He is hanged; 13 others are exiled to Nusa Kambangan prison island in the East Indies, and another 36 are forced to work Elmina plantations. Dutch reorganize protectorate to maintain closer control.

In 2005, the severed head of Bonsu is discovered in a jar of formaldehyde at Leiden University Medical Center; it is returned to Ghana for ceremonial burial.

1838

Cherokee 'Trail of Tears'

The forced, final removal of the Cherokee nation from northern Georgia to new Indian Territory—"the Trail of Tears"—is ordered by Pres. Martin van Buren (New York). Of more than 15,000 people following three routes, more than 4,000 Cherokee and 2,000 of their slaves die of winter exposure, lack of food, disease. Survivors settle on new reservations east of present-day Tulsa, OK, founded by Muscogee/Creek Indians who arrived two years earlier.

Also previously, army and state militia enforce expulsion of Choctaw, Chickasaw and some Seminole bands from Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi and Florida to the Indian Territory.

1838

Douglass's Train to Freedom

Frederick Douglass, age 20, escapes slavery in Baltimore via trains to New York, aided by Anna Murray, a free black woman, and by papers from a free black sailor. He marries Anna in New York; they settle in New Bedford, MA, to begin a family.

He becomes active in AME Zion church, where he is discovered by William Lloyd Garrison.

1838

Cotton-Gin Factory Opens

Daniel Pratt opens a cotton-gin factory on Autauga Creek near Montgomery, AL, which becomes the largest manufacturer of gins in the world, producing 1,500 gins annually. After the Civil War he invests in Alabama's North and South Railroad, and in the new iron and steel city of Birmingham.

1838

Full Emancipation as Apprenticeship Ends

Most colonial assemblies in British West Indies introduce legislation dismantling apprenticeship system for former slaves (all freed by Parliament as of Aug. 1, 1834, but required to continue as apprentices). Laws against vagrancy and squatting attempt to enforce plantation economies, with varying results.

Tale of two British West Indies: At full emancipation on Aug. 1, 1838, Trinidad has 17,439 former slaves, with most slave owners having held 10 or fewer. Jamaica, twice as large as Trinidad, has 360,000 former slaves (or 20 times more).

1838

First Trans-Atlantic Steamship

Isambard Brunel's *Great Western*, first steamship built for regular trans-Atlantic crossings, departs Bristol for 14-day crossing to New York (half the time required for packet ships). She is followed by the *British Queen*, 1839, and the *Britannia*, 1840. All are sidewheelers.

Great Britain, also designed by Brunel, is the first iron steamship equipped with a screw propeller to enter trans-Atlantic service. She embarks on her maiden voyage, Liverpool to New York, July 26, 1845.

1839

Courts Rule for *Amistad* Captives

Slaves (Mende people) obtained from a slave-trade base at Lomboko, Sierra Leone, by Portuguese ship *Tercora* are secretly transferred at Havana to Spanish coaster *La Amistad*. Slaves rise up, led by Cinque, kill captain and several crew, and try to force owners to return them to Africa. But ship is stopped by U.S. Coast Guard brig off Montauk Point, Aug. 26.

Courts rule in favor of slaves with final decision to free them issued by U.S. Supreme Court, March 1841. John Quincy Adams argues for the defense; Capt. Peter Fitzgerald of Royal Navy testifies to horrors of slave ships. Justice Joseph Story writes the opinion with only one dissent.

1839

Abolitionists Cite 1,000 Witnesses

American Slavery as It Is: Testimony of a Thousand Witnesses is published by

the Anti-Slavery Society. Authors are Theodore Weld, and Angelina and Sarah Grimké (Weld's wife and sister-in-law). The Grimkés are the only Southern-born women (they grew up in Charleston) to become abolition leaders.

Most of the 1,500-plus state and local anti-slavery societies now active in the free states are associated with the Anti-Slavery Society.

1839

Pope Denounces Slave Trade

Pope Gregory XVI issues *In supremo apostolatus*, a papal bull that clearly denounces the slave trade and less clearly calls for an end to slavery itself, Dec. 3. It does not specifically call for emancipation.

John England, Charleston's first Catholic bishop, interprets the bull as a condemnation of large-scale slave trading and not of ongoing ownership of slaves by individuals. He writes 18 letters to Secty. of State John Forsyth, asserting that this is the view of most American bishops.

1839

British Force Slavers to New York

HMS *Buzzard* captures two slavers, *Eagle* and *Clara* off Lagos (present-day Nigeria). Because they fly American colors, they are escorted to New York with slave cargoes, June 12. Court rules they are actually owned by Spain. Royal Navy brings in two more slave ships flying the U.S. flag. They are condemned.

Nicholas Trist, U.S. consul in Havana, recommends dispatch of a naval squadron to West Africa to patrol for slavers, warning that British will continue to police American vessels if U.S. does not act.

1840

1840

Immigrants, +319%; Enslaved, +24%

U.S. Census: total population, 17.07 million; slaves, 2.49 million (14.6%); free black, 386,000 (2.3%). Immigration in 1830s more than quadrupled to 599,000 (including 207,000 Irish and 152,000 Germans).

1840

Whigs' One-Month President

William Henry Harrison (Ohio) elected president, defeating Van Buren. Harrison dies one month into his term, April 4, 1841, and John Tyler (Virginia) becomes president. New Whig party brings together many anti-Jackson, anti-Democratic party elements and personalities, including abolitionists, Anti-Masons. Leaders include Daniel Webster, Henry Clay, William Seward and John Quincy Adams.

1840

Abolitionists Split Over Tactics

American Anti-Slavery Society convention splits between Garrison majority and Tappan brothers who advocate political action, a less militant stance, and oppose demands for women's rights, May 12.

Garrison's position is that U.S. Constitution is proslavery and can't be fixed, thus free states must secede (by means of spiritual strength, not war). He also favors greater recognition for women, who already play major roles in group's activities. Garrison prevails at the convention.

Tappans leave to create, first, the American and Foreign Anti-Slavery Society, and then the Liberal Party, the nation's first abolitionist political party. The Liberal candidate for president, James G. Birney, a former slave master from Kentucky, wins only 7,000 votes against Harrison and Van Buren.

1840

World Abolitionists Meet in London

Thomas Clarkson opens first World Anti-Slavery Convention in London. Ireland's Daniel O'Connell is a leading speaker in drive to unite abolitionists worldwide, with U.S. slavery a particular target, June 12. Quakers from Britain and the U.S. play a large role.

William Lloyd Garrison leads U.S. contingent, including Lucretia Mott and Elizabeth Cady Stanton, but women are not allowed to participate. This inspires Mott and Stanton to begin organizing what will become the Seneca Falls Convention for women's rights in 1848.

1840

Turner's 'Slave Ship' Unveiled

J.M.W. Turner's painting "The Slave Ship" (memorializing 1781 *Zong* incident) goes on display at the Royal Academy in London. Showing is timed to coincide with the Anti-Slavery Convention led by Clarkson.

1840

Settlers Roll on Oregon Trail

First wagon trains with American settlers travel Oregon Trail to the Willamette Valley. In 1846, the Oregon Treaty with Britain extends 49th parallel from Rockies to Strait of Georgia as U.S.-Canada border.

1840

Comanche Raid to the Gulf

Large Comanche war party crosses central Texas (still a republic) to an inlet of Matagorda Bay on the Gulf of Mexico where they loot and burn the port of Linnville, Aug. 7. Most citizens escape on boats.

This largest Indian raid ever on a white city in present-day U.S. is in retaliation for the earlier killing of 33 Comanche leaders at a peace negotiation in San Antonio. Comanche-Texas fighting continues into 1844.

1840

Texas Agrees to Ban Slave Trade

Britain wins treaty with Republic of Texas for mutual suppression of the slave trade, Nov. 16, in return for British recognition of Texan sovereignty. Lord signs for Britain.

1840

Set Free on St. Helena

Royal Navy bases ships at St. Helena in South Atlantic to stop slavers bound from Angola and Mozambique to Brazil and West Indies. As many as 26,000 slaves are freed from ships brought here over next 32 years. An estimated 5,000 are dead or dying, and they are buried in island's Rupert's Valley. More than 80% are children, teenagers or young adults.

Most of the freed people who survive are sent to Cape Town or the British West Indies as laborers.

Also on St. Helena, Napoleon's body is exhumed, Oct. 15, and sent to France to be placed in Les Invalides, Paris.

1841

Domestic Slaver Forced to Bahamas

Slaves being transported from Virginia to New Orleans take over *Creole* and direct her to slavery-free Bahamas. British free more than 110 immediately; 17 others, including leader Madison Washington, who took part in killing of a slave trader and wounding of several crew, are held.

Nassau court rules their action is not piracy but rightful. Southerners enraged by British actions; eventually slave masters receive some compensation. Frederick Douglass fictionalizes the incident in a novella, *The Heroic Slave*, published in 1853.

1841

Comanches Swarm Mexico

Large Comanche parties, totaling as many as 800 warriors invade northern Mexico with one group reaching the state of Zacatecas, March. That's nearly 1,000 miles of riding from their vast Comanchería homeland (West Texas and eastern New Mexico).

After Comanche reach truce with Texas in 1844 (below), Mexicans south of the Rio Grande are particularly hard-pressed to fend off raiding parties that drive deeply each autumn into states of Jalisco, Zacatecas and Querétaro.

1841

U.S. Consul Dismissed

Nicholas Trist is recalled as U.S. consul in Havana amid allegations that he connived at illegal sale of U.S. vessels to Spanish slave traders. A British commissioner on Cuba, Richard Robert Madden, accuses him of promoting slavery.

1841

Slave Searches Expanded

Quintuple Treaty signed, under which Britain, France, Russia, Prussia and

Austria agree to the search of their vessels on the high seas by any of the signatory navies to suppress slave trade. France's King Louis Philippe refuses to ratify it.

1841

Disease Defeats Niger Expedition

Niger Expedition, organized by British "New Africa" movement which seeks to end slave trade and extend Christianity, sets out in three ships for Lokoja (in present-day Nigeria), where Benue river meets the Niger.

The expedition, supported by Prince Albert, hopes to develop alternative trade opportunities that would encourage African kingdoms to end their role in the slave trade.

Once there, disease quickly kills more than 50 of the 150 Europeans and sickens many others, December. Expedition retreats to Fernando Po (now Bioko Island) to return to Britain the following year.

1842

Court Strikes Fugitive Protections

In *Prigg vs. Pennsylvania*, U.S. Supreme Court strikes down state's personal liberty law of 1826 (copied by other Northern states) to uphold 1793 federal fugitive slave law. But Justice Story's opinion permits Northern states to deny use of their facilities for purpose of returning fugitives.

1842

Escaping a Cherokee Master

In Indian Territory (Oklahoma), 20 black slaves escape Cherokee plantations of "Rich Joe" Vann, Nov. 15. They raid Webbers Falls (Arkansas river) for supplies and guns, set out for Mexico and kill two bounty hunters to free a slave family. Large Cherokee posse runs them down just north of the Red river. All taken back; five executed, remainder put to work on Vann's steamboats.

Cherokee nation passes a stricter slave code and requires expulsion of freed blacks. Escape attempts continue.

Two years later: The steamboat *Lucy Walker* suffers a catastrophic boiler explosion and sinks after departing Louisville, Oct 23. "Rich Joe," captain and owner, dies, as do most of his enslaved black crew and 36 of perhaps 85 passengers.

1842

Dickens Tours U.S.

Charles Dickens, age 30, and between *The Old Curiosity Shop* and *A Christmas Carol*, tours American cities over five months, giving readings, visiting prisons and hospitals, meeting statesmen and writers. In March, he visits a Richmond chewing-tobacco factory worked by slaves. Always an advocate for the poor, Dickens excoriates the U.S. acceptance of slavery near the conclusion of *American Notes for General Circulation*, published after his return to England.

1842**U.S. Accepts Royal Navy Searches**

In Webster-Ashburton Treaty, U.S. agrees to Royal Navy searches of American vessels (and vice-versa) to suppress slave trade.

Treaty is written mainly to resolve vexing U.S.-Canada border issues in the Oregon Country, between Maine and New Brunswick, and on the Great Lakes. U.S. also declines to insist on return of estimated 12,000 fugitive slaves in Canada.

1842**Uruguay Ends Slavery**

Slavery ends in Uruguay, with competing Colorado and Blanco parties both promising emancipation. But a quasi-free *patronato* system continues to 1853.

1842**Earthquake Flattens Cap Haïtien**

Earthquake estimated at 8.1 Ms destroys Cap Haïtien, killing at least 5,000, May 7. Resulting tsunami kills at least 300 in Port-de-Paix alone.

Chaos leads to rural uprising that unseats Pres. Jean-Pierre Boyer the following Feb. 13, dismantles hated *Code Rural* and aids Dominican forces seeking to end Haitian rule of their side of the island.

Boyer led Haiti for 25 relatively progressive years, but black ex-slaves and their descendants believed he heavily favored his fellow *gens de couleur*.

1843**Most Seminole Depart Florida**

Sporadic fighting continues, but most Seminole, perhaps 4,000—including 500 Black Seminoles descended from escaped slaves who are considered free—agree, between 1838 and 1843, to board ships for New Orleans on their way to Indian Territory.

High cost to U.S.: Commanders included Winfield Scott and Zachary Taylor. As many as 2,000 soldiers and militia dead (many from disease) out of 40,000 committed; at least \$40 million spent, including payments to Seminole leaders.

Several Seminole bands remain in Everglades, and a Third Seminole War breaks out in 1856.

1843**Cuba's 'Year of the Lash'**

Cuban slave conspiracy that may or may not have ignited actual insurrection on Matanzas plantations, is reputedly led by African-born Yorubans, including Carlota Lucumí, November. Details are vague, but whites have been living with increasing fear as slave population has soared and smaller revolts have broken out.

Gov. Leopoldo O'Donnell orders suspected leaders executed by firing squad in Havana, early 1844. Thousands are imprisoned or banished. David Turnbull,

the British consul (and abolitionist), expelled in 1842, is convicted of incitement in absentia.

Known as the “Year of the Lash” and “Conspiración de la Escalera,” as suspected rebels are lashed to ladders for interrogation. White Cubans opposed to Spanish rule are inspired to consider enlisting slaves as allies, which will come to pass in 1868.

1844

Texas Concedes Comanche Land

Texas recognizes Comanche possession of the Comanchería (most of West Texas and eastern New Mexico) in return for end to raids. This is a high point in the history of the Plains tribe most successful in maintaining its lands and independence from white settlers.

Comanche concentrate on devastating northern Mexico, killing more than 2,600, and taking 850 captives and 100,000 horses and other livestock in the 12 months ending in June 1846.

But between European diseases (which they had avoided for decades) and post-Civil War slaughter of buffalo, 90% of Comanche population is lost by 1874.

1844

Polk, Texas Annexation Win

Annexation of Texas (sought by pro-slavery forces) is favored by Democrat James K. Polk (Tennessee) in his close election to presidency. He defeats Whig Henry Clay (who still owns slaves but waffles on annexation) and Liberty Party’s James G. Birney (former Kentucky slaveholder turned abolitionist—targeted in 1836 Cincinnati riot—who opposes annexation).

Birney’s vote share in New York and Michigan probably costs Clay the election.

Elections have consequences: If Clay had won, Texas annexation, Mexican War and divisive fight over slavery in huge ceded territory might have unfolded much differently.

1844

Oregon Expels Free Blacks

Oregon Country’s provisional government outlaws slavery but immediately seeks to expel free blacks, even threatening “the lash” if they don’t leave.

1844

Methodists Split Over Bishop’s Slave

Methodist Episcopal Church divides over censure of Bishop James O. Andrew of Georgia who has gained a second slave with his marriage. Methodists generally have been opposed to slavery since forming their U.S. church in 1784. But in South, more ministers accept it, if slaves are treated well; they now form Methodist Episcopal Church, South.

1844**Dominicans End Haitian Rule**

Dominican rebels end 22 years of Haitian rule of Santo Domingo side of island, establishing first Republic of Dominican Republic. Subsequent Haitian invasions are turned back over the next 15 years.

1845**1845****Florida, Texas Enter Union, Slave**

Florida joins Union and independent Texas is annexed, becoming the 14th and 15th slave states, compared to 13 free. But they are the last slave states. Proposals to split Texas into two or more slave states never develop.

1845**Slave Issue Divides Baptists**

Baptist Church splits over slavery. Southern ministers say that while it may be "a great evil," slavery is not a sin, and now defend it as "Bible-endorsed" institution.

1845**First Railroad to Atlanta**

Locomotives of the Georgia Railroad (from the Savannah river at Augusta) roll into Marthasville, GA, in September, crossing land ceded by the Creek only 24 years earlier. The long-planned rail junction opens its first hotel and changes its name to Atlanta.

The Macon & Western arrives the following year and the Western & Atlantic (connecting to Chattanooga) begins operating in 1850 with completion of the Chetogeta Tunnel. Population is still less than 2,500, but will rise to nearly 10,000 on the eve of the Civil War.

1845**Douglass Book Tells His Story**

Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass, an American Slave, Written by Himself is published.

1845**Britain Gets Tough with Brazil**

Frustrated by Brazil's failure to enforce its 1830 slave-trade ban, Britain's Parliament passes Aberdeen Act, giving Royal Navy authority to seize Brazilian slave ships, with cases adjudicated in its admiralty courts, not by ineffective Mixed Commissions.

In response, Brazilian slavers rush to buy and ship as many African slaves as possible before the naval crackdown takes hold; the numbers surge between 1847 and 1849.

In first six months of 1848, 19 of 33 suspected slave-ship cases at St. Helena vice-admiralty court are Brazilian.

1845

European Blight, Irish Famine

Potato blight sweeps Europe with Ireland suffering its Great Famine. Over the next five years, one million Irish die of starvation and disease, especially typhus. British government's laissez-faire policies, absentee landlords and impoverishment of tenant farmers blamed.

More than 2 million people, mostly young, emigrate by 1855, 75% to the U.S. and more than 300,000 to Canada. Another 750,000 flee to England, most landing in Liverpool.

1846

U.S. Makes War on Mexico

Pres. Polk sends more ships to navy's Pacific squadron and orders army under Zachary Taylor south of Texas's Neuces river, which Mexico considers the border. Rio Grande skirmishes provide sparks and Congress declares war, May.

Navy forces quickly take Monterey, Yerba Buena (San Francisco) and Sacramento in California, with little or no fighting. Conquest of Alte California completed in January 1847 after small battles near Los Angeles (Stockton, Frémont, Kearney lead at various locations).

When moving into northern Mexico, Americans find stripped farms and demoralized villagers, who have been ravaged by Comanche raids for 20 years.

Note: Nation is divided on the war. Although most Southerners warmly support it, South Carolina's John C. Calhoun and Kentucky's Henry Clay lead opposition (a son of Clay's dies in combat). Also divided are Congressmen Abraham Lincoln of Illinois, who opposes it as a ploy to add slave states, and Jefferson Davis of Mississippi, who commands a regiment, and returns with a wound to the foot.

1846

Iowa Enters Union, Free

Iowa joins Union as 14th free state, compared to 15 slave.

But territorial "Black Code" continues, denying blacks the vote and right to testify against white people. Also, blacks moving into state must present "certificates of freedom" to prove they are not runaway slaves.

1846

Missionary Society Promotes Equality, Education

American Missionary Association is created by Congregationalist churches in Albany, NY, Sept. 3, with abolitionist leaders of both races, to found anti-slavery churches, and to promote racial equality and education of black people.

Active during the Civil War in educating newly freed slaves, and during Reconstruction in founding permanent colleges, most of them in the South, for teachers and other professions.

1846**Tunisian Bey Decrees Abolition**

Tunisia becomes the first Muslim state to abolish slavery, by decree of Ahmad I ibn Mustafa, a reforming bey, whose mother is reported to have been a slave. Ahmad is noted for having one wife and one concubine only.

Abolition takes effect mainly in the cities, where ex-slaves form an underclass, and is resisted elsewhere. Complete abolition, decreed 1890, is enforced by the French occupation that began in 1881.

1847**Americans Take Mexico City**

In Mexico, Americans win at Monterrey and Buena Vista (Taylor); Vera Cruz, despite yellow fever (Scott and Perry); and Chapultepec; and occupy Mexico City (Scott) in September. Mexicans wage guerrilla warfare until a truce is signed, March 6, 1848.

The cost: U.S., 1,733 killed in battle; 11,550 dead from disease (mainly dysentery); 4,152 wounded; 695 missing. Mexico, 5,000 killed in battle; 20,000 wounded; 10,000 missing; plus many thousands, military and civilian, lost to disease.

Ulysses S. Grant saw considerable combat as a young officer. "I was bitterly opposed," he wrote years later, echoing views of many Americans, "and to this day regard the war... as one of the most unjust ever waged by a stronger against a weaker nation."

1847**Yucatán War Ignites**

"Caste War" breaks out, July, on the Yucatán peninsula between Yucatecos (white *criollo* descendants of Spanish families) who want to expand sugar-cane and agave (for rope) holdings, and native Maya (75% of population) who fight to preserve communal lands and avoid reduction to indentured labor. Mestizos are divided.

Maya achieve autonomous state of Chan Santa Cruz, (present-day Quintana Roo), after three years of massacres on both sides that reduce population by 30%. Mexican leaders distracted by threat from U.S. Conflict among Maya groups then breaks out, fed by arms from British who hold northern Honduras.

Yucatán is wracked by decades of fighting, with non-Mayans killed on sight in Santa Cruz territory; mestizos flee south to present-day Belize. Mexican, Guatemalan and British forces finally prevail over Santa Cruz Maya by 1901; final peace declared only in 1915. Deaths total at least 50,000.

1847**Irish Flee in 'Coffin' Ships**

Misery peaks as British attempts to deal with famine in Ireland fall short. With government support, perhaps 200,000 men, women and children depart from Queenstown, Galway and mainly Liverpool on overcrowded, unhealthy ships bound largely for Canada. More than 17,000 will die on the 6- to 10-week journey, many

of typhus spread by lice, or soon thereafter on Grosse Island and other St. Lawrence river quarantine facilities or on board scores of ships waiting their turn to unload the sick.

As many as half the "Black 47" ship survivors make their way into a U.S. that is far from welcoming to Catholics. The poorest refugees never get farther than Liverpool (or Glasgow), only to be shunned and (most) ultimately deported back to Ireland where the potato blight only worsened in the following year.

1847

Playing 'Oh! Susanna'

Stephen Foster's early minstrel song is performed at Andrew's Eagle Ice Cream Saloon, Pittsburgh, Sept. 11. A huge sheet-music hit, it boosts Foster's song-writing career and is soon followed by "Louisiana Belle," "Camptown Races," and "Ring, Ring de Banjo," all written for blackface minstrel groups, including the Christy Minstrels.

Foster later turns to "parlor songs" like "Jeannie with the Light Brown Hair" and "Beautiful Dreamer," the latter published after his 1864 death in New York at age 37.

1847

Independent Liberia Elects President

Liberia declares its independence from the American Colonization Society. John Roberts, a free man of color born in Norfolk, VA (whose mother was freed before his birth), is sworn in as the first president.

1847

McCormick Reaper in Production

In Chicago, Cyrus McCormick begins factory production of mechanical reaper (patent issued to him in 1834), which will help vastly increase agricultural production on the Plains and worldwide.

1848

California Gold Rush Begins

California gold rush set in motion with discovery near Sutter's Mill, near Sacramento, Jan. 24. A San Francisco paper breaks news in March. *New York Herald* announces it to East Coast, August. In 1849, 90,000 arrive in California, sailing around Cape Horn, or by wagon across the Plains, Rockies and Sierra Nevada, or (most quickly) by crossing the Central American isthmus via Panama or Nicaragua.

1848

Mexico Cedes Vast Territory

Mexico signs Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, February. Establishes Rio Grande as U.S. border, and cedes California and nearly all territory in today's Texas, New Mexico, Arizona, Nevada, Utah and western Colorado. Mexico gets \$15 million and pledge that Mexicans who stay will retain their lands and receive U.S.

citizenship. U.S. also promises to restrain Comanche raids into Mexico.

California: 1847 population estimated at 6,500 Californios (of Mexican or Spanish descent), 700 foreigners (mostly American) and 150,000 Indians.

By 1855, total non-Indian population is 300,000 from around the world.

1848

Wisconsin Joins Union, Free

Wisconsin joins Union as 15th free state, tying the count with the 15 slave states.

Northern Democrats push the Wilmot Proviso, which would outlaw slavery in all lands gained from Mexico. It fails in Congress for the third time. But it keeps alive the debate on status of slavery in new territories.

1848

Capital's Slaves Break for Ship

More than 75 slaves, aided by free blacks and abolitionists, attempt escape from Washington, DC, on the schooner *Pearl*. Caught off Point Lookout, they are returned to an angry, pro-slavery mob.

Most are sold to traders who transport them to New Orleans markets. Two teenage sisters, Mary and Eliza Edmonson, are freed with funds raised by the Brooklyn congregation of Henry Ward Beecher.

1848

Slave Plantation How-To Book

Cotton Plantation Record and Account Book, a veritable fill-the-blanks spreadsheet for managing plantations, and for measuring production and value of each slave, is published by Thomas Affleck. He is a Scottish immigrant and trained agrarian who owns a plantation in Washington, MS. New editions, which sell in the hundreds, published annually through 1860.

1848

Women Rally in Seneca Falls

First Women's Rights Convention, July, organized in Seneca Falls, NY, by Elizabeth Cady Stanton; Lucretia Mott and her sister, Martha; Mary M'Clintock; and Jane Hunt. All are active abolitionists; all except Stanton are Quakers. Frederick Douglass helps win convention approval to demand the vote for women.

1848

Taylor Elected President

Zachary Taylor (Louisiana), made popular by the Mexican War, elected over Democrat Lewis Cass (Michigan) and Van Buren (New York), who leaves Democrats to lead anti-slavery Free Soil Party (which included Liberty Party).

While parties hold conflicting positions on slavery, they avoid it as a campaign issue. Van Buren's splitting of Democratic vote in New York results in election of Taylor who is second and last president elected on the Whig line. Millard Fillmore (New York) elected vice president.

1848**Popular Uprisings Across Europe**

Revolution by liberals, working-class radicals, reformers and nationalists sweeps Europe, beginning in France (February), and running through smaller German states, Hungary, Italian states, Poland, etc. Demands for universal male suffrage, freedom of the press. Blamed in part on European potato blight that has killed many thousands, on the Panic of 1847 and on resulting economic distress.

French overthrow monarchy again, and create Second Republic headed by Louis-Napoleon who stages a coup, 1852, and establishes himself as emperor of the Second Empire.

After tremendous initial success in other countries, the new liberal regimes are almost universally overthrown. Leaders are executed or imprisoned, and many followers flee to Americas. But progressive forces are set in motion.

1848**France Abolishes Slavery**

New Second French Republic votes to permanently abolish slavery in all colonies within the year, April 27. Slave uprising on Martinique (65 slaves and 34 settlers die) leads to immediate abolition on that island, May 22. Guadeloupe quickly follows, May 27. Guiana's slaves are freed Aug. 10.

Victor Schoelcher, a staunch abolitionist familiar with the colonies, leads the effort in Paris. The following year, legislation passes granting former owners 120 million francs in compensation.

1848**Danish Islands Go Free**

Danish King Christian VIII supports gradual abolition on Saint Thomas, Saint John and Saint Croix, scheduled for 1859. But slaves, led by "General" Buddhoe rise on St. Croix, July 2, burning plantations and besieging Frederiksted. Governor-general takes it upon himself to declare them immediately emancipated and wins cooperation toward negotiating new, free system.

1849**Harriet Tubman Escapes**

Harriet Tubman (born Araminta Ross in 1822) escapes Madison, MD, slave master to Philadelphia, September. She soon returns for her family to begin 10-year career of helping to free slaves. She guides more than 70 men, women and children to freedom via the Underground Railroad and sets them up in Northern states and in Canada.

Also, Henry "Box" Brown ships himself in a crate (3" by 2.5" by 2") from slavery in Richmond to the office of the Philadelphia Anti-Slavery Society, March 30.

1849**California Bans Slavery**

California delegates elected Aug. 1 (at direction of U.S. military governor)

convene in Monterey to write first constitution, even though Congress hasn't yet declared it a territory.

Slavery had been banned under Mexican law, but some Southern masters brought slaves to the post-war gold rush. White miners resisted use of slave workers as unfair competition and that view prevailed in the constitution convention when its chairman, a slaveholder back in Tennessee, declined to push enslavement. But blacks are denied the vote and other civil rights.

The constitution is ratified in a November referendum and sent to Congress in support of the bid for statehood.

1849

***Amistad* Factory Destroyed**

Royal Navy squadron, led by Capt. Peter Fitzgerald, destroys the Lomboko slave factory at mouth of Gallinas river, Sierra Leone. Spanish slave merchants, led by Pedro Blanco, worked with regional chiefs to export 2,000 slaves a year, including the *Amistad* captives; Fitzgerald had testified at their 1840 trial in New Haven.

1849-1855

Another Cholera Pandemic

A third worldwide cholera pandemic that killed a million Russians and 52,000 in England in 1848, travels to famine-weakened Ireland in 1849 and again crosses the Atlantic. New York avoids the worst, but the Mississippi Valley suffers (4,500 die in St. Louis, 3,000 in New Orleans). Former Pres. James K. Polk dies of cholera June 1, 1849 in Nashville, TN, after a riverboat journey from New Orleans.

Disease sweeps into Mexico and through Caribbean. Jamaica hit in 1851, followed by Puerto Rico and, lastly, the Bahamas and Windward Islands. At least 200,000 die across the Caribbean, 40,000 on Jamaica alone, 10% of the population. Santo Domingo is also hard hit, but Haiti less so.

1850

1850

Irish Lead Immigrants

U.S. Census: total population, 23.19 million; slaves, 3.20 million (13.8%); free blacks, 434,000 (1.9%).

Immigration in 1840s nearly triples to 1.71 million (including 781,000 Irish, 435,000 Germans, 267,000 British, 75,000 Mexicans). Driven by years of famine in Ireland, failed revolutions of 1848 in Europe, gold in California and Mexican cession of Western lands.

1850

Largest Slave Masters

Joshua John Ward is the largest U.S. slave master with 1,092 on his South Carolina rice plantations.

Second is Stephen Duncan, the wealthiest U.S. cotton planter, with

almost 1,000 slaves working 15 plantations in Mississippi and Louisiana. Duncan also has extensive banking, lumber, steamboat and railroad interests. Slaves account for half his estimated \$3.5 million worth (roughly \$137 million today, and thus a surprisingly small fortune compared to those of 21st-century U.S. billionaires).

Duncan, who supports American Colonization Society, opposes secession in conflict with fellow plantation slave masters. He leaves Natchez in 1863 for New York.

1850

A Secession Threat Fails

Delegates from nine slave states meet at the Nashville Convention to debate secession from the Union if Congress acts to restrict slavery in new territories, June 3-11.

Sen. John C. Calhoun (South Carolina), who opposed the developing Compromise of 1850, sought the convention to pressure the North before his death, March 31.

In the end, moderate delegates prevail, supporting the Compromise.

Those favoring slave-state secession include Robert Barnwell Rhett (South Carolina), William Lowndes Yancey (Alabama), Louis Wigfall (Texas) and others who come to be called "the Fire-Eaters." Also supporting secession is Jefferson Davis (Mississippi), political heir to Calhoun in the U.S. Senate. Moderates include William L. Sharkey (a Mississippi judge) and Sam Houston (the Texas governor).

1850

Sojourner's Truth in Print

Sojourner Truth, born a slave c. 1797 in Ulster County, NY, publishes her narrative. A year later, she delivers her "Ain't I a Woman" speech to Ohio Women's Rights Convention in Akron.

1850

Compromise Opens Door to Extension

Congress passes Compromise of 1850, September. California admitted as 16th free state, compared to 15 slave. But future new states in New Mexico and Utah territories won from Mexico are now to determine if they will be free or slave, including those north of the Missouri Compromise 36° 30" dividing line. But that line still applies in Louisiana Purchase area.

Also, a new Fugitive Slave Act shifts enforcement from states to federal government, which will increase friction in free states and push more escaping blacks to go all the way to Canada.

Slave trade is banned in Washington, DC, although slavery there continues. Foreseeing such a move, Alexandria, a major slave-trade city, won return to Virginia from District in 1846.

Brokered by Clay of Kentucky (Whig) and Stephen Douglas of Illinois (Democrat) and signed by Millard Fillmore (who became president after July 9 death of compromise-opposing Zachary Taylor; both Whig).

Compromise sidelines secession threat, but fans passions on both sides over the next 10 years.

1850

Seminole Escape to Mexico

A band of 200-plus Seminole (at least half of them Black Seminoles) led by Wild Cat and John Horse, escape the Creek reservation in the Indian Territory and cross Rio Grande into northern Mexico. The Creek had treated free blacks as enslaved and allowed slave traders to hunt them.

Mexicans welcome them as *mascofos* and arm them against Comanche and Texans. Some Indians eventually return to Oklahoma. Texas Rangers, attempting to destroy the remaining black settlement at El Nacimiento, south of the Rio Grande, are repelled in 1855.

In 1870, a number of Black Seminoles are invited to join U.S. army scouts at Fort Clark, TX; three awarded Medal of Honor in 1875 following a fierce engagement with the Comanche on the Pecos river.

1850

Jenny Lind Tours U.S.

Jenny Lind, 29-year-old Swedish soprano sensation, begins two-year tour of U.S. in New York, September. Introductory leg, promoted by P.T. Barnum, goes to Boston, Philadelphia, Washington, Richmond, Charleston, Havana, New Orleans, Louisville, Cincinnati and Pittsburgh.

1850

Sugar: Cuba's No. 1

Cuba passes Brazil as the leader in sugar production, exporting nearly a third of the world total. In addition to vast expansion of slave numbers, planters introduce steam-powered mills that draw still more juice per ton of cane. Narrow-gauge railroads bring the processed raw sugar to Havana and Santiago de Cuba.

Wealthy planters and slave masters dominate the island's politics.

1850

Brazil Finally Bans Trade

Brazil's parliament moves to definitively ban slave imports, Sept. 4, ending a surge in smuggling of slaves to work booming coffee plantations.

Britain unilaterally enforces this ban by sending anti-slavery patrols into Brazilian harbors to seize slavers; at one point a Royal Navy vessel exchanges fire with a Brazilian fort.

Slavery within Brazil remains legal until 1888.

1850

California Indians Decimated

Most of 200 Pomo people gathered on an island in Clear Lake, northern California, are killed by U.S. troops under Lt. Nathaniel Lyon, May 15, including many women

and children. This is retaliation for the killing of two white settlers said to have enslaved young Pomos.

Such enslavement was effectively made legal by the state-in-waiting's first legislature via its Act for Government and Protection of Indians, April 22, which permits settlers to obtain and hold Indian children for work.

In 1851, the first governor, Peter Hardemann Burnett, endorses "war of extermination" against Indians. Some counties offer bounties for Indian scalps. In 1852, state budgets \$1.1 million for militias that hunt Indians.

At least 4,500 California Indians are killed between 1846 and 1873 by miners and settlers individually or in vigilante packs, and by militia and U.S. army forces. Total violent deaths may be triple that, most of them in the early gold-rush years.

California indigenous population estimates: 310,000 in 1770 (arrival of Spanish mission builders); 150,000 in 1830 (before cession to U.S. and the gold rush); 70,000 in 1870. Based on data from S.F. Cook.

1850s

Royal Navy Seizes 1,600 Slavers

British anti-slavery squadron now counts 25 ships with crews totaling 3,000, a third of them blacks from African coastal regions (including Kroomen from Liberia). From 1808 to 1860, Royal Navy seizes 1,600 slave ships, freeing 150,000 men, women and children.

But far more slavers evade the British, delivering more than 3 million enslaved to the Americas over the same period. Nearly 20,000 squadron sailors and officers die over those 52 years.

1851

Sensation: *Uncle Tom's Cabin*

Uncle Tom's Cabin; or, Life Among the Lowly by Harriet Beecher Stowe serialized in *The National Era* (beginning June 5). Book published March 1852. Only the Bible outsells it in 19th-century U.S. Stowe's father is Lyman Beecher, who led Lane Theological Seminary in Cincinnati; brother is Henry Ward Beecher, the abolitionist minister in Brooklyn.

A stage version opens in New York, November; eight "anti-Tom" novels issued by Southern writers by year's end. A later anti-Tom book, *The Planter's Northern Bride*, is by Caroline Lee Hentz, a leading female writer who knew Stowe when they both lived in Cincinnati.

Elements: Bondage under bad and better masters, being sold from Kentucky to Louisiana, fugitives crossing Ohio river, Underground Railroad and escape to Canada and ultimately to Liberia, field work versus house, white disdain and stereotyping, Quakers, sex slavery, miscarriages, childhood death, Bible power, Tom saving white child from drowning, Tom beaten but, before dying, forgiving overseers who then turn to pious lives.

Legend: Lincoln greets Stowe at the White House in November 1862: "So you are the little woman who wrote the book that started this great war."

1851**Southern Designs on Cuba Fail**

Narciso López, a disgruntled former Spanish official on Cuba, leads several hundred men from the U.S. to the island, hoping to stir up a revolution and ultimately to deliver Cuba as a new slave state to the U.S., August. This, López's third "filibuster" attempt, is supported by Mississippi Gov. John Quitman, a leader of pro-slavery Southerners fixated on absorbing Cuba into the union.

López and his men are quickly rounded up. Most are tried and executed, including López and a number of the Americans (in Havana's Punta Castle). The rest are sent to work in mines.

1851**Brazil Ban Takes Hold**

Slave trade to Brazil is finally, effectively, suppressed in wake of revolt on coffee plantations, a yellow-fever outbreak attributed to imported slaves, steady opposition by Emperor Pedro II, and heightened British pressure (including funding of Brazilian abolitionists and bribing of Brazilian legislators to pass tougher law in 1850, in addition to reinforced naval patrols that aggressively board and seize suspected slavers).

Traffic to the largest slave destination all but ends by 1852. Bondage, however, continues for those already enslaved in Brazil.

Meanwhile, Ecuador goes all the way in abolishing slavery.

1851**Refuge City Defeats Dahomians**

In March, Dahomey's King Ghezo attacks Abeokuta at the foot of the Olumo Rock 50 miles north of Lagos (Nigeria). City was founded in 1825 by Egba people as a refuge from slave raids amid disintegrating Oyo empire.

Ghezo seeks captives to enslave. His warriors, including the fierce female *Mino*, scale city walls but are turned back with heavy losses.

1851**British Oust Slave-Trade Ruler**

Royal Navy squadron bombards Lagos, Dec. 26-28, and British replace pro-slave trade ruler Kosoko with previous leader, Akitoye, who signs treaty to end slave trading (and human sacrifice), Jan. 1.

Madame Efunroye Tinubu, a leading merchant, works behind scenes to continue slave dealing with Portuguese merchants. She also supports uprising against growing Saro and Amaro communities who begin to dominate legitimate trade with British.

The Saro are mostly Yoruba and Igbo peoples (and their descendants) freed from slave ships by British patrols and originally taken to Sierra Leone. The Amaro are slaves freed by new governments in Spanish America.

1852**Shocking Tale of Kidnapped Black**

Twelve Years a Slave by Solomon Northrup is published in New York, dedicated to Harriet Beecher Stow. It tells of Northrup's free birth in Saratoga Springs, NY, kidnapping in Washington, and bondage on Red river plantations in Louisiana.

1852

Democrat Pierce Elected

The incumbent president, Millard Fillmore (New York), is denied nomination by Whigs divided over Compromise of 1850. They go for Winfield Scott (New Jersey), the nation's leading general, known for anti-slavery views.

Democrats choose Franklin Pierce (New Hampshire), a former general, on 49th ballot and he easily wins both the popular and electoral vote in a surprisingly issue-free campaign.

Daniel Webster, Fillmore's secretary of state, accepts the nomination of the upstart Union Party, but dies nine days before the election.

Democrats also extend their majority in House and maintain it in Senate.

Their crushing defeat leads to Whigs' final disintegration, with most Northern members turning to the Republican Party launched 17 months later.

1853

Gadsden Purchase in Southwest

Mexican Pres. Santa Anna agrees to sell to the U.S., for \$10 million, 30,000 square miles of what is now southern Arizona and New Mexico, between El Paso, TX, and Yuma. Pres. Pierce and U.S. minister to Mexico James Gadsden (originally from Charleston, SC) want it for a transcontinental railroad route that would benefit Southern ports.

That railroad is finally opened in 1883 as the Southern Pacific between Houston and Los Angeles.

1853

Rebellion on Cape Verde Islands

Bloody slave uprising on Portugal's Cape Verde Islands is suppressed. Details are not easily found, but it helps generate a movement to more easily free children of slaves.

1854

Slavery Supporters Back Kansas-Nebraska Act

Kansas-Nebraska Act repeals the Missouri Compromise with principle of "popular sovereignty," with citizens determining status of slavery in territories gained from the Louisiana Purchase. This ends the absolute ban on slavery north of 36° 30".

Sen. Stephen A. Douglas, an Illinois Democrat, wants to begin work on a transcontinental railroad through the "unorganized territories" west of Missouri. But that can't happen until the territories of Kansas and Nebraska are created. His faction must agree that slavery can be extended into those areas to obtain critical Southern support.

After months of fierce national debate, the large Democratic majorities

(including Northern Democrats) pass the bill 37-14 in the Senate and 113-100 in the House. Pres. Pierce signs it May 30.

Suddenly, extension of slavery is possible to far more U.S.-held territory if approved by new settlers.

The law quickly triggers violence in Kansas between pro-slavery and Free-Soil forces, the latter opposing slavery, in part because it would undermine poor, non-slave farmers in favor of large planters.

1854

Cuba and Ostend Manifesto

Outrage over the Kansas-Nebraska Act leads Pres. Pierce to spike plans for a secret invasion of Cuba by several thousand Americans under former Mississippi Gov. John Quitman (who had supported Narciso López's failed 1851 attack).

In October, three U.S. ministers in Europe (including James Buchanan in London) secretly propose, in the Ostend Manifesto, the purchase or forcible annexation of Cuba from Spain. Many Southerners project Cuba would join union as a slave state.

Manifesto also argues that annexation would forestall "Africanization" of Cuba, Haiti-style. But opposition from the Northern U.S. and from Europe forces Pierce to relent on this scheme as well.

1854

Republican Party Rises

Nearly 10,000 people, angered by the new Kansas-Nebraska Act, convene outdoors July 6 in Jackson, MI, to call for exclusion of slavery from all federal territories. Formerly Free Soilers, Whigs and anti-slavery Democrats, they call themselves Republicans and nominate candidates for governor, the state legislature and Congress.

Anti-slavery voters quickly follow suit in Wisconsin, Illinois, Pennsylvania, Vermont, Massachusetts and Maine.

In November, 13 Republicans are elected to the House. They join with other anti-slavery parties, as well as with the anti-immigrant Know Nothings and what's left of the Whigs to oust 69 Democrats (most from the North). They work to elect Free Soiler (and Know-Nothing) Nathaniel P. Banks of Massachusetts as speaker, the only speaker from a third-party in U.S. history.

Kinsley S. Bingham, a leader of the Jackson meeting, is elected governor of Michigan, the first Republican to win any governorship.

First meeting: Republicans actually date their first meeting to March 20, 1854, in a Ripon, WI, school. A few dozen people, led by lawyer Alvan Earle Bovay, vow opposition to any extension of slavery in the West. Bovay comes up with the name "Republican," which is picked up by a friend back East, *New-York Tribune* editor Horace Greeley who urges its quick adoption.

1854

Teacher Desegregates Horse Cars

Elizabeth Jennings, a black teacher at New York's African Free School, is

ejected from a segregated horse car, July 16. She wins support of prominent blacks, including Frederick Douglass, goes to court and wins a jury award of \$250. Chester A. Arthur, a future president, argues her case.

The losing company immediately desegregates all its cars. But desegregation of all city public-transit services is incomplete until 1865.

1854

Books Defend Slavery

George Fitzhugh's *Sociology of the South, or, The Failure of Free Society* asserts that the South's enslaved enjoy better lives than the "free" laborers of the capitalistic North and of Europe, impoverished by relentless wage competition.

He suggests slavery actually comes far closer to delivering on the emerging communist promise of "from each according to his ability, to each according to his needs." He asserts that Jefferson's ideal of "equal rights" are contradictory to the natural order, and proposes that slavery be extended to benefit poor whites as well as blacks.

His *Cannibals All, or Slaves Without Masters*, wins even wider circulation in 1857, and wider condemnation from abolitionists.

1854

Rails Reach Mississippi

Chicago and Rock Island Railroad opens final rail link between New York and Mississippi river at Rock Island, Feb. 22. Travel time is 42 hours. Toledo, Norwalk and Cleveland Railroad, completed the previous year, was final link between New York and Chicago. The Rock Island will also open the first rail bridge across the Mississippi, opposed by steamboat interests, April 22, 1856.

The final rail link between the Atlantic ports of Charleston and Savannah to Memphis (via Atlanta and Chattanooga) opens in May 1857.

In the North, rail construction is by "free" paid laborers, a majority of them new immigrants. In the South, slave gangs, some bought directly by railroads and more leased from plantation owners, do virtually all of the physical track, bridge and tunnel work.

1854 and after

Steam Gins and Presses

Large steam-driven cotton gins are processing 4,000 pounds a day, 80 times as much as Whitney's original hand-driven gin. Plus, steam presses are more quickly compacting the 500-pound bales for shipment.

But cotton planting, cultivation and picking are not mechanized until the 20th century. "Stoop labor" is required for decades in the fields.

1855

1855

Kentucky: Interracial School Founded

Rev. John G. Fee opens a one-room school which takes the name of his church, Berea, and dedicates itself to interracial education, the first to do so in slave-state South. Fee works with land donated by Cassius Marcellus Clay, an anti-slavery planter. Teachers are brought in from Oberlin.

But Fee and his staff are driven from Kentucky to Ohio in 1859. During the war, he works with black soldiers recruited at Camp Nelson and advocates for their families.

Berea College enrolls 96 blacks and 91 whites in 1866 and continues integrated education until Kentucky legislature prohibits such in 1904. While that law stands, until 1950, Berea establishes the Lincoln Institute for black students near Louisville.

1855

Cholera Strikes Caribbean, Brazil

Cholera epidemic reaches Caribbean, November. At least 20,000 die on Barbados; more than 26,000, 5.4% of the population, die on Puerto Rico before disease subsides in December 1856. Spanish government later promotes immigration of thousands to Puerto Rico from Canary Islands.

Brazil and Venezuela also hit, both for first time. Brazil suffers more than 160,000 deaths, with slave and mixed-race populations particularly devastated.

1855

Walker's Nicaraguan Takeover

William Walker raises mercenary force of 300 Americans at invitation of Nicaraguan Pres. Francisco Castellón to defeat the latter's political rivals. Castellón dies of cholera and Walker makes himself president, 1856, with U.S. Pres. Pierce recognizing him as such.

Walker repeals Nicaragua's ban on slavery to win support of Southern U.S. states, but runs afoul of Cornelius Vanderbilt in seizing Vanderbilt's cross-isthmus shipping business.

Costa Rica, Honduras and El Salvador join in 1857 to defeat Walker who soon surrenders to a U.S. Navy commander and is repatriated to New Orleans and a hero's welcome. After a second attempt to invade Central America, Royal Navy turns Walker over to Honduras, which executes him by firing squad, Sept. 12, 1860.

1856

Kansas: Free-Soilers Attacked

Lawrence, KS, center of Free Soil anti-slavery community, sacked by pro-slavery mob, which dumps the press and type of the *Herald of Freedom* newspaper and burns down the Free State Hotel and homes of leaders, May 21. However, only one person dies.

1856

Sumner Beaten after Speech

In his "Crime Against Kansas" speech, Sen. Charles Sumner of Massachusetts

calls Kansas-Nebraska Act “rape of a virgin territory” and charges Sen. Andrew Butler of South Carolina with taking “the harlot, Slavery” as a mistress, May 22, a day after the Lawrence incident.

Two days later, South Carolina Rep. Preston Brooks, a cousin of Butler’s, beats Sumner nearly to death in the Senate chamber. Many Southern Democrats voice support of Brooks; Northerners are outraged. Sumner is unable to return to his Senate duties until June 1860.

1856

John Brown in ‘Bloody Kansas’

John Brown, advocating violent action to end slavery, is joined by his sons and other followers in raiding settlement on Pottawatomie Creek, KS. They seize five pro-slavery men in their homes and hack them to death with swords, May 24.

More than 250 Border Ruffians attack Free Soil town of Osawatimie, KS, Aug. 30. They run off Brown and 40 Free Soil defenders, killing five, including Brown’s son, Frederick. The town is looted and burned.

1856

Olmsted: Slavery Benefits Few

Frederick Law Olmsted’s multi-year survey of the South’s slave economy is issued in book form (after running in *The New York Times*). He reports that no more than 8,000 plantation masters derive significant profits from slave system, and that most white workers are considerably worse off than their Northern counterparts.

1856

Buchanan Elected President

Democrat Buchanan (Pennsylvania) elected president over John C. Frémont, first Republican presidential candidate, who does well in Midwest, New York and New England. Know-Nothing (anti-immigrant party) Fillmore comes in third, Nov. 4. Democrats take back House.

Incumbent Franklin Pierce lost nomination to Buchanan because of his unpopular (in Northern states) support of pro-slavery groups in Kansas.

1856

Portugal Frees Newborn

Sá de Bandeira, minister of the Overseas Council in Lisbon, orders that children born of enslaved women will be free, from July 26 onward upon Catholic baptism. But they must serve mothers’ masters until age 20. This applies to the large slave populations of Angola and Mozambique.

In the Cape Verde Islands, godparents frequently put up the 200 réis that will free a child there. It’s not clear how Sá da Bandeira’s new law applies there.

1856-1858

Last Seminole War

Skirmishes and raids break out between remaining Seminole bands in central

Florida, and pressing white settlers and militia. Troops destroy Seminole towns and crops in Big Cypress Swamp and offer cash payments (\$500 to warriors, \$100 to women) to accept removal to Indian Territory. Facing starvation, most do, but several small, family bands withdraw into Everglades. Their descendants eventually receive tribal recognition and reservation lands, which they hold to this day.

1857

Supreme Court Rules for Slavery

Supreme Court, in 7-2 *Dred Scott vs. Sandford* decision, finds blacks—slave or free—cannot be citizens of the nation or of any state and thus have no standing in federal courts, March 6. Decision goes on to strike down entire Missouri Compromise as unconstitutional limit on slavery.

Note: Chief Taney and two other justices who ruled in favor of slaves in *Amistad* case rule against Scott here. Justice McLean ruled for both *Amistad* slaves and Scott.

Scott and family are freed in May by Taylor Blow, son of their original owner.

1857

Tukular Empire Rises

Umar Tall, a charismatic Muslim mystic, seeks to take the non-Muslim Khasso kingdom in his Senegal valley *jihad*. But his siege of a Khasso-friendly French fort at Medina fails, July.

Umar Tall turns east against Bambara kingdoms, making their city of Ségou capital of his new Tukular empire, and then attacks the fading Massina empire, 1862. After three battles costing as many as 70,000 lives, Umar Tall's army takes Djenné and levels Hamdallah. His brief occupation of Timbuktu is ended by a coalition of Tuareg, Maure and Fula forces, 1863, and he dies the following year. But the Tukular will control the Senegal and Niger headwaters for decades to come.

1858

Minnesota Joins Union, Free

Minnesota admitted as 17th free state, compared to 15 slave. Republicans win a plurality in the U.S. House for the first time, in mid-term election, setting the stage for presidential election of 1860.

1858

Overland Stage Rolls West

John Butterfield's Overland Mail Company begins transcontinental stagecoach and mail service between St. Louis and Memphis in the east and Los Angeles and San Francisco in the west, September. Departures are twice weekly, stopping only to change horses or mules. Trip takes 25 days via snow-free southern route with stops at El Paso and Tucson (the latter within five-year-old Gadsden Purchase).

The service operates 2½ years, until the eve of war; proposals to open a more northern route fail.

1858**Congo Captives Smuggled into Georgia**

More than 409 captives are smuggled from the mouth of the Congo to Jekyll Island, GA, aboard *Wanderer*, a large racing yacht, Nov. 28. Another 75 slaves die on voyage. Ship had departed New York for Africa (via Charleston) flying the flag of the New-York Yacht Club.

Slaves are quickly sold, but *Wanderer's* owners, including Charles A.L. Lamar of Savannah and William C. Corrie of Charleston (who also captained the ship) are subject to federal trials in Savannah. These end in mistrials or acquittals, May, 1860. Outrage in North adds to sectional tensions.

Wanderer is seized by Union navy early in the war and serves in the blockade and as a hospital ship.

1859**Oregon Admitted, Free**

Oregon joins the Union, Feb. 14. It is the 18th free state, compared to 15 slave.

1859**435 Sold in Largest Auction**

More than 435 men, women and children are sold at the Ten Broeck Race Course near Savannah in what is believed to be the largest single slave auction in U.S. history, March 2-3. The seller is Pierce Mease Butler who has lost most of a huge inheritance from his grandfather, a Revolutionary War officer and a leading Southern delegate to the Constitutional Convention.

The slaves worked the Butler family's extensive rice and cotton plantations on Butler and St. Simons islands.

Butler was married to Fanny Kemble, a famed British actress and writer, who was shocked by conditions on the plantation. In 1863, long divorced, she described that experience in graphic terms in her book, *Journal of a Residence on a Georgian Plantation in 1838-1839*, which quotes slaves extensively.

1859**'Dixie' Makes Debut**

"Dixie" is performed for first time, April 4, in New York by Bryant's Minstrels, a blackface group including songwriter Dan Emmett (a banjo-playing Virginia Minstrels founder). After it becomes the Confederate marching song, pro-Union Emmet writes a fife-and-drum manual for Union army.

1859**Economic Attack on Slavery**

In a compact edition of his *Impending Crisis of the South*, issued in July, Hinton Helper attacks slavery on economic grounds, describing a South that has fallen woefully behind the free states. Helper's copious charts and tables (based on U.S. census and state data) are deemed highly effective.

With help from Horace Greeley and other abolitionists, more than 150,000 copies are quickly distributed to the delight of the abolitionists and the fury of

white Southerners. Possession of a copy is treated as a criminal offense in many slave states.

Helper, a North Carolina native, dedicates the book to non-slaveholding white Southerners. But he is no friend to blacks, later proposing their expulsion to Africa or Latin America.

1859

Brown Attacks Arsenal

John Brown leads raid on U.S. arsenal at Harper's Ferry, VA, Oct. 16. The 21 men, including five blacks, plan to seize weapons and inspire a general slave uprising. Although people are killed, including two of Brown's sons, the uprising doesn't happen. Militia and U.S. marines under Robert E. Lee take Brown and followers into custody after two days. Brown and seven others are tried, hanged, Dec. 2.

Well-known Boston abolitionists, including Garrison, provided financial aid for the raid; Harriet Tubman helped gather volunteers. Frederick Douglass voiced major reservations when Brown conferred with him that summer.

In death, Brown is widely lauded in the North as an anti-slavery hero, not least among black populations. To the South he is a demon who sought to bring its worst nightmare to life.

1859

Comstock Lode Revealed

Gold, and then silver, is found on the east slope of Mount Davidson in western Nevada. Word gets out in June and a new rush for riches is on. Virginia City is soon established as the main boomtown. While \$700 million worth of gold and silver is taken out of the ground by 1919, most mines don't pay.

1860

1860

U.S. No. 1 in Enslaved People

U.S. Census: total population, 31.44 million; slaves, 3.95 million (12.6%); free blacks, 488,000 (1.6%). Of the slave states, Virginia still leads with 49,887 in bondage, 30.7% of its population. South Carolina has the highest proportion of slaves, 57.2% of its population. The census also reports that one in 10 slaves cultivate tobacco; another 10% raise sugar, rice or hemp; and more than half work in cotton fields.

The U.S. thus has the largest population of enslaved persons in the Atlantic world, more than Brazil, although that country has imported far more African captives over the centuries.

Immigration in 1850s totals 2.60 million, up 52% over previous decade, for a total of 5.06 million since 1820. Immigrants make up 13% of population, greatest share so far, with Irish-born accounting for nearly four in 10 of foreign-born, Germans more than three in 10. Great majority settle in Northern cities or head west.

Very few go south. South Carolina's foreign-born population is only 2% of the whole. New York City is 47% foreign-born. Immigrants avoid South because slave-based system debases pay.

1860

Republican Economic Bills Stymied

Three major pieces of legislation favored by Republicans from the North and West fail to advance in Congress due to Southern fears that they will boost Northern industry at the expense of the Southern plantation economy:

The Homestead Act, which would provide cheap Western lands to small, independent farmers and shut out large planters, is vetoed by Buchanan; the Pacific Railway Bill (House and Senate routes for a transcontinental railroad cannot be reconciled); and the Morrill Tariff, which would raise more federal revenue and protect Northern industries from British competition.

1860

Democrats Fail to Nominate

Democrats fail to nominate a presidential ticket at their convention in Charleston, April 23-May 3. With Buchanan keeping his promise to serve only one term, Stephen A. Douglas (Illinois) is the frontrunner. But a block of Southern delegates walk out, led by William Lowndes Yancey (Alabama), Robert Barnwell Rhett (South Carolina) and other Fire-Eaters, denying Douglas the necessary two-thirds majority. Because the party will not unequivocally support extension of slavery into new territories, the Fire-Eaters call for secession.

Just a week later, in Baltimore, a new Constitutional Union Party (mainly non-Republican ex-Whigs) nominates John Bell (Tennessee) for president, over Sam Houston of Texas. Bell is a slaveholder who opposes extension of slavery.

1860

Republicans Select Lincoln

The Republicans follow, opening their second national convention May 16 in Chicago. Although William Seward (New York) comes in as the frontrunner, it is Abraham Lincoln (Illinois) who finally wins a majority, and the nomination, on the third ballot. The platform opposes expansion of slavery, but does not call for abolition.

1860

Candidates to Split Democratic Vote

Democrats try again, in Baltimore, in June, but divide quickly into two conventions. The first nominates Douglas easily. The second, comprising walkout Southern Democrats, nominates Buchanan's vice president, John C. Breckenridge (Kentucky), for president.

Democrats fret that the split guarantees a Republican victory in November that will push South to secede. Many are certain that has been the goal of the Fire-Eaters all along.

1860**Enslaved Pick More, Cost More**

Slaves pick an estimated 400% more cotton per person this year than in 1801, thanks to latest hybrids, increasingly innovative techniques, "better-trained" overseers and "more effective" combinations of incentives and punishments.

Average price for enslaved men aged 21-38 sold in New Orleans is \$1,200, compared to roughly \$450 in 1804.

1860**Record Cotton Harvest**

Cotton is only 10 cents a pound after record Southern harvest of 4 million bales, two-thirds of world's total. Industrial Britain, which has bought 77% of its total 800 million pounds of cotton to this date from the South, has stored a large surplus. By the time that runs out in 1863, cotton has slowly risen to \$1.89.

1860**Last Captives Smuggled into U.S.**

Clotilda is last ship known to smuggle slaves into U.S., July 9. They are 110 Nupe and Yoruba people purchased at Whydah (from a Dahomey prince for \$100 in gold each) and brought to Mobile Bay. Shipowner Thomas Meaher and Capt. William Foster are identified but avoid federal charges.

Descendants of the slaves, freed at end of Civil War, live today in Africatown, in the north end of Mobile. Scuttled wreck of *Clotilda* is discovered near Twelve Mile Island in 2018.

1860**U.S. Seizes Two Slavers**

American ships overtake the *Erie* and *Storm King* off the mouth of the Congo with more than 1,500 captives, nearly half of them children, the largest number freed by the U.S. navy on a single day.

1860**South Wins New York Support**

Many New York bankers, merchants and shipowners, all representing large investments in the cotton trade, voice support for the South, as does city's Democratic mayor, Fernando Wood. Southern newspapers assert the city takes 40 cents of every dollar's worth of cotton sold in Britain and Europe in shipping charges, interest on loans, and trade in finished goods.

1860**Lincoln Elected with 40% of Vote**

Lincoln is elected president with 180 electoral votes (152 needed to win) and 1.87 million ballots (39.8% of total, 2nd lowest for a winner in U.S. history), November.

Douglas wins only 12 electoral votes despite 29.5% of the ballots; Breckenridge, 72 electoral votes and 18.1% of the ballots; and John Bell, 39 electoral votes, and 12.6% of the ballots.

Lincoln wins all the Northern and "free" states including California and Oregon; Breckinridge wins all the states that will secede, minus Virginia and Tennessee, plus Maryland and Delaware, also slave; Bell wins Virginia, Kentucky and Tennessee, all slave; Douglas wins only Missouri, also slave.

Southern slave masters see results as an existential threat to slavery.

Lincoln loses New York City to a fusion Democratic ticket by a 30% margin, but wins state's 35 electoral votes thanks to upstate support. A shift of 25,000 New York votes (3.7% of total) from Republican to Democratic column would have thrown election into the House of Representatives.

1860

New York: Blacks Denied Full Suffrage

State referendum votes down universal suffrage for black males, 64-36%. They continue to be required to be state residents for at least three years and hold at least \$250 worth of property debt-free; white males are not so required.

1860

Slaves + Plantations = 75% GDP

By some estimates, total value of plantations and slaves (worth a rough average of \$1,000 apiece) is equal to more than three-quarters of the nation's gross domestic product.

1860

Masters Dominate Legislatures

More than a third of state legislative seats in North Carolina, Alabama and Mississippi are held by "planters," defined in the U.S. census as owners of 20 or more slaves. In Georgia, just under a third of the seats are held by planters.

In South Carolina, more than half the legislators are planters.

1860

South Carolina, First to Leave

South Carolina secedes, Dec. 20. The vote of a special convention meeting in Charleston is 169-0. State militia seizes the U.S. arsenal, post office and federal customs house in Charleston.

Maj. Robert Anderson and his federal garrison abandon Fort Moultrie in favor of easier-to-defend Fort Sumter in the middle of Charleston Harbor, Dec. 26.

1860

'Peace Convention' Fails

Efforts through the winter and into March to find a compromise in Congress and at a "Peace Convention" in Washington fail; the gulf is too great. Lincoln sums it up in a letter to Alexander H. Stephens of Georgia (soon to become the Confederate vice president): "You think slavery is right and ought to be extended, while we think it is wrong and ought to be restricted."

1861**Six More States Leave Union**

Kansas joins the Union, January, as 19th free state, compared to 15 slave. Deep South states of Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia and Louisiana secede by month's end. Their state militias seize Federal arsenals and forts. Texas secedes Feb. 1, despite opposition of Gov. Sam Houston.

Slave masters play dominant role in voting proclamations of secession. The threat to slavery is cited as prime motive in these papers or supporting documents. Some counties vote to oppose secession, particularly in the mountains of northern Alabama, eastern Tennessee and western Virginia.

Texas declaration is particularly direct: "(Texas) was received (into the Union) as a commonwealth holding, maintaining and protecting the institution known as negro slavery—the servitude of the African to the white race within her limits (borders)—a relation that had existed from the first settlement of her wilderness by the white race, and which her people intended should exist in all future time."

1861**Confederate Congress Elects President**

Jefferson Davis of Mississippi, a resigned U.S. senator, former secretary of war and slave master, is selected provisional president of the Confederacy by the Provisional Congress of the seceding states, Feb. 9, in Montgomery, AL. Davis makes no mention of slavery. Voters confirm his presidency, without opposition, Nov. 6.

1861**Tariff Bill Passes**

Departure of Davis and other Southern senators paves the way for Morrill Tariff bill to pass Senate, Feb. 20. High tariffs will protect industry in U.S. for decades, at expense of rural interests. Signed by Buchanan (as Pennsylvania manufacturers will benefit).

1861**Senate Passes 'Last Ditch' Amendment**

Just hours before Lincoln is sworn in, the Senate passes the Corwin Amendment, a last-ditch effort to protect slavery in Southern states from federal interference. Buchanan endorses it with his signature.

And although Lincoln quickly forwards it to states, only Kentucky ratifies the amendment (April 4) before war breaks out.

1861**Lincoln Takes Oath**

Lincoln sworn in as president by Chief Justice Roger B. Taney (who wrote Dred Scott decision) amid assassination threats and high security, March 4.

1861**'All Men *Not* Created Equal'**

Alexander Stephens, now vice president of the Confederacy, gives "Cornerstone Speech" in Savannah, March 21. He declares new Confederate government is founded on ideas "opposite" to the Declaration of Independence's assertion that "all men are created equal."

Instead, he says, "...its cornerstone rests upon the great truth, that the negro is not equal to the white man; that slavery—subordination to the superior race—is his natural condition. This, our new government, is the first, in the history of the world, based upon this great physical, philosophical, and moral truth."

After the South's defeat, Stephens will insist the Confederacy was more concerned with states' rights and economic issues rather than opposing views of who has right to liberty and citizenship.

1861**Britain Makes Lagos a Colony**

Warships led by HMS *Prometheus* and Comdr. Norman Bedingfield force the Lagos ruler, Dosunmo, to cede the island and nearby territory to Britain, which declares them a colony, March 5. British say they are concerned about continued slave trading as well as about French threats in Benin.

Going forward, Europeans will more frequently cite colonization as a solution to slavery.

Civil War

1861**South Carolina Opens Fire**

War opens with South Carolina militia bombarding Fort Sumter in Charleston Harbor, April 12. Lincoln calls for 75,000 volunteers to suppress "domestic insurrection" and proclaims naval blockade of Confederate ports to stop cotton exports and military imports.

1861**Last Four Secede**

In the wake of Lincoln's call for troops, Virginia secedes, April 17; Arkansas and North Carolina in May; and, finally, Tennessee in June, for a total of 11 in the Confederacy. Critically, four border slave states remain in Union: Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri (although shadow Confederate governments are set up for Kentucky and Missouri).

1861**U.S. Seizes Rio-Bound Slaver**

Nightingale, a large, fast, New Hampshire-built clipper is boarded by Marines from USS *Saratoga* at Cabinda, April 20, in mouth of the Congo river. On board are 961 men, women and children in chains, apparently bound for Rio de Janeiro. Of

these, 160 die before the seized ship can get to Monrovia and freedom.

Navy refits *Nightingale* to transport coal to Union ships blockading Gulf Coast ports. She was named in honor of Jenny Lind. Surviving records unclear as to who operated ship as a slaver.

1861

Escaping Slaves Declared Free

At Fort Monroe (Hampton Roads, VA), Gen. Benjamin Butler provides federal protection for escaping slaves on grounds that they are "contraband," May 27. Lincoln later signs enabling Confiscation Act, which includes slaves.

1861

Indians Ally with Confederacy

U.S. troops are withdrawn from Indian Territory (today's Oklahoma), leaving Cherokee, Choctaw, Creek and other tribes who walked the Trail of Tears exposed to attack from the Comanche, newly installed on reservation to their west.

The eastern tribes reach treaties with the Confederacy, which promises to protect them and defend their slaveholding rights. Many of these Indians take part in the war, the great majority fighting for the South.

1861

Early Blood at Bull Run

Union forces routed by Confederate army at First Battle of Bull Run, between Washington and Richmond, the new Confederate capital, July 21. Lack of training and experience apparent on both sides; so is fact that war will not be easy or short. Killed: 481, Union; 387, Confederate.

1861

Navy Accepts Escaped Slaves

Navy Secty. Gideon Wells directs commanders to "employ" escaped slaves seeking refuge on Union ships, July. (Many navy crews included blacks before the war.)

By year's end, blacks are incorporated into crews at equal pay. By war's end, 20,000 blacks make up more than 15% of Union navy's enlisted ranks. Army holds off until Emancipation Proclamation.

1861

First Telegraph to Pacific

The first transcontinental telegraph link opens between California and Eastern states, which puts the 18-month-old Pony Express out of business within days, October.

1861

10,000 Freed on Carolina Islands

Facing little resistance, a Union fleet under Flag Officer Samuel Du Pont takes Port Royal, Beaufort, Hilton Head and several other Sea Islands of South Carolina, Nov. 7, establishing a base for blockading fleet as well as for raids.

White masters flee 200 rice and cotton plantations, freeing 10,000 slaves (mostly Gullah) who are organized into free communities working the land for their food and for cotton, which is sold in the North. They move toward self-sufficiency under "the Port Royal Experiment." More than 50 enthusiastic abolitionists and missionaries arrive to help with schools, churches and farms; scores more follow. Treasury Secty. Salmon P. Chase provides personal and financial support.

Navy recruits black sailors here immediately; Union army follows with one of the first black regiments in 1862.

1861

'Battle Hymn' is Heard

Julia Ward Howe writes "The Battle Hymn of the Republic," which she sets to the tune of "John Brown's Body," November. That music and the "Glory, glory, hallelujah" refrain were taken from an old revival-meeting song.

1861

Lincoln: Compensated Emancipation?

Lincoln proposes that Delaware consider gradual, compensated emancipation of state's 1,798 slaves as an experiment, November. Slave masters would be paid \$400 per slave after complete emancipation by Jan. 1, 1882, with federal government picking up the total \$719,000 cost. Lincoln points out that this is considerably less than the \$2 million cost of a single day of war.

Although Delaware's slaves amount to only 1.6% of its population and are held by only a handful of masters, there is still too much opposition in the state legislature to bring a bill forward.

1861

Southern Presbyterians Split Off

Presbyterian Church in the Confederate States is created by 47 presbyteries and 10 synods of the Old School, Dec. 4. In the North, Old School Presbyterians continue to support emancipation. On the New School side, Southerners had already created an independent United Synod in 1857.

1861

Charleston Burns

Fire sweeps through downtown Charleston, destroying the Catholic Cathedral of St. John and St. Finbar, the South Carolina Institute and nearly 600 other buildings, night of Dec. 11. Firefighters, most of whom are free blacks or slaves, struggle to contain flames to 540 acres; cause is unknown.

1861

Russian Serfs Emancipated

More than 23 million are freed from serfdom on private lands under the Emancipation Manifesto issued by Czar Alexander II, March 3. Serfs—estimated at 38% of population—gain full rights of free citizens, including right to buy land from landlords, own a business, move freely within empire and marry without consent.

This is the most important reform inspired by Russian defeat in Crimean War (1853-1855), with liberal politicians hoping it will lead to rapid capitalization and industrialization. But peasants struggle, receiving insufficient land to flourish and continuing to work for landlords to repay debt. State-owned serfs are emancipated in 1866.

1862

Record Floods in West

Ten feet of water, in rain and snow fall on California over 43 days leading to worst flooding ever recorded, peaking in January. Sacramento and San Joaquin valleys, and Delta flooded for combined length of 300 miles, averaging 20 miles wide, wiping out bridges, roads, new telegraph lines, mills, Gold Country mines and thousands of homes. Deaths estimated at 4,000.

Los Angeles and San Diego counties similarly affected, as are Oregon's Willamette and lower Columbia valleys, and Nevada, present-day Idaho and Baja California. Waters don't fully recede before the fall.

Cause? "Atmospheric rivers" generated over the Pacific are now credited with the disaster, similar to systems that inundated same areas in early 2023.

1862

Union Takes Roanoke Island

This victory, Feb. 7, gives Union control of Pamlico and Albemarle sounds and the Virginia and North Carolina coast from Norfolk to Cape Lookout. Union navy and army had taken busy Hatteras Inlet the previous August in their first victory of the war.

Union forces follow up with the occupation of New Bern and Morehead City, NC, March.

A Freedmen's Colony is established on Roanoke Island the following year, with former slaves building two churches and a school.

1862

U.S. Recognizes Free Haiti

With opposing Southerners gone from Congress, the U.S. Senate and House vote by wide margins to finally recognize Haiti 58 years after its independence was won, February. They also vote to recognize independent Liberia.

1862

Border States Reject Slave Compensation

Lincoln reintroduces his Delaware proposal for gradual, compensated emancipation of slaves in a message to Congress, March 6, to apply to all four border states: Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri. Total cost: \$173 million for their 432,622 slaves, which he says is equal to 87 days of war. He further proposes emigration of freed persons to Haiti and Liberia.

While abolitionist backing is warm, the border senators and representatives insist on their states' constitutional right to permit slavery. And their support of the Union is critical.

1862**Battle Deaths at Shiloh**

Battle of Shiloh on Tennessee river kills nearly 3,500 combined (including Confederate commander Albert Sidney Johnston), with total casualties at more than 23,700. Bloodiest battle of war to date, April 6-7, ends with Confederate withdrawal.

Union forces capture Fort Pulaski in mouth of the Savannah river, closing that Southern port, April 11.

1862**3,000 Freed in Washington**

Lincoln signs into law immediate abolishment of slavery in Washington, DC, April 16. More than 3,000 people become free. More than 900 Union-supporting masters compensated \$300 per slave. But some masters choose to sell their slaves in Maryland for more money, which the law permits.

Ex-slaves who choose to emigrate overseas receive \$100.

1862**French Land in Mexico**

French forces arrive in Mexico, sent by Napoleon III at the invitation of Mexican conservatives and Catholic clergy, defeat a small force allied with Pres. Benito Juárez, and take Orizaba, April. This initiates French campaign to establish an empire in Mexico.

Mexican forces defeat French at Puebla, May 5—Cinco de Mayo—but are soon forced back on defensive and give up Mexico City in June 1863.

1862**Largest Southern City Falls**

Adm. David Farragut takes New Orleans, April 29, blocking Mississippi traffic through the Confederacy's largest city (169,000) and busiest port. Baton Rouge falls May 5, and Natchez, May 10. Union ironclads descending Mississippi defeat a hodge-podge of Confederate "cotton clads" at Memphis, June 6.

Over the next 12 months, thousands of slaves escape from scores of plantations for the Union lines. Black population of Memphis rises from 3,000 to nearly 20,000 in 1865.

Union troops lay waste to Louisiana agriculture. Sugar production alone drops from 270,000 tons in 1861 to 5,400 tons in 1864.

1862**Union Constricts Salt**

As salt shortage sweeps most of Confederacy in May. Less meat and fish can be preserved for Confederate soldiers and civilians alike. Union naval blockade stops salt imported from England and Bahamas; Union army targets salt works in Virginia, Kentucky and Louisiana.

1862**Slave's Bold Escape**

Robert Smalls, a slave hired out as a deckhand, loads wife, children and 12 other slaves onto a Confederate steamer (the *Planter*) and runs out of Charleston Harbor to safety of Union blockade ships, May 13.

Smalls' feat helps persuade Lincoln to recruit black soldiers into Union army. Smalls is later named commander of the *Planter* as part of the Union fleet. After the war, he serves 20 years as a U.S. congressman from South Carolina.

1862**Homestead Act Signed**

The Homestead Act of 1862, which will grant 160-acre tracts of Western land to independent farmers for \$1.25 an acre, is signed by Lincoln, May 20. Shuts out wealthy Southern planters, a longtime goal of Republicans and abolitionists. Sen. Andrew Johnson (Tennessee) is a leading sponsor.

Over the decades, settlers, including many immigrants, will claim 270 million acres in 30 states. Not open to those taking up arms against the U.S. Blacks specifically *included* in Homestead Act of 1866.

Most of this land will be taken by various U.S. treaties from Indian peoples forced onto reservations.

1862**Pacific Railway Goes Forward**

Lincoln signs Pacific Railway Act, which authorizes Union Pacific and Central Pacific to begin work on transcontinental railroad from Council Bluffs, IA, to Sacramento, July 1. Federal government to support with bonds and vast land grants to railroads.

This is the third of the major Republican economic and development bills long and bitterly opposed by now-departed Southerners in Congress. Already law are the Homestead Act and the increased Morrill Tariff.

1862**More Slaves Declared Free**

Slaves whose masters join the Confederate army are declared free by Union government under Second Confiscation and Militia Act, July 17. Also, slavery abolished in western U.S. territories, July 19. Also, Lincoln wins \$500,000 from Congress for colonization efforts.

1862**Lincoln: Races 'Should be Separated'**

Lincoln meets with five black clergymen at the White House to ask support for his latest voluntary colonization proposals (now focused on Central America), Aug. 14. He says, "But for your race among us, there could not be war," and asserts that racial equality is impossible in white-dominated U.S. and that races "should be separated."

When reports get out, Frederick Douglass leads widespread, but not universal, black outrage over the comments.

1862

Minnesota's Bloody Dakota War

A band of starving Dakota Sioux rise against white settlers in Minnesota river valley, Aug. 17, killing more than 300, and taking women and children hostage. Tens of thousands more flee. A chief, Little Crow, writes that an Indian agent had refused credit for food, saying Dakota children could "eat grass or their own dung."

Forts Ridgely and Abercrombie are besieged before a relief column defeats Little Crow's men, Sept. 23. Some Dakota withdraw to west and north to Canada, many others surrender with their families. Nearly 500 are subjected to military trials (most of which last just minutes) that result in 303 men sentenced to death.

Pres. Lincoln insists on reviewing trial records and commutes the sentences of all but 38. They are hanged in Mankato, the day after Christmas. It remains the largest single-day mass execution in U.S. history.

1862

Emancipation for 3.5 Million

Lincoln issues Emancipation Proclamation covering more than 3.5 million slaves held in rebelling states, Sept. 22, following Union victory at Antietam, MD (bloodiest day in U.S. history with 5,389 killed; 17,301 wounded).

To take effect three months later, proclamation frees as many as 75,000 slaves immediately in regions held by Union forces. Does not free slaves in loyal border states of Missouri, Kentucky, Maryland and Delaware, or in loyal counties of what will become West Virginia.

Blacks to be accepted into Union army and navy. Confederacy regards it as a call to race war.

1862

Blacks in Post-Slave 'Experiment'

Mitchelville, a new village built by former slaves, mainly Gullah, opens in November on Hilton Head Island, SC, the latest development in the Port Royal Experiment. Most people are paid wages for their work on behalf of Union military, but many also farm on the previous plantations. Stores and churches rise, schools are warmly welcomed by freed people; John Celivergos Zachos develops new methods for teaching adults.

In nearby Beaufort, 1st South Carolina Volunteers, the initial all-black regiment, is mustered in as authorized by Lincoln, also November. Recruits are Gullah men freed from Sea Islands plantations the previous year. Thomas Wentworth Higginson, an active white abolitionist in Boston before the war, is named commander.

1862

Last Bid for 'Compensated' Freedom

Lincoln makes one last, very detailed proposal for gradual, compensated emancipation in his annual message to Congress, Dec. 1.

1862

Massina Falls to Fierce Jihad

Umar Tall, leader of the Muslim Toucouleur people who has battled the traditionalist Bambara as well as French forces in Senegal, launches a *jihad* from his Futa Toro base. He soon overruns the Massina empire to the east, which he says has strayed from Muslim principals.

More than 70,000 die in three great battles, which end in May with the execution of the Massina leader, Amadu III; the destruction of the capital, Hamdullahi; and with Umar Tall in command of the vast inner Niger delta.

A revolt of Massina supporters succeeds in killing Umar Tall in 1864, but his fundamentalist Toucouleur empire survives under a nephew, Tidiani Tall.

1863

Blacks Volunteer for Union

Final Emancipation Proclamation takes effect, Jan. 1. A second black regiment of both free men and ex-slave troops, 1st Kansas Infantry (Colored), musters in at Fort Scott, beginning Jan. 13. Fights five battles before official 1864 induction into Union army; loses 178 officers and men in combat and 165 to disease over course of the war.

Outside Boston, 54th Massachusetts forms in February. Loses 40% of its mostly free men in assault on Fort Wagner outside of Charleston, July 18.

More than 180,000

Margin of Victory? By war's end, more than 180,000 blacks have served in Union army, 10% of total troops and 20% of black male population under 45. Most are mustered in in late 1863 and in 1864. They take part in more than 40 major battles, and are essential in guarding lengthy supply lines. Approximately 20% die in combat or, much more likely, of disease (a total mortality rate significantly higher than that of whites); 16 are awarded Medal of Honor.

1863

Whites Riot in Detroit

White mob burns 35 buildings and injures hundreds in Detroit's black neighborhood, March 6. Trial of a mixed-race man charged with molesting a white girl provides spark. Irish and German immigrants, also resenting draft enrollment (passed by Congress three days earlier), target the large community of free blacks and refugee slaves. Yet only two men die, one black and one white (deemed an innocent bystander).

1863

Richmond: Women Ransack Stores

In Richmond, 1,000 women ransack stores in search of food, April 2. They relent only when Pres. Davis threatens to order militia to open fire.

Hunger and privation spread through much of South. Family farms lie

fallow as Confederate draft takes virtually all able-bodied white men to fight (minus many exempt plantation masters).

Confederate armies begin to suffer as soldiers return home to help starving families plant and harvest. Some plantation regions fare better as long as slaves stay to raise vegetables and tend animals. But more slaves leave as Union armies drive deeper into South. Virginia, ravaged by armies on both sides through entire conflict, is particularly devastated.

1863

Black Soldiers Targeted

Confederate Congress proscribes enslavement or death for black soldiers captured in the field, equating their military service with slave revolts, and approves death penalty for their white officers, equating them with "insurrectionists," May 1. This extends a Dec. 24, 1862 order issued by Pres. Davis.

1863

Black Regiments in Action

1st and 3rd Louisiana Native Guards attack well-fortified Port Hudson on the Mississippi in an early test of black troops, May 27. Nearly 200 are killed or wounded. The assault fails, but convinces Union commanders they can rely on the new regiments.

Eleven days later, Confederate assault on Milliken's Bend, downriver from Vicksburg, is turned back in hand-to-hand fighting by three previously untested black regiments; 9th Louisiana (African Descent) suffers more than 45% killed, said to be the highest mortality rate suffered by any Union unit in one action.

Most of the 266 missing Union soldiers are black, and presumed captured and eventually returned to enslavement or executed. Grant confronts Confederate Gen. Richard Taylor by letter; Taylor denies any executions.

Gen. Ulysses S. Grant and War Secty. Edwin Stanton praise the black soldiers' performance, and decide to assign more black regiments to front lines.

1863

Harriet Tubman at War

Harriet Tubman, who has been quizzing escaped slaves for months, helps guide 300 black soldiers (2nd South Carolina) and a company of Rhode Island artillerymen aboard three small gunboats from Union base at Beaufort, SC, to raid Cumbahee river plantations, June 1-3. They seize much contraband, burn plantation structures and mills, and return with more than 750 freed men, women and children; no casualties.

1863

West Virginia Enters Union

West Virginia admitted into the Union, June 20. But slaves are not freed here until state legislature approves state emancipation at the same time that it ratifies the 13th amendment, Feb. 3, 1865.

1863**Gettysburg and Vicksburg**

Gettysburg, bloodiest battle of the war, halts last intrusion into North by Lee's army, July 1-3. **Stats:** Of Gen. George Meade's 94,000 Union troops, 23,000 are casualties; 3,100 killed; of 71,000 Confederates, 28,000 are casualties, 3,900 killed. No black regiments take part.

The fall of besieged Vicksburg to Gen. Grant, July 4, and of Port Hudson, July 9, give Union full control of Mississippi. Both Gettysburg and the Mississippi victories are turning points.

1863**Draft Riots in New York**

Riots break out in New York with implementation of first draft, July 13-16. Working-class whites, including many Irish immigrants, resent that wealthy can buy their way out of the draft and resent blacks competing for jobs. At least 120 die, 2,000 hurt with blacks targeted. Troops arrive on second day to find scores of public buildings ransacked or burned, plus two churches and many homes of abolitionists destroyed.

Ends in final showdown with mob near Gramercy Park. Thousands of blacks later move across East River to Brooklyn.

Worst scene: Burning of Colored Orphan Asylum on Fifth Avenue at 44th Street, although children are removed safely as flames rise.

1863**Blacks Lead Assault on Fort Wagner**

The 54th Massachusetts, a black regiment mustered into service just two months earlier, leads a two-brigade assault on Fort Wagner, a link in the coast defense of Charleston, July 18. They are turned back with 40% of the 600 men killed, wounded or captured. The white commander, Col. Robert Shaw, dies on the fort's parapet.

The regiment's courage inspires poetry and song in the North, and recruitment of many more blacks, both long-free and recently freed.

Fort Wagner is abandoned in September. **One factor:** Continuous Union bombardment churns up graves of both attackers and defenders, and an insufferable stench of death.

1863**Lincoln Vows Retaliation**

Informed by Grant that Confederacy is threatening captured black troops with enslavement or execution, Lincoln orders, July 31, that for every U.S. soldier killed "in violation of rules of war, a rebel soldier shall be executed" and for every U.S. soldier "sold into slavery, a rebel soldier shall be placed at hard labor."

It's not clear how many captured blacks might have been enslaved by the Confederacy, but few executions are proven. However, many black soldiers and some of their white officers are killed "trying to escape."

When the Confederacy excludes blacks captured at Fort Wagner in a

prisoner exchange days later, Union generals end all large-scale exchanges until last weeks of the war, which leads to massive expansion of prisoner populations at Selma, AL, and Andersonville, GA, in the South, and Camp Douglas (Chicago) and Elmira Prison in the North, among many others.

1863

All Men Are Created Equal

Lincoln reiterates that the U.S. is “dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal,” at Nov. 19 dedication of Union cemetery at Gettysburg.

He concludes: “...that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain—that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom—and that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth.”

1863

Black Troops in Carolina

Black troops of 2nd North Carolina Colored Infantry and 55th Massachusetts pursue Confederate guerrillas along eastern edge of Great Dismal Swamp, Dec. 3. They free 2,000 slaves and encounter maroon communities; many sign up for the Union army.

1863

Amnesty Offered to Confederates

Pres. Lincoln’s Proclamation of Amnesty and Reconstruction offers a pardon and restoration of property—except slaves—to Confederates who swear allegiance to the Union and accept emancipation, Dec. 8. But it requires no more than 10% of a state’s voters to take the pledge before readmission process can begin. Louisiana, much of it Union-occupied, is the first state to undergo process.

1863

Egypt Meets Cotton Demand

Cotton production soars in Egypt’s Nile Delta thanks to new irrigation canals and high prices in Europe. Egypt, much closer to big mills of Britain and the Continent, more than doubles high-quality exports in two years, making up for much of lost U.S. cotton.

1863

French Occupy Mexico City

French forces enter Mexico City, June 10, and appoint a junta, which invites Ferdinand Maximilian of Austria to be its emperor. Despite guerrilla opposition, French expand area under their control, taking San Luis Potosí, Dec. 22.

1863

Dutch End Caribbean Slavery

Dutch abolish slavery in Surinam and Dutch Antilles (Curaçao, Aruba, Sint Maarten, Sint Eustatius, Klein Bonaire, Saba), July. But slaves must continue

plantation work on paid “contract” basis for another 10 years. Slave masters reimbursed 200 guilders per slave. Many newly freed men become tenant farmers.

By 1873, work force includes many Chinese contract workers, especially in Surinam. After 1873, most laborers are imported from India and Java.

1863

Second Ashanti War

Fighting breaks out when a large Ashanti force crosses the Pra river to threaten British holdings. Widespread disease on both sides ends fighting the following year.

1864

Navajo’s Long Walk

After January destruction of their irrigated fields and livestock in and around Canyon de Chelly, AZ, by U.S. troops and allied Utes led by Kit Carson, Navaho (Diné) submit to relocation to Bosque Redondo region of New Mexico.

Many die in a series of marches on the 400-mile “Long Walk.” Perhaps 8,000 survivors struggle to raise crops as government aid is lacking and Comanche attack frequently.

Their leaders will negotiate the Navaho return to northern Arizona four years later.

1864

Maximilian, Emperor of Mexico

Maximilian is crowned emperor of Mexico in Mexico City, April 10. French and Mexican allies control most of the nation. But Benito Juárez and Republican forces keep up the fight in numerous skirmishes.

1864

Congress Seeks Tougher Amnesty

Congress’s Wade Hampton Bill would require allegiance of a majority of state voters, restrict many former Confederates from office, and require not just freedom, but equality before the law, for blacks. Lincoln declines to sign the bill, killing it, July.

1864

Fort Pillow Killings

Confederate soldiers under Nathan Bedford Forrest kill 300 black Union soldiers after their surrender at Fort Pillow, TN, April 12. Circumstances disputed. Union threatens retaliation; Confederacy quietly begins to treat black prisoners as soldiers, not as slaves in insurrection.

1864

Fugitive Slave Laws Repealed

Congress officially repeals Fugitive Slave Acts of 1793 and 1850, June. Grant’s

army grinds out offensive through Virginia to Petersburg, May 5-June 24.

1864

Equal Pay for Black Troops

Congress grants equal pay to black troops and makes it retroactive; equal rations, supplies and medical care also directed, June 15.

1864

Sacrifice in the Crater

Battle of the Crater, in which seven black regiments suffer severe casualties in mismanaged attack. That follows explosion of a massive Union mine under a Confederate strong point defending Petersburg, July 30.

There are reports that enraged Confederates kill many wounded and surrendering black troops.

1864

Maryland Abolishes Slavery

Voters of Maryland, a slave state that stayed in the Union, ratify new state constitution abolishing slavery, Oct. 13, but by only 375 votes out of nearly 60,000 cast. White soldiers' vote, 2,663 in favor, 263 against, is critical.

1864

Reconstruction in Louisiana

Reconstruction begins in Union-occupied Louisiana, which meets Lincoln's lenient amnesty requirement that only 10% of state's voters need declare allegiance to the U.S.

The *New Orleans Tribune*, first daily newspaper published by blacks, founded by Louis Charles Roudanez, a Creole physician whose mother was a free woman of color.

1864

Atlanta Falls, Lincoln Re-Elected

Adm. David Farragut takes Mobile Bay, Aug. 5. Gen. William Tecumseh Sherman takes Atlanta, Sept. 2. His army begins drive through Georgia to Savannah and the sea, Nov. 15.

Lincoln easily re-elected on Union ticket, Nov. 8, with pro-Union Democrat Andrew Johnson (Tennessee) as vice president. They take 22 of 25 states, although vote is close in New York State where Lincoln wins only 1.9% more votes than Democrat George McClellan (New Jersey), a previous commander of Union armies.

1864

Black Troops Lead Attack

More than 4,500 black troops spearhead a Union thrust ordered by Gen. Grant against strong Confederate defenses, southeast of Richmond, Sept. 29. Gains at New Market Heights are few against withering fire; casualties are severe.

Fourteen of those engaged will receive Medal of Honor for continuing to press forward, leading troops when colors fall and white officers are killed.

1864

Sherman Takes Savannah

Union army of 60,000 spreads 50 miles wide in 285-mile march through Georgia, destroying crops, rail lines and freeing as many as 25,000 blacks, thousands of whom follow the army. With little opposition and few casualties, Sherman's men reach Savannah Dec. 21, dividing the Southern heartland.

Ebenezer Creek Disaster: Union Gen. Jeff C. Davis orders pontoon bridge taken up after soldiers and wagons cross, stranding perhaps 600 trailing blacks, mostly women, children and elderly men, Dec. 9.

At least 100 die trying to ford the swollen creek, more are killed when Confederates ride up; survivors are returned to slavery. Incident will lead to Sherman's Field Order 15, setting aside coastal land for freed blacks (below).

1864

War in Paraguay

Brutal, six-year Paraguayan War breaks out, November, between Paraguay on one side and the Triple Alliance of Brazil, Argentina and Uruguay. Brazil's black slaves and Paraguay's Indian population play central roles, suffer significant casualties and gain politically within their respective countries.

1865

1865

Missouri Frees its Slaves

A Missouri state constitutional convention votes 60-4 to free slaves immediately, Jan. 11. Emancipation Proclamation did not apply to this border state that remained in Union.

1865

Sherman Reserves Land for Blacks

Gen. Sherman issues a field order setting aside a large swath of the South Carolina, Georgia and Florida coast, in 40-acre parcels, for farming exclusively by freed blacks, Jan. 16. This includes Sea Island plantations under the Port Royal Experiment.

The order is pushed by Edwin M. Stanton, secretary of war, after meeting Jan. 12 in Savannah with Sherman and with 20 black ministers. The latter, citing Ebenezer Creek (which has caused outrage in Northern newspapers), urged such action for newly freed families, separating them from unfriendly whites. Pres. Lincoln approves Field Order 15 before Sherman announces it.

More than 40,000 parcels will be granted and under cultivation before Sherman's order is countermanded in the fall by Pres. Andrew Johnson.

1865**13th Amendment Sent to States**

13th Amendment to Constitution, ending slavery throughout Union, is approved by Congress with Lincoln's strong support, and is sent to states for ratification, Jan. 31.

1865**Charleston Surrenders**

Sherman takes Columbia, SC, Feb. 17. Charleston, in ruins from 1861 fire and 587 days of naval and land bombardment, surrenders Feb. 18. Two black regiments lead Union column into the city singing "John Brown's Body."

Black citizens celebrate April 14 with a parade of thousands and return of U.S. flag to Fort Sumter, joined by William Lloyd Garrison and many Northern abolitionists, and addressed by Henry Ward Beecher. They learn of Lincoln's assassination the next morning.

Reconstruction

1865**Freedmen's Bureau Created**

Pres. Lincoln signs bill creating the Freedmen's Bureau within War Dept., March 3, with wide powers to dispense relief to black and white refugees, including shelter, medical care and education, and to redistribute "abandoned" lands. Gen. Oliver O. Howard is named commissioner. Operates to 1868.

1865**Lincoln's 2nd Inaugural Address**

"...Fondly do we hope, fervently do we pray, that this mighty scourge of war may speedily pass away.

"Yet, if God wills that it continue until all the wealth piled by the bondsman's 250 years of unrequited toil shall be sunk, and until every drop of blood drawn with the lash shall be paid by another drawn with the sword, as was said three thousand years ago, so still it must be said 'the judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether...'"

1865**Davis Orders Slave Enlistment**

Desperate, Pres. Davis issues general order to enlist slaves into Confederate army, with a promise of freedom for service, March. No actual action taken along this line.

1865**Confederate Armies Surrender**

Lee abandons Richmond, April 2; Lincoln tours the smoldering city, April 4. Lee surrenders to Grant, April 9, at Appomattox Courthouse, VA; Gen. Joseph E.

Johnston surrenders to Sherman, April 26, at Greensboro, NC. This basically ends the Civil War.

Deaths: More than 650,000 lost on both sides (not including civilians), more than 60% from disease (a census-based analysis suggests total may have exceeded 800,000). 40% of combat dead never identified. It is the nation's bloodiest war by far, with U.S. military dead exceeding that of all other major wars combined.

Union deaths exceed 364,000, 90% white, even though mortality of black soldiers is twice that of whites. Confederate deaths are more than 290,000, but the Confederate dead as a percent of total forces is far greater than the Union's; 37% of Confederate men under arms never return home; tens of thousands who do are missing limbs or otherwise disabled.

Bones of dead soldiers emerge for many months from shallow graves dug on battlefields across the South.

Civilians: The best estimate (by historian James McPherson) is that 50,000 civilians, most of them in the South, died from disease spread by troop movements, from starvation following the collapse of Southern agriculture and the Union blockade, and in the actual fighting. These included many blacks, enslaved and free. McPherson estimates that the overall mortality rate in the South was greater during the Civil War than that of any combatant nation in World War I.

1865

Lincoln is Shot

Lincoln assassinated at Ford's Theatre in Washington, April 14 (a night of earlier celebratory parades in Washington, Charleston and Philadelphia). Among other motivations, John Wilkes Booth cites Lincoln's openness, expressed in his last speech, April 11, toward granting blacks the vote (or at least black Union soldiers). Andrew Johnson succeeds to presidency.

1865

Slave Smuggler Among Last to Die

Union Gen. James Wilson, leading a large-scale cavalry raid that destroys munition facilities in Selma and Montgomery, AL, fights last battle of the war in the East at Columbus, GA, April 16. Charles A.L. Lamar is a casualty, the last Confederate officer to die in action (he was known for organizing the *Wanderer* slave-smuggling expedition of 1858.)

Coke story: A Confederate colonel, John Smith Pemberton, is wounded and subsequently becomes addicted to morphine. This leads him to experiment with less dangerous painkillers and tonics, and to ultimately devise early formulas for what comes to be known as Coca-Cola.

1865

Blacks, French in Final Skirmish

Black troops play a role in last skirmish of the war, at Palmito Ranch east of Brownsville, TX, May 12-13. With help from artillery loaned by French soldiers in

Matamoros, 300 Texans hold off the larger Union force, including the 62nd U.S. Colored Troops. The Texans are said to be protecting a large shipment of Confederate cotton bound for Mexico.

1865

Emancipation Announced in Texas

Union forces, including at least one black regiment that fought in the Battle of the Crater, arrive by ship in Galveston, where Gen. Gordon Granger announces emancipation in Texas, June 19. Freed are 170,000 slaves counted in the 1860 census, plus perhaps another 150,000 driven into Texas by Louisiana, Mississippi and Arkansas slave masters as Union forces advanced down the Mississippi.

This is origin of the Juneteenth celebration that is mainly a Texas event for decades, but which spread in recent years to many more cities and states. Raised to still greater prominence after 2020 death of George Floyd while being held to ground by a Minneapolis police officer. Floyd grew up in Houston.

Granger text: "The people of Texas are informed that in accordance with a Proclamation from the Executive of the United States, all slaves are free. This involves an absolute equality of rights and rights of property between former masters and slaves, and the connection therefore existing between them becomes that between employer and hired laborer."

Texas declares Juneteenth a state holiday in 1980. The Juneteenth National Independence Day is declared a federal holiday June 18, 2021 in a bill signed by Pres. Joe Biden.

1865

Devastated South Faces Famine

As spring runs into summer, most of the South finds itself devastated by war and further plagued by crop failures and drought. Union commanders are hard-pressed to feed hungry; thousands, white and black, starve, particularly in mountain counties.

Richmond, Charleston, Atlanta and many other cities are in ruins, as are thousands of plantations and farms. More than half of the South's young white men are dead or severely disabled. Confederate currency is worthless, virtually all banks go bust; riverboats are gone, railroads torn up. The relatively little cotton picked is met with lowest prices since before the war.

Emancipation of slaves eliminates more than \$3 billion worth of South's "assets." Total plantation land was worth roughly an equal amount in 1860, but sells for far less now.

The entire South will struggle economically for decades. After a brief period of progress during Reconstruction, the black South will find itself in a particularly bleak position despite freedom from slavery.

1865

Johnson Favors Lenient Policies

Pres. Johnson leans toward Lincoln's lenient Reconstruction policy with restoration of land to former owners, including most of the South Carolina,

Georgia and Florida coastal land Sherman had ordered reserved for freed ex-slaves.

Johnson also issues general pardon benefiting thousands of Confederate officials and soldiers, May 29, giving them a clear path to take control of state legislatures again. As before the war, only white males can vote.

Johnson withholds amnesty from high Confederate government officials and generals, and from officers who attended U.S. service academies. They must apply for amnesty individually.

Mississippi (November) and then South Carolina enact first Black Codes, imposing restrictions on blacks such as forbidding them work except as field hands, requiring them to sign labor contracts, and seizing unemployed blacks and then auctioning them to plantations. Black children required to work as "apprentices" until they turn 18. Blacks are forbidden to possess guns.

These are enforced, in the beginning, by all-white sheriffs and militias manned by large contingents of ex-Confederate soldiers.

1865

Statue of Liberty Envisioned

In France, Édouard René Lefèbvre de Laboulaye, a historian of American government and a noted abolitionist, is inspired by the Union victory to propose a great statue, which his friend, sculptor Frédéric Auguste Bartholdi, will create as *Liberty Enlightening the World*. A gift of the French people, it is inaugurated in New York Harbor in 1886.

Emancipation is symbolized by the broken shackles at her feet.

1865

Congress Rejects Confederates

More than 60 former Confederates, designated by state legislatures, arrive in Washington to take seats in Congress, December. They include four colonels, four generals and six Confederate cabinet officers led by Alexander Stephens, the former Confederate vice president. Radical Republican majorities refuse to seat them.

1865

13th Amendment Ratified

13th Amendment ratified by legislatures of last three states (Alabama, Georgia and North Carolina) of the required 27, Dec. 6, ending slavery throughout U.S. White-dominated state legislatures have little choice; their slaves are already free under the Emancipation Proclamation.

Border states of Kentucky and Delaware are actually the last states in which slavery remained legal until this ratification.

1865

Union Leagues Rise in South

Northern Republicans help organize white Southern "Unionists" and black freedmen into state and county Union Leagues across the South. While many

whites eventually drop out, the leagues will become basis of black political organization supporting election of Republican candidates (including many blacks), and supporting Reconstruction.

White Democrats will accuse Union Leagues of organizing “Negro rule” for enrichment of Northern “carpetbaggers” and Southern “scalawags.”

1865

Ku Klux Klan Formed

Ku Klux Klan founded by former Confederate officers in Pulaski, TN, Dec. 24. Named for *kyklos*, Greek for circle. Quickly devolves into local vigilante groups targeting Union Leagues and freed blacks, especially leading up to elections, with intimidation, arson and murder. From 1866 to mid-1867, 197 killings and 548 injurious assaults are attributed to Klan in the Carolinas alone.

Nathan Bedford Forrest, the former Confederate general, is elected the first Grand Vizier in 1867 and leads the Klan’s initial 1868 campaigns to keep blacks from the polls. Complaining about members’ lack of discipline, Forrest calls for Klan’s dissolution in 1869.

Similar groups—White Liners, White Camelia, Red Shirts—arise with less hocus-pocus and clearer political objectives, even before federal forces suppress the first Klan by 1871.

1865

Union Army Demobilizes

Union soldiers are rapidly demobilized. From total strength of 1 million May 1, only 152,000 remain in the South at year’s end.

1865

Jamaica: Protest and Bloody Suppression

Several hundred black Jamaicans, led by Baptist deacon Paul Bogle, march on the Morant Bay courthouse to protest a recent trial, prohibitive poll taxes and worsening poverty (after years of cholera, smallpox, floods and drought). When militia kills seven marchers, the crowd attacks a number of the militia and burns the courthouse, Oct. 11. Over the following two days, thousands rise up in St. Thomas-in-the-East Parish.

Gov. Edward John Eyre declares martial law. Troops, aided by Maroons of Moore Town, kill more than 400, including women and children, and arrest more than 300 others.

Many of the 300 arrested are executed, including Bogle; others are whipped and imprisoned in the most severe repression of unrest ever in the British West Indies, 31 years after emancipation. A prominent mixed-race legislator, George William Gordon who supported the protests, is also executed.

High poll property requirements and taxes that suppress the Black vote to just a few score of the total 1,457 cast, are attributed to white fears of a Haiti-style takeover of Jamaica. Blacks fear that planters want to restore slavery.

Total Jamaica population is put at 441,000, of which only 14,000 are white.

1865**Cuba: Slave Trade Ends**

Cuba finally ends slave imports for real, in part because slaves are now more expensive to buy and smuggle in, thanks to Royal Navy pressure and U.S. emancipation. Cuban plantations begin to turn to Mexican *mestizos* and Chinese indentured laborers to bolster their still-enslaved workers, and continue to mechanize sugar industry.

1866**Johnson Rejects Vote for Blacks**

Pres. Johnson, in a White House meeting with a black delegation led by Frederick Douglass, rejects their call for black suffrage, Feb. 2.

1866**Congress Overrides Vetoes**

Congress overrides Pres. Johnson's veto of extension of the Freedmen's Bureau, February. A second Freedmen's Bureau bill is passed and vetoed in July; Congress overrides that veto as well.

Radical Republicans, including Charles Sumner (Massachusetts) in the Senate and Thaddeus Stevens (Pennsylvania) in the House, take command of Reconstruction policy.

1866**All Born in U.S. to be Citizens**

Congress passes Civil Rights Act declaring all people born in the U.S., including ex-slaves, to be citizens entitled to full legal and property rights, but does not include "political rights," i.e. right to vote and to hold office; Pres. Johnson vetoes it; Congress overrides veto, April 9.

1866**Blacks Attacked in Memphis**

Whites, including many Irish immigrants, attack blacks in streets of Memphis, TN; 48 people die, almost all black, May 1-3. Four black churches, eight schools and 91 homes pillaged or burned, most in South Memphis.

When Union seized the city in 1862, it became a major refuge for escaping slaves. But a quarter of the 20,000-plus black residents are gone by 1870.

1866**14th Amendment Sent to States**

Congress sends 14th Amendment (which grants citizenship and due process to all persons, male and female, born or naturalized in U.S., and backs up Civil Rights Act) to states, June 13. Amendment also bans former Confederate officials from office and, on the vote, authorizes federal government to reduce representation in Congress of those states violating the right of *all* male citizens to cast ballots.

Six weeks later, Tennessee becomes first Confederate state to ratify the

amendment, and six days after that, the first Confederate state readmitted to Union. But final ratification of the 14th takes two years.

1866

Mob Attacks Voter Meeting

White mob in New Orleans attacks blacks and Radical Republicans attending a black suffrage meeting; 40 people killed, more than 100 hurt, July 30.

Demobilization of Union troops continues. Only 38,000 remain in South by the fall.

1866

Radicals Win More Seats

Pres. Johnson's "Swing Around the Circle" campaign tour of Northern cities fails. Republicans gain their greatest House percent majority ever, 147-44, in House in November elections.

No representatives are accepted from Confederate states, except Tennessee, the only one thus far readmitted (after ratifying 14th amendment). And Tennessee sends eight Republicans.

Republicans vow to force voting rights for blacks as a condition of readmission for ex-Confederate states.

1866

Land for Indians' Freed Slaves

Cherokee, Choctaw, Chickasaw and other tribes of the Indian Territory sign new treaties with U.S. government, replacing their agreements with Confederacy. Included: Amnesty, promise of no federal interference in tribal organization, federal purchase of large chunks of land (to be developed as reservations for tribes new to the Indian Territory).

Tulsa: Freed slaves of tribes (up to 14% of the population) are to receive land allotments and tribal voting rights. In Creek territory, freed slaves are assigned property lots, including lots in what will become Tulsa. Major oil strikes in 1901 and 1905 lead to city growing from 1,100 in 1895 to 100,000 in 1920, with a healthy, well-to-do black community developing in the Greenwood district.

In 1921, arrest of young black man accused of assaulting a white woman leads to an all-out armed white attack on Greenwood. Theaters, hotels, restaurants, seven churches and 1,400 homes are burned. At least two dozen whites and more than 100 blacks die (although estimates still vary widely); 6,000 blacks detained for days.

1866

Black Regiments Assigned West

First peacetime, black regiments are organized by the U.S. army at Fort Leavenworth, KS: the 9th and 10th Cavalry and the 24th and 25th Infantry. Their non-coms are black and officers are white (until 1877, when Lt. Henry O. Flipper, a West Point graduate and former slave, joins the 10th). The black units comprise more than 15% of the army.

In defending railroad construction, building forts and pursuing Indian bands that leave reservations, the "buffalo soldiers" engage in scores of Western skirmishes and battles. In 1898, they fight in the Spanish-American War.

1866

Lost Cause is Born

The Lost Cause: A New Southern History of the War of the Confederates is published by Edward Alfred Pollard, a former Richmond newspaper editor from a prominent Virginia family. He contends that, unlike Puritan North, the Cavalier South had developed a "feudal" society based on slave labor, which "established in the South a peculiar and noble type of civilization."

In *The Lost Cause Regained* (1868) Pollard outlines what becomes the "Lost Cause" view of why the South seceded (to preserve state sovereignty, not slavery).

His views evolve to favor Northern capitalism, limited civil rights legislation and black suffrage before his death in 1872 at age 40.

1866

French Depart Mexico

Under pressure from U.S. government, which has supplied munitions and 30,000 rifles to Juárez's forces, Napoleon III says all French troops will be withdrawn from Mexico, Dec. 19. Totalling 38,500 at their 1863 peak, the last depart Vera Cruz March 12, 1867.

1866

Jamaica: Crown Assumes Authority

Jamaica's colonial assembly, dominated by white plantation owners through its 200-year history under the British, consents to government directly by the Crown and disbands. A new governor appoints judges who report to the London. These reforms result from uproar in Britain over harsh suppression of Morant Bay uprising.

But elimination of assembly also eliminates any chance of a political role for blacks.

1866

Last Slave Voyage?

Last successful slave voyage recorded in the Trans-Atlantic Slave Trade Database is aboard an unnamed brigantine of unknown flag, which embarks 851 captives from an unnamed port in Africa and delivers 700 to an unspecified port of Cuba.

Several other sources say a later trans-Atlantic slave voyage ended in Havana in 1867, but no details are specified.

1867

Washington Blacks Get Vote

Congress extends the right to vote to black male citizens of Washington, DC, over Pres. Johnson's veto, Jan. 8.

1867**Tougher Rules for Returning States**

New Congress passes stricter Reconstruction laws, March 11, placing the returning states under military rule (except Tennessee), requiring them to adopt new constitutions and the 14th Amendment (citizenship and due process of law for all born in U.S.), and requiring them to allow black voting. Vetoes by Pres. Johnson are overridden.

1867**Maximilian Executed**

In Mexico, besieged Maximilian is caught trying to flee, and is tried and executed in Querétaro, June 19. Mexico City falls to Juárez and Republican forces the next day.

1867**Spirituals Published**

Slave Songs of the United States is published by abolitionists William Francis Allen, Lucy McKim Garrison (William Lloyd Garrison's daughter-in-law) and Charles Pickard Ware. This collection of Negro spirituals, passed down through many decades, includes "Michael Row the Boat Ashore," "Nobody Knows the Trouble I've Had" and 134 other songs—words and music—collected from all corners of the South and inspired by the editors' involvement in the wartime Port Royal Experiment in South Carolina, including Sundays at church on St. Helena Island.

1867**Colleges for Blacks Advance**

Congress charters Howard University to support liberal arts and medical education of blacks, in Washington. The university was founded the previous year by Gen. Oliver O. Howard, commissioner of the Freedmen's Bureau. He serves as university president, 1869-1874.

Baptist Home Mission Society creates the National Theological Institute to open Wayland Seminary in Washington, Richmond Theological Seminary in Virginia and, later, the Augusta Institute in Georgia, all for education of freed blacks.

1867**Remembering the Dead**

Congress guarantees burial for every fallen Union soldier and sailor in expanding national cemeteries. Still-emerging bodies, from shallow battlefield graves and prison camps, are reinterred in these cemeteries.

Confederate dead are not included. Women's organizations rise in the South to fund and carry out internment of tens of thousands of bodies from Northern battlefields as well as those of the South. In honoring lost husbands and sons, they play a large role in developing "the Lost Cause."

Federal government provides some support in marking Confederate graves beginning in 1906.

1867**Barbed Wire Patent**

First patent for barbed wire is issued to Lucien B. Smith of Ohio. Cheap fencing, mass-produced by late 1870s, protects new farms on the Plains from remaining buffalo and from free-ranging cattle.

1867**Futa Defeat Mandinka**

Kansala, capital of Mandinkan Kaabu empire (in present-day Guinea-Bissau), falls to Muslim forces of Futa Jallon, May 24. As the latter pour through the gates, the Mandinka ignite powder magazines, killing thousands of the attackers as well as most of the defenders.

1867**Cape Colony's First Diamond**

A 21.25-carat diamond is found by a 15-year-old boy on the Orange river, the first in southern Africa. This Eureka Diamond was soon followed by a major diamond rush 71 miles to the south at Kimberley.

These mines, originally on a farm, which was sold off by the brothers De Beers, drew thousands were consolidated in 1888 under the direction of Cecil Rhodes and Charles Rudd (who had started out managing water pumps). By 1914, 50,000 miners—white and black—had excavated 23 tons of rock from a huge hole, yielding 3 tons of rough diamonds. The De Beers company will dominate the worldwide diamond trade for the next century.

1868**Black-Majority Legislature**

Blacks and whites work side by side in Southern state constitutional conventions dominated by Republican Party, January.

South Carolina example: Blacks, in their first experience of voting, elect black majority to constitutional convention, who in turn propose constitution that will guarantee free education for all and create other social-welfare institutions. Black voters approve this in April ye-a-nay vote. Ex-Confederates cannot run for office; many other whites boycott.

New Republican-majority legislature, with many black members, takes office in Columbia, passing property-tax increases that hit white plantation owners.

1868**Johnson Survives Impeachment**

Pres. Johnson impeached by House in March, but survives Senate trial by one vote, May 16.

1868**14th Amendment Ratified**

Amendment guaranteeing citizenship to all born in the U.S. is declared ratified, July 28. Although several balk, legislatures of Arkansas, Louisiana, Florida and

North Carolina ratify and are readmitted to Union, with South Carolina completing the process, June.

Alabama is readmitted July 13.

1868

Louisiana: More Attacks on Blacks

Shooting breaks out between black and white factions in Opelousas, LA. Whites, led by Knights of White Camelia, take 29 blacks prisoner. All but two are executed a day later, including two Republican party leaders, Sept. 28. This is followed by weeks of white attacks on blacks in St. Landry Parish. Scores of blacks, who have far fewer firearms, killed.

1868

Grant Elected

Ulysses S. Grant (Illinois) elected president, Nov. 3, defeating Horatio Seymour, former Democratic governor of New York. Grant's slogan: "Let us have peace."

Blacks in South, voting in their first presidential election, cast 700,000 ballots, overwhelmingly for Grant, who wins readmitted Confederate states of North and South Carolina, Tennessee, Alabama and Arkansas. Seymour wins readmitted Georgia, Louisiana and Kentucky. Not voting, as they still await readmission, are Virginia, Mississippi and Texas.

Democrats pick up 20 House seats, but Republicans will pick up 12 Senate seats in readmitted Confederate states, for overwhelming 57-9 majority.

1868

Minnesota, Iowa: Blacks Get Vote

White voters in Minnesota and Iowa extend vote to black men. That leaves 9 Northern states that still deny vote to blacks.

In Georgia, elected blacks are ousted from Georgia legislature with support of most Democrats and some white Republicans. But they eventually win reinstatement.

1868

Hampton Institute Founded

Hampton Normal and Agricultural Institute founded in Virginia with support of American Missionary Association and former Union officers. Booker T. Washington becomes a student in 1872 at age 16.

1868

Navajo Return to Homeland

U.S. government reverses course and allows Navajo (Diné) people to return to their homeland in northern Arizona and New Mexico. Treaty of Bosque Redondo ends their internment under deplorable conditions at Fort Sumner on Pecos river. Signing treaty were Barboncito and 28 other Navajo headsmen, and Gen. Sherman and Samuel Tappan, an Indian Peace commissioner, for the government, June 1.

Note: Tappan hired Henry Morton Stanley to file commission dispatches with major newspapers, bringing latter to attention of James Gordon Bennet Jr., publisher of the *New York Herald*.

1868

Liberal Cuban Planters Rebel

Leading Cuban plantation owners ignite Ten Years' War, Oct. 10, with Carlos Manuel de Céspedes freeing his slaves and urging them to join fight for independence. Previously, these more liberal planters had pressed for final end to slave trade. Now they call for abolition of slavery altogether, independence from Spain and constitutional, democratic government.

Oriente province rises up, but not Havana or Matanzas. Spanish forces strike back ruthlessly with thousands sent to *reconcentrados* (early concentration camps) and hundreds killed in field executions. Internal dissension, death of Céspedes, U.S. support of Spain and capture of rebel president Tomás Estrada Palma undermine rebel efforts. But conflict continues to 1878.

1869

15th Amendment Sent to States

Congress passes 15th Amendment, Feb. 26, with no House or Senate votes from Democrats. The amendment guarantees that the vote cannot be denied on the basis of "race, color, or previous condition of servitude," in reaction to poll violence in the South.

Blacks already have the vote in some Southern states under Reconstruction Acts. But Reconstruction does not apply to Northern states, 11 of which have not allowed blacks to vote.

Sen. Charles Sumner (MA) abstains because amendment does not specifically prohibit literacy tests and poll taxes.

Nevada is the first state to ratify, March 1; Iowa the 28th, putting it over, Feb. 3, 1870.

1869

Transcontinental Railroad Opens

Pacific Railroad begins running trains 1,912 miles between Council Bluffs, IA, and Oakland, CA, Sept. 6. "Last Spike" ceremony was May 10 at Promontory Point, UT, before Sacramento-Oakland leg was complete.

What had been a 25-day stagecoach journey is reduced to four days.

1869

Financiers Spook Banks

Panic on Wall Street as financiers Jay Gould and Jim Fisk unsuccessfully attempt to corner gold supply, Sept. 24.

1869

White 'Redeemers' Return to Power

Tennessee is first former Confederate state to replace a biracial Republican

legislature with all-white Democratic “Redeemer” government, November. Georgia, North Carolina and Virginia follow in 1870.

1869

Reconstruction Laws Upheld

U.S. Supreme Court upholds “Radical Reconstruction,” 5-3, in *Texas vs. White*, April, and affirms that secession from Union is illegal.

Freedman’s Bureau reports establishment of nearly 3,000 schools in the South serving more than 150,000 black students.

1869

Indians Pushed to Reservations

At first inauguration, Pres. Grant promises a “Peace Policy” to end Indian conflicts, reform Indian policy, recruit Quakers and other religious groups as trustworthy Indian agents, and provide more federal help. His first commissioner of Indian affairs is Ely S. Parker, Grant’s adjutant at Appomattox and a Tonawanda Seneca.

But basis of policy is to push more Indians, especially Plains tribes, onto reservations and toward assimilation in white society. (At least tribes are able to maintain communal ways.)

This leads to army support of extermination of buffalo herds by commercial hunters as crucial toward forcing Indians to accept reservations. That, in turn, will free up Plains for cattle, and for barbed-wire-and-plow agriculture.

1869

Slavery ‘Ends’ in Angola & Mozambique

Portugal’s first minister, the Marques de Sá da Bandeira, succeeds in pushing through a final ban on chattel slavery in Angola, Mozambique, Portuguese Guinea and the Cape Verde Islands, Feb. 25.

But there appears to be a continued indenture requirement through 1876.

And true independence is thwarted by forced-labor system—*chibalo*—requiring the former slaves and many others in poverty to work to meet endless debt and taxes.

Similar forced-labor policies will be soon be found in the African colonies of other European countries.

1870

1870

Population Growth Decelerates

U.S. Census: total population, 38.93 million (residential); black, 5.39 million (13.8%). Full names of African-Americans recorded for the first time. Since close of the Civil War, black population of South’s 10 largest cities doubled.

Immigration slowed down in 1860s, but still totaled 2.32 million. Undercounts are suspected, especially in the South and several Northern

cities, but recounts in New York and Philadelphia find discrepancies of no more than 2.3%.

1870

Voting Protection Ratified

The 15th Amendment is ratified, guaranteeing that the right to vote cannot be denied on account of race, Feb. 26, in any state, South or North (11 of the latter had denied blacks). Women's rights leaders are frustrated that female suffrage is not also protected.

Virginia, Mississippi and Texas readmitted. Georgia is the final Confederate state to be readmitted, July 15.

1870

Republicans Take Control in South

New masses of black votes put many blacks into local office and on state legislatures, particularly in South Carolina (above), North Carolina, Alabama, Mississippi and Louisiana, although no legislature is majority black. White "Unionists" who opposed Confederacy and white Republicans from North also play large roles in state governments. The former are called "Scalawags" by Democratic opponents; the latter are scorned as "Carpetbaggers."

New office holders are accused of bleeding white taxpayers to support expanded schools and of corrupt bond issues to support rebuilding of railroads.

1870

First Black U.S. Senator

Hiram Rhodes Revels, born free in North Carolina with mixed ancestry, is elected to be the first black U.S. senator by the Mississippi senate. He is a Methodist minister who helped raise black regiments in Maryland and Missouri.

On Feb. 3, he takes seat vacated by Jefferson Davis in 1861 after supporters overcome opposition of Southern Democratic senators.

In 1875, Blanche K. Bruce, born into slavery in Virginia but raised much more equally by white master-father, is second black elected to U.S. Senate, also by Mississippi senate. Serves to 1881.

After 1881: The next black elected a U.S. senator is Edward Brooke, Massachusetts, in 1966 (by popular vote). The next black elected senator by a Southern state is Tim Scott, South Carolina, in 2014 (also popular vote).

1870

First Blacks in House

Joseph Rainey, born a slave but freed when his father was able to purchase family's freedom, becomes first black U.S. representative, representing South Carolina's 1st district (Charleston), Dec. 12. Serves to 1879.

The following year, blacks Jefferson Long, Georgia; Robert De Large and Robert Elliott, South Carolina; Benjamin Turner, Alabama; and Josiah Walls Florida, are elected to the House. In the following years, seven more are elected to the House, including the first to represent North Carolina and Louisiana.

Robert Smalls of South Carolina (famous for his 1862 Charleston Harbor escape) is the last of the Reconstruction blacks to leave the House, March 1887.

Six more black men are elected to the House in '80s and '90s, including the first to represent Virginia. The last of these is George Henry White of North Carolina who leaves in 1901.

After 1901: No blacks elected from any state to the House until 1928, when Oscar Stanton De Priest wins a seat to represent Chicago. No blacks elected to the House from a Confederate state until 1972, when Barbara Jordan, Texas, and Andrew Young, Georgia, are elected.

Nationwide: Barack Obama, Illinois, is the first black elected president, 2008. Kamala Harris, California, is the first black, first Asian and first woman elected vice president, 2020. Both are of mixed race and their black fathers were born in foreign countries.

1870

Dominican Republic's Annexation Proposed

Grant proposes annexing the Dominican Republic (Santo Domingo) to provide land for freed slaves. Frederick Douglass joins exploratory commission visiting Santo Domingo, January 1871. Sen. Sumner and many others are opposed and plan fails to advance.

1870

Cavalry Attack Wrong Band

More than 170 Piegan Blackfeet die in surprise attack by 2nd U.S. Cavalry on the Marias river in Montana Territory. Soldiers, pursuing a small band for the killing of a white settler, strike the wrong group; the dead are mostly women and children plus a few elderly men; many were suffering from smallpox.

1870

Protesting Blacks Punished

Angry blacks rise up on Martinique. French authorities imprison 500 rebels; 74 are found guilty. Twelve leaders are executed, others are deported to Guiana (Devil's Island) or to New Caledonia in the Pacific.

1870

Prussians Defeat France

Franco-Prussian War breaks out July 16 with German states, led by Prussia and Chancellor Otto von Bismarck, quickly victorious; Napoleon III captured at Sedan, Sept. 2. Besieged Paris falls Jan. 28, 1871.

1870

Blacks' Role in Brazil's Victory

War with Paraguay ends with victory for Brazil and its allies, Argentina and Uruguay. More than 50,000 Brazilian soldiers die, with blacks, both free and slave, bearing a large share of the losses.

1870s**Tracing 'White Supremacy'**

A first uptick in use of term "white supremacy," as measured by a 21st-century digital analyses of U.S. books between 1800 and 2000. Use (on the part of whites) begins to swell after 1900 and then soars to a peak around 1970 (with a brief dip in the 1950s). There is a steep fall-off in late '70s and a surge to a new peak in 1999.

1870s**Contract Workers Replace Slaves**

Caribbean sugar plantations bring in tens of thousands of indentured servants to replace slaves. New workers labor under near-slave conditions over 10-year contracts. By 1900, 450,000 laborers from India will arrive in British colonies, especially Trinidad and Guiana. Dutch bring thousands of Javanese people to Surinam.

1871**Deadly Shootout in Meridian**

In Meridian, MS, rising tensions over Ku Klux Klan pursuit of freedmen from Alabama lead to a downtown fire of unclear origin. A white mob seizes three black leaders who are charged with arson, March 4. Two days later, a crowd of 200, some black, most white, packs courthouse. Shooting breaks out, killing the judge, a white Republican, and several others. One black defendant escapes; the others die at hand of whites who kill nearly 30 more blacks over the next two days.

White Republican mayor flees town; his letter describing the killings is published by Horace Greeley's *New-York Daily Tribune*.

1871**Brand-New City in Alabama**

Birmingham, AL, founded June 1 by a consortium of cotton planters, bankers and railroads at the planned junction of the Alabama & Chattanooga and the South & North Alabama railroads. Also important for siting: Nearby deposits of iron ore, coal and limestone, key materials for production of steel.

The first coke-fired iron is produced at Oxmoor Furnace in 1876. In the following decade 19 more furnaces are erected.

Workers are drawn from poor whites and blacks leaving sharecropping. Coal is mined in large part by convict gangs drawn from prisons.

Question: Will this be a Southern opportunity to build a new, more equal community from scratch?

1871**Chicago, Wisconsin Burn**

Great Chicago Fire kills about 300, burns down 3.3 square miles of city and leaves more than 100,000 homeless, Oct 8-10.

Less famous, the vast Peshtigo Fire burns more than 1.2 million acres of dry woodland and 17 towns on both sides of Wisconsin's Green Bay, and kills more

than 1,200 people (perhaps double that number). Three widely separated wildfires in Michigan kill another 500-plus people. Peshtigo and Michigan fires erupt the same day as the Chicago fire.

1871

Student Spiritual Singers Tour

Fisk Jubilee Singers introduce Negro spirituals in performances in Northern cities to raise funds for the all-black Fisk Free Colored School opened in Nashville, TN, in 1866 by the American Missionary Association.

The black student chorus, comprising five women and four men, donates proceeds from their first performance, in Cincinnati, to survivors of the Chicago fire.

1871

Reconstruction Governor Impeached

In North Carolina, Republican William Woods Holden (white, elected 1868) is first U.S. governor to be impeached, convicted and removed, March 22. Newly elected Democratic legislature acts when Holden attempts to uphold Reconstruction laws and crack down on Ku Klux Klan (after Klan lynched a black police officer and assassinated a Republican state senator, both in 1870).

1871

Martial Law in South Carolina

Pres. Grant orders martial law in South Carolina to curb Ku Klux Klan violence against blacks and their allies. Suspends habeas corpus in nine counties, Oct. 17. Nearly 600 Klansmen jailed by December; more than 200 indicted, 53 plead guilty, five more convicted at trial.

Leads to dramatic reduction of Klan terrorism and, in Louisiana, of Knights of White Camelia. But other organizations—White League, White Liners and Red Shirts—soon rise.

1871

Buffalo Herds Devastated

Extermination of buffalo escalates as more railroads push into Plains and hunters arm themselves with more-powerful .50-caliber Sharps rifles, which can kill the large animals at a longer range.

Also, a Philadelphia tannery develops method to convert hides into commercial leather for drive belts and for boots for European armies.

With approval of U.S. army, 2,000 hunters pursue hides worth \$1 to \$3 each, killing five times as many animals as Indians do. Total buffalo numbers fall from 15 million in 1865 to 7 million in 1872.

1871

Brazil: Law of Free Birth

Brazilian parliament adopts Law of Free Birth to provide freedom for all newborns of enslaved mothers as an abolition movement gets underway. But children

continue “under care” of slave masters or state until they are 21. Thus relatively few are actually freed before full emancipation in 1888.

1871

Livingstone Witnesses Massacre

David Livingstone, the Scottish missionary-explorer, witnesses July 15 marketplace killing of at least 400 men and women, including many Wagenya people, by Swahili-Arab slavers in Nyangwe, on the banks of the Lualabela river. He is told this is in retaliation for attacks on black villages friendly to Tippu Tip, the Swahili-Arab leader.

Although long an outspoken opponent of the East African slave trade, Livingstone, cut off from European contacts for 6 years, on occasion falls back on Swahili-Arab slave traders for shelter and support. Adventurer Henry Morton Stanley, sent by the *New-York Herald*, finds Livingstone in a Lake Tanganyika trading post, Nov. 10.

1872

Grant Re-Elected

Grant easily re-elected president over Horace Greeley, editor of the *New-York Tribune*, who is supported by Democrats and Liberal Republicans, Nov. 5. Greeley dies a few weeks later in a Westchester sanitarium.

1872

Boston Fire Sweeps Downtown

Great Boston Fire burns 65 acres of downtown and financial district. More than 30 die including 12 firefighters, Nov. 9-10.

1872

Underground Railroad History

William Still, a free-born black abolitionist, publishes *The Underground Railroad Records*, detailing stories of hundreds of blacks whom he helped to escape slavery through Philadelphia while chairman of the Vigilance Committee in the years leading up to the Civil War.

1873

Louisiana: Militia Blacks Executed

As many as 153 blacks, most of them state militia guarding the Grant Parish Courthouse in Colfax, LA, are killed in an assault by a larger group of armed whites, April 13. Most of the blacks are executed after they surrender, with many bodies thrown into Red river. Only three whites die.

Incident culminates a long-running political feud between white Democrats and Republican officials over widely disputed election of Republican William Pitt Kellog (a Lincoln friend from Illinois) the previous November. It is the bloodiest of many attacks and killings perpetrated to restore white political dominance in Southern states during Reconstruction.

Prosecution of nine whites goes to Supreme Court, which rules 5-4 that federal government has no authority under 14th and 15th amendments to charge "non-state" (civilian) perpetrators, March 27, 1876.

1873

Panic Sinks Railroads, Banks

Jay Cooke's bank in New York, over-extended in transcontinental railroads, closes suddenly Sept. 18, kicking off Panic of 1873. Ultimately, 89 railroads crash nationwide. Stock market falls hard, closes for two weeks and resumes falling. Farmers hurt by end of Franco-Prussian War demand from Europe. Production of iron and steel declines by 45%. Unemployment reaches 14% and wages drop 45%.

This "Great Depression," as it is called, lingers through 1877. Immigration to U.S. increases from hard-hit regions of Europe, while many Americans depart Eastern cities for the West.

Also: These economic worries are a major factor in drawing public attention in the North away from Reconstruction.

1873

Slavery Ends on Puerto Rico

Slavery abolished on Puerto Rico by the Spanish National Assembly, March 22, after long abolitionist campaign on the island. Slaves are required to work three more years; masters are compensated at 35 million pesetas per slave.

1874

Buffalo's Last Chance

Alarmed by relentless extermination of buffalo, Congress passes legislation forbidding non-Indians to kill female buffalo or males beyond need for food, June 23. But Pres. Grant, who reluctantly supports elimination of last herds as more humane than war to force Indians onto reservations, stops bill with a pocket veto.

1874

Comanche Crushed in Attack

Desperate to slow the buffalo killing, 700 Comanche and allies, led by Quanah Parker, attack the Adobe Walls trading post (inside are 28 men, mostly buffalo hunters, and one woman) in the Texas panhandle.

After initial surprise charge, Indians can't close on hunters' long-range rifles, which kill 70 and wound many more, June 27. It is a spiritually crushing defeat for Plains Indians.

1874

Custer Reports Gold in Dakota

U.S. 7th Cavalry expedition, led by Lt. Col. George Custer, explores Black Hills of Dakota Territory—Lakota Sioux land by treaty—to seek sites for a fort and to investigate possibilities of mining, July. Custer returns to report "existence of

gold.” Which is enough to set off a miners’ rush in a nation suffering from economic panic.

By early 1876, lawless town of Deadwood is home to more than 20,000 miners and other “entrepreneurs.” Disputes with Lakota, who hold the land sacred, mount. Rich vein discovered in April, 1876, is developed by George Hearst as the Homestake Mine, which will be the most productive single gold mine in Western Hemisphere.

1874

Mississippi: Reconstruction Conflicts

Mississippi becomes a Reconstruction battleground. The previous year, Republicans, with votes of black majority in state, took governorship and statehouse (electing 10 black legislators of 36 total) with a 30,000-vote cushion.

But armed White Liners in Vicksburg work to intimidate black voters and defeat Republican city officials in August. The black county sheriff, Peter Crosby, is forced to flee in December.

Gov. Adelbert Ames directs a black militia group to aid Crosby. Fighting and gunfire break out; over 10 days at least 29 blacks are killed. Pres. Grant directs federal troops to restore order, January 1875.

1874

White League Takes Over Statehouse

5,000 members of the White League (founded in northern Louisiana earlier in year) battle outnumbered New Orleans police and state militia, and take control of Louisiana statehouse as well as the armory and downtown blocks, Sept. 14.

More than 20 White Leaguers (most are former Confederate soldiers) are killed and 19 wounded; 11 police and militia are killed and 60 wounded. Former Confederate Gen. James Longstreet, who leads the police, is taken prisoner by the White League.

White League removes Gov. William Pitt Kellogg and replaces him with Democrat John McEnery and the latter’s “rump” legislature.

Insurrection comes to a negotiated end three days later as federal troops approach. Their general, William H. Emory, promises White Leaguers freedom from arrest.

While state government remains in Kellogg’s hands to the end of his term, the Republicans control only the city, protected there by U.S. troops. McEnery and his candidate for governor, Francis T. Nicholls, hold sway over the rest of Louisiana.

1874

Black Voters Killed

Armed members of the White League target black voters marching to polls in black-majority Barbour County, AL, Nov. 3, Election Day. They kill 15 to 40 blacks, wound dozens more and drive crowds from the polls. White Democrats replace all Republicans in office. This repeats Vicksburg tactics, but in national election.

1874**Democrats Take U.S. House**

Democrats gain control of the U.S. House for first time since 1861, flipping 92 seats as economic depression continues and Grant administration battles corruption charges. Also, white intimidation and violence tilt many elections in the South. Although Senate continues with a large Republican majority, the election signals the coming end of Reconstruction.

1874**Ashanti Capital Destroyed**

Large British force under Gen. Garnet Wolseley defeats an even greater number of Ashanti at Amoafu, Jan. 31, in the Third Ashanti War. Four days later, British blow up the royal palace and burn most of Kumasi, the Ashanti capital.

Ashanti had threatened Elmina, which the British had purchased from the Netherlands in 1872. Ashanti claimed Elmina as theirs with the dissolution of the 213-year-old Dutch agreement with the neighboring Ahanta people.

Peace agreement signed in July by Kofi Karikara, the Ashanti king, awards British 50,000 ounces in gold and requires an end to human sacrifice. Ashanti are assured of access to Elmina and other coastal trade points.

1875**1875****New Strategy for White Control**

"Mississippi Plan" to restore white political domination is devised by senior state Democrats: First, persuade the relatively few white voters supporting Republicans to switch to Democratic Party; many fearfully do so. Second, pressure black sharecroppers economically, then intimidate blacks with armed White Liners. Assassination is even condoned (Sheriff Crosby is shot down by a white deputy in June).

The main architects are L.Q.C. Lamar, a congressman elected in 1872; White Line leader James Z. George; and John Marshal Stone, president of the state Senate. Lamar drafted the Mississippi secession ordinance; George was a signer. Lamar and George were slaveholders; all three were Confederate officers. Stone goes on to be governor; Lamar and George to be U.S. senators, and Lamar to be a U.S. Supreme Court Justice.

More violence: A political rally in Clinton, MS, organized by Republican freedmen, is interrupted by heckling White Liners brandishing weapons. Shots ring out; three whites and five blacks (two of them children) die, Sept. 4. Rumors of black retaliation lead to several hundred White Liners hunting down black people through the night; death toll is between 35 and 50 blacks and one white Republican candidate.

Pres. Grant, worried about holding Republican seats in Ohio, delays on Gov. Ames's request for more federal troops and adopts a new "non-intervention" policy in future conflicts.

Democrats take Mississippi legislature by 30,000-vote margin, November. That legislature impeaches Ames, who resigns, to be replaced by Senate Pres. Stone.

Democrats in Louisiana and South Carolina vow to duplicate the "Mississippi Plan" in their "redemption" efforts.

1875

Reconstruction's Last Law

Republican Congress passes Civil Rights Bill of 1875, prohibiting segregation in public facilities and transit, and prohibiting exclusion of blacks from jury service. Grant signs it, March 1, but does little to enforce it.

This is the last federal civil rights act until 1957, and much of it is struck down by the Supreme Court in 1883.

1875

Fort Sill: Comanche Surrender

Last Comanche band, led by Quanah Parker (whose white mother was an assimilated child captive), surrenders at Fort Sill, Indian Territory. This after U.S. commanders destroy their Texas Panhandle camps in the 1874 Red River War and encourage massacre of last major buffalo herd by scores of commercial hunters looking for hides to ship east.

Comanche population, 10,000 in 1859, falls to 5,000 in 1870 and to only 1,500 when they arrive at reservation. Most of the decline is attributed to 1859 outbreak of cholera, associated with the third worldwide pandemic that had earlier hit Chicago, and settlers on the Oregon, California and Mormon trails. Other diseases introduced by Mexican captives taken during decades of raids south of Rio Grande.

1875

Slavery 'Ends' on São Tomé

Slavery abolished on Portugal's São Tomé and Príncipe as islands become a leader in exporting cocoa, many decades after decline of sugar cane. But ex-slaves become "perpetually indentured," and many thousands more are recruited from Angola, and bought and sold, under similar contracts. They are paid small amounts and granted some legal rights but are in no way free.

1876

Custer's Last Stand

Lakota Sioux, Cheyenne and Arapaho warriors, led by Crazy Horse, wipe out a large 7th Cavalry force led by Custer and turn back a second column (altogether, 274 U.S. dead, 49 wounded) near Little Big Horn river in the Montana Territory, June 25.

1876

South Carolina: Bribery, Violence Succeed

In majority-black Hamburg, SC, 100 Red Shirts escalate a minor roadside

disturbance into an attack on 30 black militia in their armory, July 7. Overnight and into next day, one white and six blacks are killed, four of them execution-style, and more blacks are wounded.

A much bloodier incident follows in nearby Ellenton, with 500 or more armed whites warning blacks to stay away from polls or risk death. At least 35 black people are killed over six days in September.

Both incidents are attributed to the "Edgefield Plan" of former Confederate Gen. Martin W. Gary and wealthy planter Benjamin Tillman, which echoes the Mississippi Plan in using bribery, intimidation and violence to suppress black votes (South Carolina is also a black-majority state) and elect white Democratic legislators and governor. The latter is won by Wade Hampton, another former Confederate general and "Lost Cause" proponent, in a close count.

1876

Hayes Accepts Reconstruction's End

Democrat Samuel Tilden (New York) wins the popular vote for president (51.6%-48.4%) over Republican Rutherford B. Hayes (Ohio) in November but electoral votes of Louisiana, Florida and South Carolina are disputed.

In Compromise of 1877, Congressional Democrats accept the election of Hayes (by a single electoral vote) in return for the already-promised withdrawal of the 3,000 federal troops remaining in the South (in "unredeemed" Louisiana, Florida and South Carolina) and thus the effective end of Reconstruction.

Note: The South Carolina vote for Hayes was undoubtedly suppressed by the Hamburg and Ellenton incidents. His winning margin of 889 votes is not accepted by Democratic legislature until the compromise is agreed to.

1876

Uncle Remus Introduced

Uncle Remus of Br'er Rabbit fame first appears in columns written by Joel Chandler Harris for *The Atlanta Constitution*.

Harris later retells scores of folk stories heard from slaves on the Turnwold Plantation near Eatonton, GA. Harris lived there as a teenager during the Civil War, working as a printer's devil for the plantation owner who also published *The Countryman* newspaper.

Harris credits real "Uncle George Terrell," "Old Harbert" and "Aunt Crissy" as the original storytellers after *Uncle Remus: His Songs and His Sayings* is published in 1881. Various of these tales are later found to echo folk stories of Senegal, Gambia and other regions of Africa.

1877

Railroad Strikes Turn Violent

Hard times continue for railroads, leading to drastic pay cuts and Great Railroad Strike. It starts at Baltimore & Ohio shops in Martinsburg, WV, July 16, and spreads to Baltimore, and then to New York Central and Pennsylvania railroads.

Thousands of rail workers block movement of hundreds of trains. Governors send militias and Pres. Hayes sends federal troops.

In Baltimore, 10 civilians killed. In Pittsburgh, strikers burn Union Depot and many other buildings, and destroy 104 locomotives; 20 civilians die. St. Louis workers call nation's first general strike; 18 die there. Troops finally suppress strikes after six weeks.

But it's a major precursor to widespread labor unrest over the next two decades.

1877

Stanley Traces Congo River

Henry Morton Stanley completes first descent of the Lualaba (beginning at the slave-trading town of Nyangwe) and Congo rivers, arriving at Boma, Aug. 9, near the Congo's Atlantic mouth. This adds much to the map of Central Africa.

Half the original party of 228 dies of disease or drowning. The expedition is financed by the *The New York Herald* and *The Daily Telegraph* of London, and benefits from the protection of Tippu Tip, leader of the Swahili-Arab merchants and slave traders.

1877

Civil War Weakens Yoruba

Civil war ignites among various Yoruba peoples, including Ibadan, Ijebu, Egba, Alake and Ekiti. Fighting continues sporadically for next 16 years, weakening the tribes as Britain presses to expand its Lagos colony.

1878

Cuban Peace Includes Slavery Ban

Cuba's Ten Years' War ends with Pact of Zanjón, Feb. 10, after two years' negotiation between rebels and Spanish Gen. Arsenio Martínez Campos. Provides general amnesty, freedom for enslaved fighters on both sides and final end of slavery by 1888. Many in the rebel movement, including José Martí, continue to work for independence and rise up again in 1895.

1878

Yellow Fever in New Orleans

Yellow fever breaks out in New Orleans, likely introduced by families fleeing Cuba at end of Ten Years' War. Despite quarantines, it moves up Mississippi on riverboats and trains. New Orleans' suffers 4,500 deaths while a fifth of the population flees. Memphis fares worse: more than 10% of 47,000 residents die and more than half desert city. Before cold weather arrives in October, total Mississippi Valley deaths reach 20,000.

1878

Cape Verde Islands: Slavery Ends

Slavery abolished on Cape Verde Islands; plantation workers slide into sharecropping system.

1879**Blacks Seek Kansas Refuge**

"Exoduster" movement sees 26,000 blacks, mostly from Louisiana, Mississippi and western Tennessee, migrate to Kansas (Missouri and Illinois are lesser destinations). They are fleeing bitter white enmity, Red Shirt violence, and political and economic suppression.

They travel by steamboat up the Mississippi and Missouri rivers. Many settle in small cities, particularly Topeka and Kansas City, because little good farmland is available 17 years after the Homestead Act.

Ex-slave Benjamin Singleton is a leader of the movement and battles with Southern senators who oppose it; they fear loss of sharecroppers.

1879**Stanley Serves Belgian King**

Henry Morton Stanley returns to the Congo in service to Belgium's King Leopold II. Over the next five years, he builds a road around the falls to Stanley Pool, launches steamboats on the upper river and, most importantly, negotiates hundreds of treaties with local chiefs granting "all rights" to their territories to Leopold and his International Congo Society, a privately held corporation.

1880**1880****50 Million People**

U.S. Census: total population, 50.16 million (residential); black, 6.58 million (13.1%). Immigration declined in 1870s, probably because of continuing economic depression in the U.S. as well as in Europe.

1880**Closest Presidential Popular Vote**

James Garfield (Ohio), the compromise Republican nominee, elected president over Democrat Winfield Scott Hancock (Pennsylvania), November. Popular vote is the closest ever, with Garfield taking only 1,898 more (0.11%) than Hancock. Hancock is supported by the now-solid Democratic South. Garfield's close victory in New York, by less than 2%, puts him over in Electoral College.

1881**Garfield Shot, Dies 11 Weeks Later**

Pres. Garfield shot at Washington's Baltimore & Potomac railroad station by disgruntled job seeker, July 2, four months after inauguration. He dies 79 days later in Long Branch, NJ. His vice president, Chester A. Arthur (New York), ascends to presidency.

1881**Tuskegee Institute Founded**

Tuskegee Normal School for Colored Teachers founded by Lewis Adams, a former slave and son of a white planter, in Alabama, with Booker T. Washington, born into slavery in Virginia, as its first principal, July 4.

Background: Adams convinces Macon County blacks to support two white Democratic state senators running for re-election in exchange for state support for this new teachers' school for black people.

School opens in an AME Zion church. A former plantation is bought for the campus.

1881

Boers Defeat British

British force suffers severe losses and is driven off Majuba Hill by sharp-shooting Boers, Feb. 27; Gladstone government agrees to a truce, March 6, in this 3-month First Boer War, and to complete Boer self-government of the Transvaal in the Pretoria Convention, Aug. 3.

Reverses 1877 British annexation of Transvaal, but only until Second Boer War breaks out in 1899.

1882

Chinese Exclusion Act

Pres. Arthur signs law banning entry of Chinese laborers, May 6, a major step in restriction of U.S. immigration policies. Later, Chinese who leave U.S. to meet with wives and families are not allowed to return.

Of the 105,000 Chinese counted in 1880 census, most are in California and neighboring states where they worked in mines and on the Pacific end of transcontinental railroads. Labor leaders, newspaper editors and politicians portray them as dangerous competition to whites. Their number is down to 61,600 by 1910, when the Angel Island Immigration Station opens in San Francisco Bay, largely to vet and detain would-be Chinese immigrants; 30% are turned back.

The ban is extended several times and further tightened under the 1924 Immigration Act, which also sets quotas for other Asians and for Eastern and Southern European immigrants.

1883

Court Overturns Civil Rights Act

U.S. Supreme Court declares Civil Rights Act of 1875 to be unconstitutional, 8-1, essentially sanctions "separate but equal" facilities and transportation for whites and blacks, Oct. 15.

All nine justices are appointees of Republican presidents. Sole dissent comes from John Marshall Harlan, a former Kentucky slaveholder and a Union officer during the war, appointed by Hayes.

1883

Maxim Patents Machine Gun

Hiram Maxim, a U.S. citizen working in West Norwood, England, wins first

patents for a recoil-operated, water-cooled automatic machine gun, June. It is made possible by recent development of smokeless powder by Paul Vieille in France.

The first prototype is demonstrated in October 1884. Another early model is presented to the Emin Pasha Relief Expedition of 1886, and apparently helps to scare off unfriendly tribesmen. That same gun accompanies Frederick Lugard's 1890 mission to establish a British protectorate over the kingdom of Buganda (today's Uganda).

1883

French Invade Madagascar

France, which already has a settlement on Île Saint-Marie, lands on mainland to enforce dubious business "concessions," and gains port of Diego-Suarez at Madagascar's northern tip for a coaling station. But Merina leaders put off French demand to submit to a protectorate.

1884

Huck Finn and Jim Introduced

Adventures of Huckleberry Finn, by Mark Twain (Samuel Clemens) is published in London, December, and two months later in New York. A satire of the attitudes and ways of antebellum Mississippi Valley, it draws little critical notice. Jim, a runaway black slave, is a central character.

Clemens grew up in the river town of Hannibal, MO, amid slaves and slaveholders (his parents and uncle included), worked as a Mississippi river pilot and served two weeks in a Confederate militia before taking a stagecoach to the Comstock silver mines in Nevada. There, he began writing for a local newspaper as Mark Twain.

1884

Cotton Exposition Opens

World Cotton Centennial Exposition opens in New Orleans, Dec. 16. Celebrating the city's importance in handling a third of all cotton produced in U.S. National government and many states contribute funds and exhibits.

1884

Berlin Conference on Africa

German Chancellor Otto von Bismarck opens 14-nation Berlin Conference, Nov. 15, to formalize the scramble for African colonies already underway by European powers. Belgium's Leopold II, who holds signed treaties with native Congo entities, plays a large role. All vow prohibition of the slave trade in their respective spheres in Africa to win public support for their plans.

1885

1885**Africa Divvied Up**

Berlin Conference closes, Feb. 26, with General Act, which asserts colonies may be established in Africa only by "effective occupation" by a nation, which requires treaties with local peoples, establishment of an administration and an effective police force.

Conference grants possession of most of the Congo basin to King Leopold's International Congo Society (thanks to 450 treaties with Congo leaders gathered mostly by Stanley). Europeans (and the U.S.) recognize Leopold as its sovereign; he dubs his new 900,000-plus square-mile empire "the Congo Free State."

British claims on the Niger basin beyond its colony of Lagos are also confirmed, as the Royal Niger Company has established 30 trading posts and signed 400-plus treaties with local leaders for exclusive trade rights.

Germany makes its first claims in Africa (Cameroon, and present-day Namibia and Tanzania) while Portugal and France expand current holdings.

Small adjustment: After 440 years, Portugal relinquishes Ziguinchor and the Casamance (below the Gambia) to the French, who will combine it with Senegal as part of the new French West Africa.

Ten years hence in this "Scramble for Africa," only Morocco, Liberia, Ethiopia, the Sultanate of Hobyo (northern Somalia) and the Boer republics (bordering Cape Colony) remain independent. In the early 20th century, the Boers will submit to Britain; Morocco to France; and Somalia and Ethiopia to Italy. Borders of most present-day independent sub-Saharan nations harken back to final determinations of this conference.

1886**Slavery Ends in Cuba**

Slavery abolished in Cuba, two years earlier than promised. Much of the sugar plantation work has already been taken over by indentured laborers, including former slaves, as well as by Mexican *mestizos* from Yucatán and as many as 125,000 Chinese (mostly Cantonese and Hakka) who began arriving in the late 1850s.

Meanwhile, the U.S. is importing 82% of Cuba's sugar, with the American Sugar Trust financing the latest, largest centralized mills. This guarantees domination of Cuban sugar by U.S. companies.

1886**Charleston Suffers Earthquake**

Earthquake rocks Charleston, SC, killing nearly 100 people, damaging thousands of buildings, and breaking up rail lines and highways, Aug. 31.

Estimated at a magnitude of at least 7.0, it is felt in New Orleans, Chicago and Boston.

1886**Statue of Liberty Dedicated**

21 years after it was first conceived by a Frenchman to celebrate U.S.

emancipation and the Declaration of Independence, the copper-clad Statue of Liberty (151 feet from toe to torch) is inaugurated in New York Harbor, Oct. 26.

She soon evolves into a symbol of welcome to millions of immigrants sailing into the harbor.

1886

Transvaal Gold Strike

George Harrison, an Australian prospector, uncovers the Witwatersrand gold reef, a long band of gold-infused rock, which gives birth to the boom city of Johannesburg.

Boers, impoverished by debt and drought swarm in, as do blacks from every corner of southern Africa. Throngs of experienced Cornish and Welsh miners arrive from Britain.

Costs of mining, crushing and amalgamating low-grade ore leads to rapid consolidation under the "Randlords" (several investing made fortunes made on the Kimberley diamond strike).

To maintain control, the Transvaal's government denies right to vote to the foreign *uitlanders*, white and black, who already outnumber Boers 60,000 to 30,000.

1887

Indian Communities Targeted

Congress passes and Pres. Grover Cleveland signs the Dawes Severalty Act, intended as major reform for Indians' benefit. It ends communal landholdings by Indian tribes, and directs president to subdivide land into lots for Indian heads of families (160 acres) and individuals (80 acres). Citizenship offered to individuals who leave reservations. Overall aim is to help "absorption" of Indians "into U.S. mainstream."

In fact, it is destructive of traditional tribal organization and leadership as it has evolved on reservations, and designates surplus land to be sold to settlers, including large chunks of the Indian Territory (OK). Much of the land retained by individual Indians is ultimately lost to white speculators and swindles.

Schools and social services for Indians require that they give up their languages and tribal identities for the values of the larger white community.

1888

First State Secret Ballot

Massachusetts adopts the first statewide secret ballot in the U.S., authored by Richard Henry Dana III, a Republican editor who also pushed successfully for civil-service reform to limit political patronage. Most U.S. states passed similar guarantees of voter privacy in marking printed ballots by the end of the century.

1888

Early Autos Need Tires

First practical pneumatic tire is developed in Belfast by John Boyd Dunlop, a

Scots-born veterinarian. In the same year, Karl Benz begins first production of gasoline-fueled automobiles in Mannheim.

Demand for rubber builds for bicycle tires, then soars for auto tires. The known sources are wild *Havea* trees in the Amazon basin and *Landolphia* vines found in the Congo rain forest. By 1900, booming production is evenly divided between Brazil and the Congo, and leads to great suffering in both lands.

1888

Slavery Ends in Brazil

Slavery abolished in Brazil, last nation in Western world to do so, when Isabel, princess imperial of Brazil, signs *Lei Áurea* (the Golden Law), May 13. Her ailing father, Emperor Pedro II, in Paris for medical treatment, is fully supportive.

But Pedro and his family are deposed the following year in a bloodless military coup supported, in part, by disgruntled former slave masters, particularly the large coffee growers.

1889

The Last Buffalo

Total U.S. buffalo population put at only 541 animals. In 1750, it was estimated at more than 60 million.

1890

1890

Immigration Booms, Indians Decline

U.S. Census: total population, 62.95 million (residential); black, 7.49 million (11.9%). Immigration boomed through 1880s, with 5.25 million arriving, most of them Southern and Eastern Europeans, 600,000 from Italy alone. Ellis Island station opens in New York Harbor, January, 1892.

Native Americans, 248,253, down from 400,764 in 1850, a decline of 38.1% in 40 years.

1890

Robert E. Lee Statue Unveiled

Large equestrian statue of Robert E. Lee is dedicated in central Richmond, May 29. Nationally, five Confederate monuments are unveiled this year, and seven Union monuments. In 1911, the peak year, the count is 47 Confederate and 13 Union. Many Confederate monuments are supported by United Daughters of the Confederacy and other "Lost Cause" proponents.

Richmond's 21-foot Lee statue is removed from its 40-foot pedestal in 2021.

1890

Republicans Mount Voter Bill

Republicans propose strong Federal Elections Bill allowing federal courts to supervise elections to Congress to protect black voting rights (and to give

Republicans an electoral chance in the South). It passes the House by six votes, July 2, with support of Pres. Benjamin Harrison. This bid to reverse the 1877 reversal of Reconstruction is put forth by Sen. George Frisbie Hoar of Massachusetts and his protégé, Rep. Henry Cabot Lodge.

In Senate, Democrats stop action with a 33-day filibuster. Republican senators give up on election bill to win Southern and Western support for both the Sherman Silver Purchase Act and the McKinley Tariff Act.

1890

Mississippi's New Voter Requirements

A new Mississippi state constitution is adopted by a specially elected convention, Nov. 1. It focuses on poll requirements, adding literacy tests and poll taxes that will serve to keep most blacks from voting. Sen. James Z. George, alarmed by Hoar's federal elections bill, is a major force in creating the convention and the disenfranchisement measures.

Poll taxes also keep down poor white vote; but a new grandfather clause (men are automatically registered if their grandfathers had been registered) helps many of them. The electorate is not asked for approval.

This constitution is seen as final codification of the 1875 Mississippi Plan to secure "white redemption" and political dominance of state government, minus previous reliance on violent intimidation. It is duplicated in large part by South Carolina in 1895.

By 1910 only 2% of black men are registered to vote in Mississippi and Alabama. By 1940, only 3% of eligible African-Americans are said to be registered across the entire South.

1890

Massacre at Wounded Knee

Nearly 300 Lakota people, including 200 women and children, die at the hands of 7th Cavalry troopers who are trying to disarm a deaf warrior when gunfire breaks out, Dec. 29. Also, 31 soldiers die and 33 are wounded.

Previously, the Lakota had voiced deep opposition to extermination of buffalo, and failure of U.S. and white settlers to meet their obligations under recent treaties. Considered to be final major incident of the centuries-long Indian wars.

1890

Cape Colony: Rhodes' Anti-Black Program

Cecil Rhodes, now the colony's prime minister, moves to limit native African vote through financial and educational qualifications, 1892, and to enforce segregation of Africans into specific tribal areas, 1894, sharply limiting their land holdings.

Goals: To better control the large black population for mining and manufacturing labor, and to further constrain it politically.

1890

Heligoland-Zanzibar Treaty

Britain agrees to give Germany a free hand in its new South West Africa colony (present-day Namibia), as well as on the coast of Dar es Salaam, which will become German East Africa (present-day Tanzania) and a strip of land joining the two. Also borders between German Togoland and the British Gold Coast, and German Cameroon and British Nigeria are agreed to.

Britain receives portions of land essential to build a railroad from the Kenyan port of Mombasa to Lake Victoria, the protectorate over a small sultanate on the Kenyan coast, and a pledge of non-interference in British plans to force a protectorate on the independent islands of the Zanzibar sultanate.

Britain also agrees to hand over Heligoland, a small island off the mouth of the Elbe that could threaten Hamburg and the new Kiel Canal. Britain had held it since 1814, but never developed a naval base there.

1891

Sicilians Lynched in New Orleans

Eleven men, most of them Sicilian immigrants, are shot or hanged by enraged New Orleans mob led by prominent citizens whipped up by newspapers, March 14. Accused of assassinating the New Orleans police chief the previous fall, six had been acquitted by a jury a day earlier; three had won a mistrial and two were awaiting their separate trial.

1892

Southern Lynchings Exposed

Ida B. Wells publishes *Southern Horrors: Lynch Law in All Its Phases*, documenting rise in killings of black men and decrying the frequent charge of rape as a false excuse, Oct. 26. She cites white fear of black political and economic progress, and white need to maintain blacks in second-class status.

She presents graphic descriptions of lynching, with photos, to large audiences in Britain, 1894. She extends her research in *The Red Record*, 1895.

1892

Last Reconstruction Laws Dismantled

Democrats take control of the House, Senate and the presidency with return of Grover Cleveland over Benjamin Harrison. The following year they dismantle remaining Reconstruction-era statutes to protect congressional elections in cities; Republicans decline to filibuster, surrendering on black voting rights and on Republican hopes to crack Solid South.

1892

Boll Weevil Invades South

Boll weevil crosses the Rio Grande into Texas, probably near Brownsville. Expanding 50 miles a year, it reaches southeast Alabama by 1909 and deeply undermines cotton production. Historians say the infestation hurts sharecroppers in particular and is a factor in the Great Migration of Southern blacks to Northern cities that begins in 1916.

1892**Congo War: Leopold vs. Arab Traders**

Congo-Arab war breaks out, March, between Arab slave and ivory traders under Tippu Tip (based on Zanzibar) and the new Congo Free State over Leopold's vows to end the slave trade. Also at stake is control of vast eastern Congo (stretching from Stanley Falls to Lake Tanganyika).

The Free State's well-armed *Force Publique* (black, non-Congo troops, white officers) ultimately defeats and expels larger Arab-controlled forces, January 1894. Both sides rely on tribal allies to do much of the fighting (with the Batetela switching over to the Free State). Thousands die on both sides, many from influenza and smallpox.

1892**France Seizes Dahomey**

Dahomey's King Béhanzin, smarting over France's 1890 takeover of Porto-Novo and Cotonou, launches provocative slave raids. French Legionnaires, marines and Senegalese soldiers drive up Ouémé valley, killing at least 2,000 of the fierce-charging Fon army (including hundreds of female Minon soldiers). Both sides are well armed, but French also have a machine gun.

Béhanzin is also dealing with smallpox breakout and rebellious slaves on palm-oil plantations. As French approach, he sets fire to his capital, Abomey, Nov. 17.

French commander Alfred Amédée Dodds installs a Béhanzin cousin as king. When Béhanzin finally surrenders in 1894, he is exiled to Martinique. All of Dahomey (present-day Benin) is declared a French protectorate, including the old slave port of Whydah. Dahomey had been an independent kingdom since the 17th century.

On Dodds: He was born in Senegal, educated at Saint-Cyr and became France's leading colonial general. His father's father was a British officer who married a French-Senegalese woman from a slave-trading Métis family. His mother was also a French-Senegalese Métis.

1893**Worst U.S. Panic Yet**

Financial panic, blamed on crashing wheat prices, an oversupply of silver from new mines, a run on U.S. gold by European banks, and the overbuilding of U.S. railroads in the 1880s, is worst to date in U.S.

Stocks plunge, 500 banks close, 15,000 businesses fold, many families lose farms, 25% of rail mileage goes into receivership. Unemployment reaches nearly 20% nationally, 25% in Pennsylvania, 43% in Michigan. Pres. Cleveland persuades Congress to repeal Sherman Silver Purchase Act, but criticism mounts.

In 1894, Pullman strike spreads from Chicago to most railroads west of Detroit. Cleveland sends army; at least 70 die in riots.

Crop prices and the economy begin to recover, slowly, in 1897.

1893**Machine-Gun Slaughter**

Five Maxim machine guns are deployed at the Battle of the Shangani (in today's Zimbabwe) by British force of 750 under attack by 5,000 Matabele warriors, Oct. 25. The latter suffer more than 40% casualties.

1894**Confederate Battle Flag Revived**

Mississippi becomes first Southern state to include the Confederate battle flag in the design of its state flag. The flag is virtually unchanged until June 30, 2020, when Republican Gov. Tate Reeves signs the legislative bill withdrawing it.

1894**Republicans Regain Congress**

Republicans regain control of both House and Senate, as Pres. Cleveland and Democrats are blamed for the financial depression, in November election. This ends brief, two-year period of Democratic control of both houses and presidency. Last time they held all three was at beginning of the Buchanan administration, 1857; next time is beginning of Wilson administration, 1913.

1894**Birmingham: Miners' Strike Broken**

As many as 9,000 miners, both black and white, go on strike around Birmingham, AL, to fight a 22.5% pay cut. But depressed price of coal, thousands of willing scabs and declaration of martial law enable owners to prevail.

1894**Fusion Party Takes Carolina Statehouse**

In North Carolina, the rising Populist Party (born of the Farmer's Alliance led by Leonidas Polk) joins with Republicans. Their fusion ticket takes control of the legislature, the state supreme court and most of the congressional seats, shocking the Democrats.

The new legislature liberalizes access to the ballot, especially for blacks, and sends a Populist and a Republican to the U.S. Senate.

1895**1895****Bombardment of Oyo**

City of Oyo, a remnant of the old empire, is bombarded at the order of Robert L. Bower, Britain's resident commissioner, Nov. 12. Bower is miffed that the king, the Alaafin, has castrated a man suspected of adultery with one of the king's wives. When the questioned king then executes the adulterer, Bower orders the city's destruction.

The incident underlines that the British are running the Lagos Colony and

its hinterland, and that the various kings serve at British discretion. The Alaafin cooperates as Britain expands and consolidates.

1895

Conquest of Madagascar

France lands 15,000 troops at Majunga in May who take the Merina capital of Antananarivo with relatively little fighting but with the loss of 6,000 to disease. Prime Minister Rainilaiarivony is exiled.

France's claim to the island was agreed to earlier by Britain in return for French and German acceptance of Britain's protectorate over Zanzibar.

French parliament annexes island Aug. 6, 1896 and sends more troops under Gen. Joseph-Simon Gallieni, who puts down bloody guerrilla outbreaks, reduces oligarchy and banishes the last queen, Ranavalona III, to Algiers, 1897. With abolishment of the extensive Merina slavery system, 500,000 persons (most of them from neighboring Malagasy peoples, supplemented by captives from East Africa) become free. Unification of island under French governor is complete by 1905.

1896

Court Upholds 'Separate But Equal'

In *Plessy v. Ferguson*, U.S. Supreme Court upholds, 7-1, Louisiana's 1890 Separate Car Act requiring "equal but separate accommodations" for white and black passengers on state's railroads. It erases civil rights accomplished under Reconstruction and permits expansion of Jim Crow segregation laws to every sector of life, South and North. Black people will suffer under them for many decades to come.

The sole dissenter, John Marshall Harlan, writes, in part: "Our constitution is color-blind, and neither knows nor tolerates classes among citizens. In respect of civil rights, all citizens are equal before the law."

The seven-justice majority includes four appointed by Republican presidents, and two who voted with the majority on the Civil Rights Cases.

1896

'Whites Only' Primaries

In South Carolina, the Democratic Party imposes the first "whites only" rule on its primaries, barring participation by any black or mixed-race person.

Such "whites-only" rules are adopted by Democratic parties or state legislatures in Mississippi, Alabama and Florida (1902), Texas (1905), Louisiana and Arkansas (1906), and Georgia (1908).

1896

McKinley Defeats Bryan

William McKinley (Ohio) elected president over Democrat William Jennings Bryan (Nebraska), latter supported by Populists. Republicans thus add presidency and retain control of Congress, but venture no new bills to support black voters in South.

In fact, Congress will take no action to secure black voting rights until 1957.

1896

North Carolina Elects Republican Governor

In North Carolina, Democrats are again defeated when Republican Daniel Lindsay Russell Jr., a pro-Union plantation owner, is elected governor on the Republican-Populist fusion ticket. George Henry White, a Howard University-trained lawyer and educator, is elected to Congress. He is the House's only black member in 1897 and, when he leaves in 1901, its last until 1929.

Populists split their vote in the state by supporting Bryan for president.

Fusion candidates are also successful in county and city races, including in black-majority Wilmington, the largest city.

Democrats begin plotting a Mississippi-style, back-to-power campaign that leads to the violent white uprising in Wilmington two years later.

1896

Ashanti Bow to Protectorate

British precipitate a Fourth Ashanti War with an expeditionary force from Cape Coast arriving in Kumasi in January. King Prempeh I surrenders without a shot fired and is banished to the Seychelles. The Ashanti relinquish sovereignty and become part of Britain's Gold Coast protectorate.

1896

Zanzibar's 38-Minute War

Suspicious death of Zanzibar's pro-British Sultan Hamad bin Thuwaini, Aug. 25, leads to Royal Navy bombardment of Beit al Hukum Palace, Aug. 27, and a quick surrender of the new, less cooperative sultan.

1897

123 Blacks Lynched

The Tuskegee Institute reports that 123 black people are lynched this year in the U.S. The institute has been collecting annual data since 1882, when 49 blacks are known to have been lynched.

1897

Major Uprising in Brazil

Rebels in the mixed-race Bahían village of Canudos, led by populist charismatic Antonio Conselheiro (who vows support of the monarchy), repel several Brazilian army attempts at subjugation with heavy losses.

A much larger Brazilian force, armed with artillery and machine guns, still requires weeks of hand-to-hand battle (during which Conselheiro dies) to force surrender. Soldiers raze village, slaughter more than 5,000 men, and disperse surviving women and children. Total death toll is likely more than 20,000 in Brazil's bloodiest-ever insurrection.

1897**Quest for Rubber Oppresses Congo**

Production of rubber rises in the Congo, spurred by King Leopold's decrees, including: All rubber production goes to the Congo Free State (of which he is the owner). Each village is required to meet a quota. Failure to meet quotas results in destruction of villages by Force Publique, severe punishment of individuals, including starvation, imprisonment and dismemberment of hands.

It's not chattel slavery; villages and individuals are paid for the latex they do produce, in cloth, costume jewelry and other low-cost trade goods. And they are otherwise left to live their lives. However, since the *Landolphia* vines die after being cracked open for latex, people must go deeper and deeper into forest to meet quotas.

Between violence, hunger and disease during the Leopold "Free State" era (which ends in 1908), population of the Congo declines by as many as 5 million, perhaps twice as many.

1897**Mosquitoes and Malaria**

The central role of mosquitoes (*Anopheles*) in spreading malaria is demonstrated by Roland Ross, a British army surgeon stationed in Secunderabad, India, Aug. 27. This builds on the work of Patrick Manson, a Scottish physician who discovered that mosquitoes spread parasites 20 years earlier while working in China

1898**Black Units Fight in Cuba**

USS *Maine*, sent to Cuba to protect U.S. citizens in Havana, explodes mysteriously in Havana Harbor and sinks, Feb. 15; 260 crewmen die. Newspapers and Congress demand war—U.S. public favors rebels—and Pres. William McKinley reluctantly presses Spain to leave island, March 27. A 10-week war follows.

Black U.S. army units, including the 10th Cavalry, play central role in battles that lead to surrender of Santiago de Cuba, and ultimately to Cuban independence, and Spain's cession of Puerto Rico and the Philippines to the U.S.

1898**Mississippi Vote Suppression Upheld**

Virtually all the restrictive, anti-black voting requirements in the 1890 Mississippi constitution are upheld by U.S. Supreme Court in *Williams v. Mississippi*, April 25. Even Harlan, "the Great Dissenter" in *Plessy*, joins unanimous ruling, which focuses on lack of discriminatory language, rather than on clearly anti-black intent and practice.

The Louisiana legislature quickly moves to duplicate the Mississippi restrictions and grandfather clause, May 12, followed by North Carolina (1900), Alabama and Virginia (1901), Georgia (1908) and Oklahoma (1910).

And while most of the Southern poll-tax grandfather clauses are struck down by the Supreme Court in *Guinn v. United States*, 1915, the ruling is of virtually no benefit to blacks seeking to register and vote.

1898**Anti-Negro Campaign Succeeds**

Running a strident “white supremacy” campaign “to redeem North Carolina from negro domination” and championing violence “if necessary,” white North Carolina Democrats take legislature back from Republicans and Populists whose fusion ticket loses many white voters, Nov. 8.

1898**Wilmington Leaders Ousted; Blacks Die**

Two days after the North Carolina election, 2,000 white Red Shirts storm through black-majority Wilmington, commandeer a Gatling gun at the armory, burn the office of the black daily newspaper (an editorial asserted that some white women *choose* to sleep with black men), terrorize and vandalize the black Brooklyn district, and kill at least 35 black residents (and perhaps scores more).

They demand, at gunpoint, the resignations of the white Republican mayor, Silas P. Wright, and both white and black aldermen, and install their leader, Alfred Moore Waddell.

Republican Gov. Russell directs Wilmington Light Infantry to restore order, but they have little effect. More than 2,000 men, women and children flee the city. Other blacks are banished and describe the riot as a “massacre.” White Democratic business leaders term the takeover a great and righteous success.

1899**North Carolina Adopts Voter Restrictions**

North Carolina legislature’s new Democratic majority moves quickly to pass Mississippi-style poll tax and literacy tests to suppress black voting, complete with grandfather clause to protect poor whites from poll tax.

The Democrats’ return to power is complete in 1900 when Democrat Charles Brantley Aycock is elected governor by a 60,000-vote margin, repeating the “white supremacy” theme complete with Red Shirt intimidation (but no further municipal massacres or coups). Afterward, no Republican is elected governor in North Carolina until 1972.

1899**Du Bois Profiles Philadelphia Blacks**

W.E.B. Du Bois publishes *The Philadelphia Negro*, a statistical and sociological portrait of the community, its problems and its relationships with the dominant white world.

Du Bois is in his second year as a professor of history and economics at Atlanta University. He has degrees from Fisk and Harvard, including the first Harvard doctorate earned by a black person.

1899**Ragtime’s First Big Hit**

Scott Joplin publishes “Maple Leaf Rag” for piano, Sept. 18, in Sedalia, Mo. Although not the first rag to be published—that was 1895’s “La Pas Ma La” by

Ernest Hogan—it launches ragtime across the country. Ragtime and blues originally arose in black communities of Louisiana and Texas, and would evolve into jazz in the early decades of the 20th century.

The first published blues songs are “Dallas Blues” by Hart Wand of Oklahoma City, son of German immigrants; and “The Memphis Blues” by W.C. Handy, son of a black Alabama preacher, both in 1912.

1900

1900

Census: Black Share Declines

U.S. Census: total population, 75.99 million (residential); black, 8.83 million (11.6%). In 1800, the black population, slave and free, was just over 1 million, which was 18.9% of the total. The 2020 census reported the black population at 13.4% of the total.

Immigration declined in 1890s with Congress excluding Chinese and imposing a 50-cent head tax on all arrivals. But inflow still totals 3.69 million, most again from Southern and Eastern Europe.

1900

Colored American Magazine

Inaugural issue of *The Colored American Magazine* rolls off press in Boston, May. A monthly founded by Harper S. Fortune and Walter W. Wallace, its best-known writer and editor is Pauline Hopkins who publishes her first novel, *Contending Forces: A Romance Illustrative of Negro Life North and South*, the same year.

The magazine includes journalism and fiction focusing on cultural and political issues from Southern lynching to Northern paternalism.

In 1904, the magazine is bought by a group guided by Booker T. Washington, drops Hopkins and turns to “conciliatory politics” with less emphasis on racial injustice. Circulation, which reached 17,000, declines and the magazine folds with the November 1909 issue.

1900

Slavery Continues in Nigeria

Upriver territory held by private Royal Niger Company is merged with Niger Coast Protectorate under British authority.

In 1903, Fredrick Lugard, new commissioner of Northern Nigeria, leads forces against the emir of Kano and sultan of Sokoto in the final subjugation of the Sokoto Caliphate. Slave raiding and trading are forbidden. But slavery continues under Islamic rules and traditions of the Sokoto emirs.

At some point, British, who introduce indirect rule, persuade emirs to accept legislation under which any child born to a slave mother is born free, and encourage giving slaves the means to redeem themselves.

In 1914, the Northern Nigeria Protectorate will be merged with the Lagos

Colony to form the single colony of Nigeria, which will become Africa's largest nation by population.

It is not until 1936 that slavery in northern Nigeria is banned completely.

1900

Yellow Fever & Mosquitoes

Walter Reed and Jesse Lazear, U.S. army physicians assigned to Cuba after the Spanish-American War, confirm that yellow fever is spread by mosquitoes (Lazear dies 17 days after purposefully allowing mosquitoes to infect him). They are acting on the theory put forward in 1881 by Carlos J. Finlay, a Cuban epidemiologist who also identified *Aedes aegypti* as the probable vector.

William C. Gorgas, the army's chief sanitary officer in Havana, then organizes drainage of mosquito breeding ponds and strict quarantine of patients to drive Havana cases from 784 to zero within a year.

1900

Hookworm Identified

Charles W. Stiles, an expert on animal parasites, begins study of human hookworm disease. In 1902 he identifies a new species, now known as *Necator americanus*, that infects as many as 40% of all Southerners. Resulting anemia undermines physical and mental development. This leads to establishment of Rockefeller Sanitary Commission and its campaign, 1909-1914, to improve sanitation, and to block and treat infections throughout the region.

#